

# LOGICK:

Or, The RIGHT USE of

## REASON

IN THE

Enquiry after TRUTH,

WITH

A Variety of RULES to guard  
against *Error*, in the Affairs of  
RELIGION and HUMAN LIFE,  
as well as in the SCIENCES.

---

By I. WATTS.

---

L O N D O N :

*Printed for JOHN CLARK and RICHARD HETT,  
at the Bible and Crown in the Poultry near  
Cheapside, EMANUEL MATTHEWS, at the  
Bible in Pater-noster-Row, and RICHARD  
FORD, at the Angel in the Poultry near  
Stocks-Market. 1725.*





W O S N A R

2097 21

ПРОИЗВЕДЕНИЕ

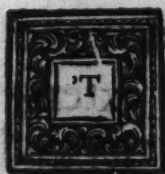
BARONET.

[illegible]



TO  
**Sir JOHN HARTOPP,**  
BARONET.

SIR,



I S. fit the Publick should  
receive thro' your Hands  
what was written origi-  
nally for the Assistance of your  
younger Studies, and was then  
presented to you.

'T WAS by the repeated Im-  
portunities of our Learned Friend

ii      *The* DEDICATION.

Mr. *John Eams*, that I was persuaded to revise these *Rudiments of Logic*; and when I had once suffer'd myself to begin the Work, I was drawn still onward far beyond my first Design, even to the Neglect, or too long Delay of other pressing and important Demands that were upon me.

IT has been my Endeavour to form every Part of this Treatise both for the Instruction of Students, to open their Way into the Sciences, and for the more extensive and general Service of Mankind, that the *Gentleman* and the *Christian* might find their Account in the Perusal as well as the *Scholar*. I have therefore collected and proposed the chief Principles and Rules of right Judgment in  
Matters

*The* DEDICATION. iii

Matters of common and sacred Importance, and pointed out our most frequent Mistakes and Prejudices in the Concerns of Life and Religion, that we might better guard against the Springs of Error, Guilt and Sorrow, which surrounds us in every Stage of Mortality.

YOU know, Sir, the great Design of this noble Science, is to rescue our Reasoning Powers from their unhappy Slavery and Darkness; and thus with all due Submission and Deference, it offers a humble Assistance to divine Revelation. Its chief Business is to relieve the natural Weaknesses of the Mind by some better Efforts of Nature; 'tis to diffuse a Light over the Understanding in our En-

A 3

quiries



vi      *The* DEDICATION.

quiries after Truth, and not to furnish the Tongue with Debate and Controversy. *True Logic* is not that noisy Thing that deals all in Dispute and Wrangling, to which former Ages had debased and confin'd it; yet its Disciples must acknowledge also, that they are taught to vindicate and defend the Truth, as well as to search it out. *True Logic* doth not require a long Detail of hard Words to amuse Mankind, and to puff up the Mind with empty Sounds, and a Pride of false Learning; yet some Distinctions and Terms of Art are necessary to range every Idea in its proper Class, and to keep our Thoughts from Confusion. The World is now grown so wise as not to suffer this valuable Art to be engross'd by the Schools.

## *The* DEDICATION.

*Schools.* In so polite and knowing an Age, every *Man of Reason* will covet some Acquaintance with *Logic*, since it renders its daily Service to *Wisdom* and *Vertue*, and to the Affairs of *common Life* as well as to the *Sciences*.

I will not presume, *Sir*, that this little Book is improv'd since its first *Composure*, in Proportion to the Improvements of your manly Age. But when you shall please to review it in your retir'd Hours, perhaps you may refresh your own Memory in some of the early Parts of *Learning*: And if you find all the additional Remarks and Rules made so familiar to you already by your own Observation, that there is nothing new

A 4 among

vi *The DEDICATION.*

among them, it will be no un-  
pleasing Reflection that you have  
so far anticipated the present Zeal  
and Labour of,

*S I R,*

*Your most faithful,*  
*London, Aug. 24.*  
*1724.*

*and obedient Servant,*

*I. WATTS.*



*THE*



THE  
TABLE  
OF  
CONTENTS.



*H E Introduction or general  
Scheme Page 1.*

*The First Part (viz.) Of Per-  
ceptions and Ideas.*

*CHAP. I. Of the Nature of Ideas.*

*p. 12.*

*CHAP. II. Of the Objects of Per-  
ception. Sect. 1. Of Being in general.  
p. 15. Sect. 2. Of Substances and their  
various*



## THE CONTENTS.

*various Kinds, p. 17. Sec. 3. Of Modes and their various Kinds; and first of essential and accidental Modes, p. 25. Sec. 4. The further Divisions of Mode, p. 32. Sec. 5. Of the ten Categories. Of Substance modify'd, p. 37. Sec. 6. Of Not-Being, p. 38.*

CHAP. III. *Of the several sorts of Perceptions or Ideas. Sec. 1. Of sensible, spiritual, and abstracted Ideas, p. 42. Sec. 2. Of simple and complex, compound and collective Ideas, p. 48. Sec. 3. Of universal and particular Ideas, real and imaginary, p. 50. Sec. 4. The Division of Ideas, with Regard to their Qualities, p. 57.*

CHAP. IV. *Of Words and their several Divisions, together with the Advantage and Danger of them. Sec. 1. Of Words in general, and their Use, p. 68. Sec. 2. Of negative and positive Terms, p. 78. Sec. 3. Of simple and complex Terms, p. 82. Sec. 4. Of Words common and proper, p. 86. Sec. 5. Of concrete and abstract Terms, p. 89. Sec. 6. Of univocal and equivocal*

## THE CONTENTS.

*vocal Words*, p. 90. Sec. 7. *Various Kinds of equivocal Words*, p. 94. Sec. 8. *The Origin or Causes of equivocal Words*, p. 104.

CHAP. V. *General Directions relating to our Ideas*, Sec. 1. *Of acquiring a Treasure of Ideas*, p. 110. Sec. 2. *Of retaining Ideas in Memory*, p. 114. Sec. 3. *Of selecting useful Ideas*, p. 119. Sec. 4. *Of the Government of our Thoughts*, p. 120.

CHAP. VI. *Special Rules to direct our Conception of Things*, p. 124. Sec. 1. *Of gaining clear and distinct Ideas*, p. 125. Sec. 2. *Of the Definition of Words or Names*, p. 129. Sec. 3. *Directions concerning the Definition of Names*, p. 132. Sec. 4. *Of the Definition of Things*, p. 136. Sec. 5. *Rules of Definition of the Thing*, p. 164. Sec. 6. *Observations concerning the Definition of Things*, p. 169. Sec. 7. *Of a compleat Conception of Things*, p. 183. Sec. 8. *Of Division, and the Rules of it*, p. 186. Sec. 9. *Of a comprehensive Conception of Things, and of Abstraction*,  
2800

## The CONTENTS.

*Abstraction*, p. 194. Sec. 10. *Of the extensive Conception of Things, and of Distribution*, p. 201. Sec. 11. *Of an orderly Conception of Things*, p. 209. Sec. 12. *These five Rules of Conception exemplify'd*, p. 211. Sec. 13. *An Illustration of these five Rules by Similitudes*, p. 215.

---

*The Second Part (viz.) of Judgment and Proposition.*

CHAP. I. *Of the Nature of a Proposition, and its several Parts*, p. 224.

CHAP. II. *Of the various Kinds of Propositions*, p. 229. Sec. 1. *Of universal, particular, indefinite, and singular Propositions*, p. 230. Sec. 2. *Of affirmative and negative Propositions*, p. 244. Sec. 3. *Of the Opposition and Conversion of Propositions*, p. 248. Sec. 4. *Of pure and modal Propositions*, p. 252. Sec. 5. *Of single Propositions, whether simple or complex*, p. 256. Sec.



## THE CONTENTS.

Sec. 6. Of compound Propositions, p. 259. Sec. 7. Of true and false Propositions, p. 268. Sec. 8. Of certain and doubtful Propositions, of Knowledge and Opinion, p. 274. Sec. 9. Of Sense, Consciousness, Intelligence, Reason, Faith and Inspiration, p. 278.

CHAP. III. The Springs of false Judgment, or the Doctrine of Prejudices, p. 291. Sec. 1. Prejudices arising from Things, p. 294. Sec. 2. Prejudices arising from Words, p. 306. Sec. 3. Prejudices arising from ourselves, p. 311. Sec. 4. Prejudices arising from other Persons, p. 337.

CHAP. IV. General Directions to assist us in judging aright, p. 365.

CHAP. V. Special Rules to direct us in judging of particular Objects, p. 391. Sec. 1. Principles and Rules of Judgment concerning the Objects of Sense, p. 392. Sec. 2. Principles and Rules of Judgment in Matters of Reason and Speculation, p. 396. Sec. 3. Principles and Rules of Judgment in Matters



## THE CONTENTS.

*Matters of Morality and Religion,*  
p. 401. Sec. 4. *Principles and Rules*  
*of Judgment in Matters of human Pru-*  
*dence,* p. 405. Sec. 5. *Principles and*  
*Rules of Judgment in Matters of hu-*  
*man Testimony,* p. 408. Sec. 6. *Prin-*  
*ciples and Rules of Judgment in Mat-*  
*ters of divine Testimony,* p. 414. Sec. 7.  
*Principles and Rules of Judging con-*  
*cerning Things past, present, and to*  
*come, by the mere Use of Reason,*  
p. 417.

---

*The Third Part (viz.) Of Rea-*  
*soning and Syllogism.*

CHAP. I. *Of the Nature of a*  
*Syllogism, and of the Parts of*  
*which 'tis composed,* p. 422.

CHAP. II. *Of the various Kinds of*  
*Syllogisms, with particular Rules re-*  
*lating to them,* p. 427. Sec. 1. *Of*  
*universal and particular Syllogisms, both*  
*negative and affirmative,* p. 428. Sec. 2.  
*Of plain, simple Syllogisms, and their*  
*Rules,*

## THE CONTENTS.

*Rules*, p. 430. Sec. 3. *Of the Moods and Figures of simple Syllogisms*, p. 434. Sec. 4. *Of complex Syllogisms*, p. 439. Sec. 5. *Of conjunctive Syllogisms*, p. 442. Sec. 6. *Of compound Syllogisms*, p. 450. Sec. 7. *Of the middle Terms, of common Places or Topics, and Invention of Arguments*, p. 456. Sec. 8. *Of several Kinds of Arguments and Demonstrations*, p. 460.

CHAP. III. *The Doctrine of Sophisms*, p. 468. Sec. 1. *Of several Kinds of Sophisms, and their Solution*, p. 469. Sec. 2. *Two general Tests of true Syllogisms, and Methods of solving all Sophisms*, p. 484.

CHAP. IV. *Some general Rules to direct our Reasoning*, p. 488.


---

## The Fourth Part (viz.) Of Method.

CHAP. I. *The Nature and Kinds of Method*, Page 505

CHAP. II. *General and special Rules of Method*, P. 520

**BOOKS published by the same  
AUTHOR.**

**I.**  **ORÆ Lyrica:** Poems chiefly of the Lyric Kind. In three Books. Sacred, 1. To Devotion and Piety. 2. To Vertue, Honour, and Friendship. 3. To the Memory of the Dead. *The Fourth Edition, corrected; with the Author's Effigies, newly done from the Life, by Mr. Ver-tue, 12<sup>mo</sup>.*

**II.** *Hymns and Spiritual Songs*, in three Books. 1. Collected from the Scriptures. 2. Composed on divine Subjects. 3. Prepared for the Lord's Supper. *The Seventh Edition.*

**III.** *A Guide to Prayer:* Or, a free and rational Account of the Gift, Grace and Spirit of Prayer; with plain Directions how every Christian may attain them. *The Second Edition.*

**IV.** *Divine Songs*, attempted in easy Language, for the Use of Children. *The Fifth Edition.*

**V.** The Psalms of David imitated in the Language of the New Testament, and applyed to the Christian State and Worship. *The Third and Fourth Editions, with or without the Preface and Notes.*

**VI. and VII.** *Sermons on various Subjects*, in two Volumes, with a sacred Hymn annexed to each Subject.

**VIII.** *The Art of Reading and Writing English.* *The Second Edition.*

**IX.** *Death and Heaven*, or the Variety of the Pleasures and Employments of separate Spirits. *The Second Edition.*

**X.** *The Christian Doctrine of the Trinity* asserted and proved without the Aid and Incumbrance of human Schemes.

**XI.** *Three Dissertations on the same Subject.*





# LOGICK:

OR,

The right Use of REASON.

*The* INTRODUCTION, and  
*general* SCHEME.



LOGICK is the Art of using  
our Reason well in our  
Enquiries after Truth, and  
the Communication of it  
to others.

*Reason* is the Glory of human Na-  
ture, and one of the chief Eminences  
whereby we are raised above our fel-

B

low



low Creatures the Brutes in this lower World.

*Reason*, as to the *Power and Principle* of it, is the common Gift of God to all Men; though all are not favoured with it by Nature in an equal Degree: But the *acquired Improvements* of it in different Men, make a much greater Distinction between them than Nature had made. I could even venture to say, that the *Improvement of Reason* hath raised the Learned and the Prudent in the *European World*, almost as much above the *Hottentots* and other Savages of *Africa*, as those Savages are by Nature superior to the Birds, the Beasts, and the Fishes.

Now the *Design of Logick* is to teach us the right Use of our Reason, and the Improvement of it in our selves and others; this is not only necessary in order to attain any competent Knowledge in the *Sciences*, or the Affairs of Learning, but to govern both the greater and the meaner *Actions of Life*. 'Tis the Cultivation of our Reason by which we are better enabled to distinguish *Good* from *Evil*, as well as *Truth* from *Falshood*:  
And

*The right Use of Reason.*

3

And both these are Matters of the highest Importance, whether we regard this Life, or the Life to come.

There are two Things that make it very necessary that our Reason should have some Assistance in the Exercise of it.

The first is, the *Depth and Difficulty of many Truths*, and the *Weakness of our Reason to see far into Things at once, and penetrate to the Bottom of them*. 'Twas a Saying among the Antients, *Veritas in Puteo*, Truth lyes in a Well: and to carry on this Metaphor we may very justly say, that *Logick* does, as it were, supply us with Steps whereby we may go down to reach the Water; or it frames the Links of a Chain whereby we may draw the Water up from the Bottom. Thus, by the Means of many Reasonings well connected together, Philosophers in our Age have drawn a thousand Truths out of the Depths of Darkness, which our Fathers were utterly unacquainted with.

Another Thing that makes it necessary for our Reason to have some Assistance given it, is the *Disguise and false*

*Colours in which many Things appear to us in this present imperfect State:* There are a thousand Things which are not in Reality what they appear to be, and that both in the *natural* and the *moral* World: So the *Sun* appears to be flat as a Plate of Silver, and to be less than twelve Inches in Diameter, the *Moon* appears to be as big as the *Sun*, and the *Rainbow* appears to be a large substantial Arch in the Sky; all which are in reality gross Falshoods. So *Knavery* puts on the Face of *Justice*, *Hypocrisy* and *Superstition* wear the Vizard of *Piety*, *Deceit* and *Evil* are often clothed in the Shapes and Appearances of *Truth* and *Goodness*. Now *Logick* helps us to strip off the outward Disguise of Things, and to behold them and judge of them in their own Nature.

Our *reasoning Powers* are so frail and fallible in the present State, that we are imposed upon *at home* as well as *abroad*; we are deceived by our *Senses*, by our *Imaginations*, by our *Passions* and *Appetites*; and we are led into frequent Errors by judging according to these false and flattering Principles, rather than



*The right Use of Reason.*

5

than according to the Nature of Things. Something of this Frailty is owing to our very *Constitution*, Man being compounded of Flesh and Spirit; but there is still more of it owing to our *original Defection* from God, and the foolish and evil Dispositions that are found in fallen Man: So that one Part of the *Design of Logick* is to guard us against the delusive Influences of our meaner Powers, and to raise us in some Measure from the Ruins of our Fall.

It is evident from all these Things, that our *Reason* needs the Assistance of *Art* in our Enquiries after *Truth* or *Duty*; and without some Skill and Diligence in forming our Judgments aright, we shall be led into frequent Mistakes, both in Matters of *Science*, and in Matters of *Practice*, and some of these Mistakes may prove fatal too.

The *Art of Logick*, even as it assists us to gain the Knowledge of the Sciences, leads us on toward Virtue and Happiness; for all our *speculative Acquaintance with Things* should be made subservient to our better *Conduct in the civil and the religious Life*. This is infinite-



ly more valuable than all Speculations, and a wise Man will use them chiefly for this better Purpose.

All the good Judgment and Prudence that any Man exerts in his common Concerns of Life, without the Advantages of Learning, is called *natural Logick*: And 'tis but a higher Advancement, and a farther Assistance of our rational Powers that is designed by and expected from this *artificial Logick*.

In order to attain this, we must enquire what are the *principal Operations of the Mind*, which are put forth in the Exercise of our Reason: And we shall find them to be these four, (*viz.*) *Perception*, *Judgment*, *Argumentation*, and *Disposition*.

Now the *Art of Logick* is composed of those Observations and Rules, which Men have made about these four Operations of the Mind, *Perception*, *Judgment*, *Reasoning*, and *Disposition*, in order to assist and improve them.

I. *Perception*, *Conception*, or *Apprehension*, is the meer simple Contemplation of Things offered to our Minds, without affirm-

affirming or denying any Thing concerning them. So we perceive or think of a Horse, a Tree, High, Swift, Slow, Animal, Time, Motion, Matter, Mind, Life, Death, &c. The Form under which these Things appear to the Mind, or the Result of our Conception or Apprehension, is call'd an *Idea*.

II. *Judgment* is that Operation of the Mind, whereby we join two or more Ideas together by one Affirmation or Negation, *that is*, we either affirm or deny this to be that. So *this Tree is high; that Horse is not swift; the Mind of Man is a thinking Being; meer Matter has no Thought belonging to it; God is just; good Men are often miserable in this World; a righteous Governor will make a Difference betwixt the Evil and the Good;* which Sentences are the Effect of Judgment, and are called *Propositions*.

III. *Argumentation* or *Reasoning* is that Operation of the Mind, whereby we infer one Thing, or one Proposition, from two or more Propositions premi-

fed. Or 'tis the drawing a Conclusion which before was either unknown, or dark, or doubtful, from some Propositions which are more known and evident. So when we have judged that *Matter cannot think*, and that the *Mind of Man doth think*, we then infer and conclude, that *therefore the Mind of Man is not Matter*.

So we judge that a just Governor will make a Difference betwixt the Evil and the Good; we judge also, that God is a just Governor; and from thence we conclude, that *God will make a Difference betwixt the Evil and the Good*.

This Argumentation may be carried on further, thus, *God will one Time or another make a Difference between the Good and the Evil: But there is little or no Difference made in this World; therefore there must be another World wherein this Difference shall be made*.

These Inferences or Conclusions are the Effects of Reasoning, and the three Propositions taken altogether are called a *Syllogism*, or *Argument*.

IV. *Disposition* is that Operation of  
the



the Mind, whereby we put the Ideas, Propositions, and Arguments, which we have formed concerning one Subject, into such an Order as is fittest to gain the clearest Knowledge of it, to retain it longest, and to explain it to others in the best Manner: Or, in short, 'Tis the ranging of our Thoughts in such Order, as is best for our own and others Conception and Memory. The Effect of this Operation is called *Method*. This very *Description of the four Operations of the Mind and their Effects in this Order*, is an Instance or Example of Method.

Now as the Art of Logick assists our *Conception*, so it gives us a *large* and *comprehensive* View of the Subjects we enquire into, as well as a *clear* and *distinct* Knowledge of them. As it regulates our *Judgment* and our *Reasoning*, so it secures us from Mistakes, and gives us a *true* and *certain* Knowledge of Things; and as it furnishes us with *Method*, so it makes our Knowledge of Things both *easy* and *regular*, and guards our Thoughts from Confusion.



10 *LOGICK: Or,*

*Logick* is divided into four Parts, according to these four Operations of the Mind, which it directs, and therefore we shall treat of it in this Order.



THE



THE  
First PART  
OF  
LOGICK.



*Of Perceptions and Ideas.*



THE first Part of *Logick* contains Observations and Precepts about the first Operation of the Mind, *Perception* or *Conception*: And since all our Knowledge, how wide and large soever it grow, is founded upon our *Conceptions* and *Ideas*, here we shall consider,

1. *The general Nature of them.*
2. *The Objects of our Conception, or the Archetypes or Patterns of these Ideas.*
3. *The several Divisions of them.*
4. <sup>That</sup> *Of Words and Terms whereby our Ideas are exprest.*
5. *General Directions about our Ideas.*
6. <sup>Special</sup> *Rules to direct our Conceptions.*



## C H A P. I.

*Of the Nature of Ideas.*

FIRST, the *Nature of Perception* shall just be mention'd, though this may seem to belong to another Science rather than *Logick*.

*Perception* is that *Act of the Mind* (or as some Philosophers call it, rather a *Passion* or *Impression*) whereby the *Mind* becomes conscious of any *Thing*, as when I feel *Hunger*, *Thirst*, or *Cold*, or *Heat*; when I see a *Horse*, a *Tree*, or a *Man*; when I hear a *human Voice*, or *Thunder*, I am conscious of these *Things*, and this is called *Perception*.

If

C. I. *The right Use of Reason.* 13

If I *study, meditate, wish or fear*, I am conscious of these inward Acts also, and my Mind perceives its own *Thoughts, Wishes, Fears, &c.*

An *Idea* is generally defin'd a *Representation of a Thing in the Mind*; 'tis a Representation of something that we have *seen, felt, heard, &c.* or been conscious of. That Notion or Form of a Horse, a Tree, or a Man which is in the Mind, is called the *Idea of a Horse, a Tree, or a Man*. That Notion of Hunger, Cold, Sound, Colour, Thought, or Wish, or Fear, which is in the Mind, is call'd the *Idea of Hunger, Cold, Sound, Wish, &c.*

'Tis not the outward Object, or *Thing which is perceived*, (viz.) the Horse, the Man, &c. Nor is it the very *Perception or Sense, and Feeling*, (viz.) of Hunger, or Cold, &c. which is called the *Idea*; but the *Thing as it exists in the Mind by Way of Conception or Representation*, that is properly called the *Idea*.

As a Horse, a Man, a Tree, are the outward *Objects* of our Perception, and the outward *Archetypes or Patterns* of  
our



our *Ideas*; so our own Sensations of Hunger, Cold, &c. are also inward *Archetypes*, or *Patterns of our Ideas*: But the *Notions* or *Pictures of these Things*, as they are considered, or conceiv'd in the Mind, are precisely the *Ideas* that we have to do with in *Logick*. To see a *Horse*, or to feel *Cold*, is one Thing; to think of, and converse about a *Man*, a *Horse*, *Hunger*, or *Cold*, is another.

Among all these *Ideas*, such as represent *Bodies*, are generally call'd *Images*, especially if the Idea of the Shape be included. Those Representations, which we have in the Mind, of *Spirit*, *Thought*, *Love*, *Hatred*, *Cause*, *Effect*, &c. are more pure and *mental Ideas*, belonging more especially to the Mind, and carry nothing of Shape or Sense in them. But I shall have occasion to speak more particularly of the *Original* and the *Distinction of Ideas* in the third Chapter. I proceed therefore now to consider the *Objects of our Ideas*.



## CHAP. II.

### *Of the Objects of Perception.*

#### SECT. I.

#### *Of Being in general.*



THE *Object of Perception* is that which is represented in the Idea, that which is the Archetype or Pattern, according to which the Idea is form'd; and thus *Judgments, Propositions, Reasonings, and long Discourses* may all become the Objects of Perception; but in this Place we speak chiefly of the *first and more simple Objects* of it, before they are joyn'd and form'd into Propositions or Discourses.

Every *Object* of our Ideas is call'd a *Theme*, whether it be a *Being* or *Not-Being*; for *Not-Being* may be propos'd to our Thoughts, as well as that which has a real Being. But let us first treat of  
*Beings,*

*Beings*, and that in the largest Extent of the Word.

A *Being* is consider'd as *possible*, or as *actual*.

When 'tis consider'd as *possible*, it is said to have an *Essence* or *Nature*; such were *all Things before their Creation*: When 'tis consider'd as *actual*, then 'tis said to have *existence* also; such are *all Things which are created*, and God himself the Creator. *Essence* therefore is but the very *Nature* of any *Being*, whether it be actually *existing* or no.

*Note*, There is but one *Being* which includes *Existence* in the very *Essence* of it, and that is *God*, who therefore actually exists by natural and eternal Necessity: But the *actual Existence* of every Creature is very distinct from its *Essence*, for it may *be*, or may *not be*, as God please.

*Again*, every *Being* is consider'd either as subsisting in and by its self, and then 'tis call'd a *Substance*; or it subsists in and by another, and then 'tis call'd a *Mode* or *Manner of Being*. These will furnish us with Matter for larger Discourse.

SECT.

S E C T. II.

*Of Substances and their various Kinds.*

**A** *Substance* is a Being which can subsist by it self, without Dependence upon any other created Being. So a *Horse*, a *House*; *Wood*, *Stone*, *Water*, *Fire*, a *Spirit*, a *Body*, an *Angel* are *Substances*, because they depend on nothing but God for their Existence.

It has been usual also in the Description of *Substance* to add, 'tis that which is the Subject of Modes or Accidents; a *Body* is the Substance, its *Shape* is the Mode.

But lest we be led into Mistakes, let us here take Notice that when a Substance is said to *subsist without Dependence upon another created Being*, all that we mean is, that it cannot be annihilated, or utterly destroyed and reduced to nothing, by any Power inferior to that of our Creator; tho' its present particular Form, Nature and Properties may be altered



altered and destroyed by many inferior Causes: a *Horse* may dye and turn to *Dust*; *Wood* may be turned into *Fire*, *Smoke* and *Ashes*; a *House* into *Rubbish*, and *Water* into *Ice* or *Vapour*; but the Matter of which they are made still remains, though the Forms and Shapes of it are alter'd. A *Body* may cease to be a *House* or a *Horse*, but it is a *Body* still; and in this Sense it depends only upon God for its Existence.

Among *Substances* some are *thinking* or conscious Beings, or have a Power of Thought, such as the *Mind* of *Man*, *God*, *Angels*. Some are *extended* and *solid* or *impenetrable*, that is, they have Dimensions of Length, Breadth, and Depth, and have a Power of Resistance, or exclude every Thing of the same Kind from being in the same Place. This is the Character of *Matter* or *Body*.

As for the Notion of *Space*, whether it be *void* or *full*, i. e. a *Vacuum* or a *Plenum*, whether it be interspers'd among all Bodies, or may be supposed to reach beyond the Bounds of the Creation, 'tis an Argument too long and too hard

C.II.S.1. *The right Use of Reason.* 19

to be disputed in this Place what the Nature of it is; whether it be a real Substance, or a meer Conception of the Mind, whether it be the Immensity of the Divine Nature, or the meer Order of co-existent Beings, whether it be the manner of our Conception of the Distances of Bodies, or a meer Nothing.

Now if we seclude *Space* out of our Consideration, there will remain but two Sorts of Substances in the World, *i. e. Matter and Mind*, or as we otherwise call them, *Body and Spirit*; at least, we have no Idea of any other Substance but these. *Solid Extension* seems to be the very Substance of Matter, or all Bodies; and a *Power of thinking, which is always in act*, seems to be the very Substance of all Spirits; for God himself is an *Intelligent, Almighty Power*; nor is there any need to seek for any other secret and unknown Being, or abstracted Substance intirely distinct from these, in order to support the several Modes or Properties of *Matter or Mind*.

It must be confest, when we say, *Spirit is a thinking Substance*, and  
*Matter*

*Matter is an extended solid Substance,* we are ready to imagine that *Extension* and *Solidity* are but meer Modes and Properties of a certain unknown Substance, which supports them which we call *Body*; and that *Consciousness*, and a *Power of thinking* are but meer Modes and Properties of some unknown Substance which supports them also, and which we call *Spirit*: But I rather think this to be a meer Mistake, which we are led into by the Use of Words: Our Way of thinking by *Substances* and *Modes*, as well as our Way of talking by *Substantives* and *Adjectives*, delude us into this Supposition.

However, that I may not be wanting to any of my Readers, I would let them know Mr. *Lock's* Opinion, which has obtained much in the present Age, and 'tis this: "That tho' there may be some Substance distinct from all these Modes  
" or Properties both in Body and in  
" Mind, yet it is something utterly unknown to us, tho' it support the Properties of both. And that *our Idea of*  
" *any particular Substances* is only such  
" a Combination of simple Ideas, which  
" represent



C.II.S.2. *The right Use of Reason.* 21

“ represent that thing as subsisting by it  
“ self, in which the supposed, or confus-  
“ ed Idea of *Substance* (such as it is) is  
“ always ready to offer it self. 'Tis a  
“ Conjunction of Ideas co-existing in  
“ such a Cause of their Union, as makes  
“ the whole Subject subsist by it self,  
“ tho' the Cause of their Union be  
“ unknown; and *our general Idea of*  
“ *Substance* arises from the *Self-Sub-*  
“ *sistence* of this Collection of Ideas.

Among Substances, some are called *Simple*, some are *Compound*, whether the Words be taken in a *philosophical* or a *vulgar* Sense.

*Simple Substances*, in a *philosophical* Sense, are either *Spirits* which have no manner of Composition in them, and in this Sense *God* is called a *simple Being*; or they are the first Principles of Bodies, which are usually called *Elements*, of which all other Bodies are compounded: *Elements* are such Substances as cannot be resolved, or reduced, into two or more Substances of different Kinds.

The various Sects of Philosophers have attributed the Honour of this  
† Name

Name to various Things. The *Peripateticks*, or Followers of *Aristotle*, made *Fire*, *Air*, *Earth* and *Water* to be the four Elements, of which all earthly Things were compounded; and they supposed the Heavens to be a *Quintessence*, or fifth Sort of Body, distinct from all these: But, since experimental Philosophy and Mathematicks have been better understood, this Doctrine has been abundantly refuted. The *Chymists* make *Spirit*, *Salt*, *Sulphur*, *Water* and *Earth* to be their five Elements, because they can reduce all terrestrial Things to these five: This seems to come nearer the Truth; tho' they are not all agreed in this Enumeration of *Elements*. In short, our Modern Philosophers generally suppose *Matter* or Body to be one simple Principle, or *solid Extension*, which being diversified by its various Shapes, Quantities, Motions and Situations, makes all the Varieties that are found in the Universe; and therefore they make little use of the Word *Element*.

*Compound Substances* are made up of two or more simple Substances: So every Thing in this whole material Creation,

†

that

C.II.S.I. *The right Use of Reason.* 23

that can be reduced by the Art of Man into two or more different Principles or Substances, is a *compound Body* in the *philosophical* Sense.

But if we take the Words *Simple* and *Compound* in a *vulgar* Sense, then all those are *simple Substances* which are generally esteemed uniform in their Natures. So every *Herb* is called a *Simple*; and every *Metal* and *Mineral*; tho' the Chymist perhaps may find all his several Elements in each of them. So a *Needle* is a *simple Body*, being made only of Steel; but a *Sword* or a *Knife* is a *Compound*, because its Haft or Handle is made of Materials different from the Blade. So the *Bark of Peru*, or the *Juice of Sorrel* is a *simple Medicine*: But when the Apothecaries Art has mingled several of these Simples together, it becomes a *Compound*, as *Diascordium*, or *Mithridate*.

The Terms of *pure* and *mixt*, when applied to Bodies, are much akin to *simple* and *compound*. So a *Guinea* is *pure Gold*, if it has nothing but Gold in it, without any Alloy or baser Metal: But if any other Mineral or Metal be mingled



mingled with it, it is called a *mixt* Substance, or Body.

Substances are also divided into *animate* and *inanimate*. Animated Substances are either *animal* or *vegetable*.

Some of the *animated* Substances have various organical Parts, fitted for a Variety of Motions from Place to Place, and a Spring of Life within themselves, as *Beasts, Birds, Fishes, and Insects*; these are called *Animals*. Other *animated* Substances are called *Vegetables*, which have within themselves the Principles of another Sort of Life, Growth, and of various Productions, such as we see in *Plants, Herbs, and Trees*. And there are other *Substances*, which are called *inanimate*, that have no Sort of Life in them, as *Earth, Stone, Air, Water, &c.*

There is also one Sort of Substance, or Being, which is *compounded of Body and Mind*, or a rational Spirit united to an Animal, such is *Mankind*. *Angels*, or any other Beings of the spiritual and invisible World, who have assum'd visible Shapes for a Season, can hardly be reckon'd among this Order of compounded



I. ub. ni- ub. ve ic- nd as ts; na- es, in- th, we nd are of lir, ce, dy to els, and vi- dly om- ded

C.II.S. 3. *The right Use of Reason.* 25  
pounded Beings; because they drop their Bodies, and divest themselves of those visible Shapes, when their particular Message is perform'd, and thereby shew that these Bodies do not belong to their Natures.

---

SECT. III.

*Of Modes and their various Kinds,  
and first of Essential and Ac-  
cidental Modes.*

THE next sort of Objects which are represented in our Ideas, are called *Modes*, or *Manners of Being*.

A *Mode* is that which cannot subsist in and of it self, but is always esteem- ed as belonging to, and subsisting by, the Help of some *Substance*, which, for that Reason, is called its *Subject*. A Mode must depend on that Substance for its very Existence and Being; and that not as a *Cause* of its Being (for so *Substances* themselves depend on God their Creator;) but the *very Being of a*  
C Mode,

*Mode*, depends on some Substance for its *Subject*, in which it is, or to which it belongs; so *Motion*, *Shape*, *Quantity*, *Weight*, are Modes of *Body*; *Knowledge*, *Wit*, *Folly*, *Love*, *Doubting*, *Judging*, are Modes of the *Mind*; for the one cannot subsist without *Body*, and the other cannot subsist without *Mind*.

*Modes* have their several Divisions, as well as Substances.

I. Modes are either *Essential*, or *Accidental*.

An *essential Mode*, or *Attribute*, is that which belongs to the very Nature or Essence of the Subject wherein it is; and the Subject can never have the same Nature without it; such is *Roundness* in a *Bowl*, *Hardness* in a *Stone*, *Softness* in *Water*, *vital Motion* in an *Animal*, *Solidity* in *Matter*, *Thinking* in a *Spirit*; for though that piece of Wood which is now a *Bowl* may be made *square*, yet if *Roundness* be taken away, it is no longer a *Bowl*: So that very *Flesh* and *Bones*, which is now an *Animal*, may be without *Life* or *inward Motion*; but if all Motion be entirely

C.H.S.3. *The right Use of Reason.* 27

entirely gone, it is no longer an Animal, but a Carcass: So if a Body, or Matter, be divested of *Solidity*, 'tis a meer void Space; and if *Spirit* be entirely without *Thinking*, I know of nothing that is left in it; therefore so far as I am able to judge, *Consciousness* must be an essential Attribute: Thus all the *Perfections* of God are called his *Attributes*, for he cannot be without them.

An *essential* Mode is either *primary* or *secondary*.

A *primary essential Mode* is the first, or chief Thing, that constitutes any Being in its particular Essence, or Nature, and makes it to be that which it is, and distinguishes it from all other Beings: This is called the *Difference* in the *Definition* of Things, of which hereafter: So *Roundness* is the primary essential Mode or Difference of a *Bowl*; *meeting of two Lines* is the primary essential Mode, or the Difference of an *Angle*; the *Perpendicularity* of these Lines to each other, is the Difference of a *right Angle*: *Solid Extension* is the primary Attribute, or Difference, of *Matter*. *Consciousness*, or



*Thinking*, is the Difference, or primary, Attribute of a *Spirit*; and to *fear and love God* is the primary Attribute of a *pious Man*.

A *secondary essential Mode* is any other Attribute of a Thing, which is not of primary Consideration: This is called a *Property*: Sometimes indeed it goes toward making up the Essence, especially of a *complex Being*, so far as we are acquainted with it; sometimes it depends upon, and follows from the Essence of it; so *Volubility*, or *Aptness to roul*, is the Property of a *Bowl*, and is derived from its *Roundness*. *Mobility*, and *Figure or Shape*, are Properties of *Matter*; and 'tis the Property of a *pious Man* to *love his Neighbour*.

An *accidental Mode*, or an *Accident*, is such a Mode, as is not necessary to the Being of a Thing, for the Subject may be without it, and yet remain of the same Nature that it was before; or it is that Mode which may be separated from its Subject; so *Smoothness* or *Roughness*, *Blackness* or *Whiteness*, *Motion* or *Rest*, are the *Accidents* of a *Bowl*;



C.II.S.3. *The right Use of Reason.* 29

*Bowl*; for these may be all changed, and yet the Body remain a *Bowl* still: *Learning, Justice, Folly, Sicknefs, Health*, are the Accidents of a *Man*: *Motion, Squareness*, or any particular *Shape* or *Size*, are the Accidents of *Body*: Yet *Shape* and *Size* in general are essential Modes of it; for a Body must have some *Size* and *Shape*, nor can it be without them: So *Hope, Fear, Wishing, Assenting*, and *Doubting*, are Accidents of the *Mind*, though *Thinking* in general seems to be essential to it.

Here observe, that the Name of *Accident* has been oftentimes given by the old *Peripatetick* Philosophers to all Modes, whether essential or accidental; but the Moderns confine this Word *Accident* to the Sense in which I have described it.

Here it should be noted also, that though the Word *Property* be limited sometimes in logical Treatises to the *secondary essential Mode*, yet 'tis used in common Language to signify these four sorts of *Modes*; of which some are *essential*, and some *accidental*.

(1.) Such as belong to *every* Subject of that Kind, but *not only* to those Subjects. So *yellow Colour* and *Ductility* are Properties of *Gold*; they belong to *all* Gold, but *not only* to Gold; for *Saffron* is also *yellow*, and *Lead* is *ductile*.

(2.) Such as belong *only* to one kind of Subject, but *not* to *every* Subject of that Kind. So *Learning*, *Reading*, and *Writing*, are Properties of *human Nature*; they belong *only* to *Man*, but *not* to *all* Men.

(3.) Such as belong to *every* Subject of one Kind, and *only* to them, but *not always*. So *Speech* or *Language* is a Property of *Man*, for it belongs to *all* Men, and to Men *only*; but Men are *not always* speaking.

(4.) Such as belong to *every* Subject of one Kind, and to them *only* and *always*. So *Shape* and *Solidity* are Properties of *Body*; so *Omniscience* and *Omnipotence* are Properties of the *divine Nature*, for in this Sense *Properties* and *Attributes* are the same. These are call'd *Propria quarto modo* in the Schools or *Properties of the fourth Sort*.

Note,

C.II.S.3. *The right Use of Reason,* 31

*Note,* Where there is any one *Property*, or *essential Attribute* so superior to the rest, that it appears plainly that all the rest are derived from it, and such as is sufficient to give a full Distinction of that Subject from all other Subjects, this Attribute, or Property, is called the *essential Difference*, as is before declared; and we commonly say, the *Essence* of the Thing consists in it; so the *Essence of Matter* seems to consist in *Solidity*, or *solid Extension*. But for the most part, we are so much at a Loss in finding out the intimate Essence of *natural Beings*, that we are forced to distinguish the *essential Difference* of most Things by a *Combination of Properties*. So a *Sparrow* is a Bird, which has such colour'd Feathers, and such a particular Size, Shape, and Motion. So *Wormwood* is a Herb, which has such a Leaf of such a Colour, and Shape, and Taste, and such a Root and Stalk. So Beasts and Fishes, Minerals, Metals, and Works of Art, sometimes as well as of Nature, are distinguished by such a *Collection of Properties*.



## SECT. IV.

*The following Divisions of Mode.*

II. **T**HE *second* Division of Modes is into *absolute* and *relative*. An *absolute Mode* is that which belongs to its Subject, without Respect to any other Beings whatsoever. So *Roundness* and *Smoothness* are the *absolute* Modes of a *Bowl*; if there were nothing else existing in the whole Creation, a Bowl might be *round* and *smooth*: But *Greatness* and *Smallness* are relative Modes; for the very Ideas of them are derived merely from the Comparison of one Being with others; a Bowl of four Inches Diameter is *very great*, compared with one of an Inch and half; but it is *very small* in Comparison of another Bowl, whose Diameter is eighteen or twenty Inches. *Motion* is the *absolute* Mode of a Body, but *Swiftness* or *Slowness* are relative Ideas; for the Motion of a Bowl on a Bowling-Green is *swift*, when compared with a Snail,



C.H.S.4. *The right Use of Reason.* 33

Snail, and *slow*, when compared with a Cannon-Bullet.

These *relative Modes* are largely treated of by some *logical* and *metaphysical* Writers under the Name of *Relation*: And these *Relations* themselves are farther subdivided into *such as arise from the Nature of Things*, and *such as meerly arise from the Operation of our Minds*; one sort are called *real Relations*, the other *mental*; so the *Likeness of one Egg to another*, is a *Relation* that arises from the real Nature of Things; for whether there was any Man or Mind to conceive it or no, one Egg would be like another: But when we consider an Egg as a *Noun Substantive* in Grammar, or as signified by the Letters *e, g, g*, these are meer *mental Relations*, and derive their very Nature from the Mind of Man. These sort of Relations are called by the Schools *Entia Rationis*, or *second Notions*, which have no real Being, but by the Operation of the Mind.

III. The *third* Division of Modes shews us, they are either *intrinsical* or

C 5

*extrin-*

*extrinsical.* *Intrinsical Modes* are conceived to be in the Subject or Substance, as when we say a *Globe* is *round*, or *swift*, *rolling*, or *at rest*: Or when we say a *Man* is *tall*, or *learned*, these are *intrinsick Modes*: But *extrinsick Modes* are such as arise from something that is not in the Subject or Substance it self; but it is a manner of Being, which some Substances attain by Reason of something that is external or foreign to the Subject; as if I say, *this Globe lies within two Yards of the Wall*, or *this Man is beloved or hated*; such sort of Modes, as this last Example, are called *external Denominations*.

IV. There is a *fourth* Division much akin to this, whereby Modes are said to be *Inherent* or *Adherent*, that is, *Proper* or *Improper*. *Adherent* or *improper Modes* arise from the joining of some accidental Substance to the chief Subject, which yet may be separated from it; so when a *Bowl* is *wet*, or a *Man* is *clothed*, these are *adherent Modes*; for the Water and the Cloaths are distinct Substances which adhere to the Bowl, or

C.II.S.4. *The right Use of Reason.* 35

to the Man: But when we say, the *Bowl is swift or round*; when we say, the *Boy is strong or witty*, these are *proper or inherent Modes*, for they have a sort of *Inbeing* in the Substance it self, and don't arise from the Addition of any other Substance to it.

V. *Action and Passion* are Modes or Manners which belong to Substances, and should not entirely be omitted here. When a *Smith with a Hammer* strikes a piece of *Iron*, the *Hammer* and the *Smith* are both *Agents*, or Subjects of Action; the one is the *Prime* or *Supreme*, t<sup>o</sup>ther the *Subordinate*: The *Iron* is the *Patient*, or the Subject of Passion, in a *Philosophical* Sense, because it receives the Operation of the Agent: Though this Sense of the Words *Passion* and *Patient* differs much from the vulgar Meaning of them.

VI. The *sixth* Division of Modes may be into *Physical*; i. e. *Natural*, *Civil*, *Moral*, and *Supernatural*. So when we consider the Apostle *Paul*, who was a little Man, a *Roman* by the



Privilege of his Birth, a Man of Vertue or Honesty, and an inspired Apostle; his *low Stature* is a *physical* Mode, his being a *Roman* is a *civil* Privilege, his *Honesty* is a *moral* Consideration, and his being *inspired* is *Supernatural*.

VII. I might add in the last Place, that as *Modes* belong to *Substances*, so there are some also that are but *Modes of other Modes*: For though they subsist in and by the *Substance*, as the original Subject of them, yet they are properly and directly attributed to some *Mode* of that Substance. *Motion* is the Mode of a Body; but the *Swiftness*, or *Slowness* of it, or its *Direction to the North or South*, are but Modes of Motion. *Walking* is the Mode or Manner of Man, or of a Beast; but *Walking gracefully* implies a Manner or Mode superadded to that Action: All comparative and superlative Degrees of any Quality, are the *Modes of a Mode*, as *Swifter* implies a greater *Measure of Swiftness*.

It would be too tedious here to run through all the *Modes*, *Accidents*, and *Relations* at large, that belong to various

ous



C.H.S. 5. *The right Use of Reason.* 37  
ous Beings, and are copiously treated of  
in the Science call'd *Metaphysicks*, or  
more properly, *Ontology*.

---

SECT. V.  
*Of the ten Categories. Of Sub-  
stance modify'd.*

WE have thus given an Account of  
the two chief *Objects* of our  
*Ideas* (viz.) *Substances* and *Modes*, and  
their various *Kinds*. This Chapter briefly  
comprizes the greatest part of what is  
necessary, or useful in the famous ten  
*Predicaments* or *Categories* of *Aristo-  
tle*, on which there are endless Volumes  
of Discourses formed by several of his  
Followers; but that the Reader may  
not utterly be ignorant of them, let  
him know the Names are these; *Sub-  
stance, Quantity, Quality, Relation,  
Action, Passion, Where, When, Situ-  
ation* and *Cloathing*. 'Twould be meer  
Loss of Time to shew how loose, how  
injudicious, and even ridiculous, is this  
ten-fold Division of Things.

Besides *Substance* and *Mode*, some of the Moderns would have us consider the *Substance modified*, as a distinct Object of our Ideas; but I think there is no more that need be said on this Subject, than this, (*viz.*) There is some Difference between a Substance when it is considered *with all its Modes* about it, and cloathed in all its Manners of Existence, or when it is distinguish'd from them, and considered naked *without them*.

---

## SECT. VI.

Of *Not-Being*.

**A**S *Being* is divided into *Substance* and *Mode*, so we may consider *Not-Being* with Regard to both these.

I. *Not-Being* is considered as excluding all *Substance*, and then all *Modes* are also necessarily excluded, and this we call *pure Nibility*, or *meer Nothing*.

This

C.II.S.6. *The right Use of Reason.* 39

This *Nothing* is taken either in a *vulgar* or a *philosophical* Sense; so we say *there is nothing in the Cup*, in a *vulgar* Sense, when we mean there is no *Liquor* in it; but we cannot say *there is nothing in the Cup*, in a *strict Philosophical* Sense, while there is *Air* in it, and perhaps a *Million of Rays of Light* are there.

II. *Not-Being*, as it has relation to *Modes* or *Manners of Being*, may be considered either as a *meer Negation*, or as a *Privation*.

A *Negation* is the *Absence* of that which does not naturally belong to the *Thing* we are speaking of, or which has no *Right* or *Necessity* to be present with it, as when we say *a Stone is Inanimate*, or *Blind*, or *Deaf*, i. e. it has no *Life*, nor *Sight*, or *Hearing*; or when we say *a Carpenter* or *a Fisherman* is *unlearned*; these are *meer Negations*.

But a *Privation* is the *Absence* of what does naturally belong to the *Thing* we are speaking of, or which ought to be present with it, as when a *Man*, or a *Horse* is *deaf*, or *blind*, or *dead*, or  
if



if a *Physician* or a *Divine* be unlearned, these are called *Privations*: So the *Sinfulness* of any human *Action* is said to be a *Privation*, for Sin is that want of Conformity to the Law of God, which ought to be found in every Action of Man.

*Note*, There are some Writers who make all sort of *relative Modes* or *Relations*, as well as all *external Denominations* to be meer *Creatures of the Mind*, and *entia Rationis*, and then they rank them also under the general Head of *Not-Beings*; but it is my Opinion, that whatsoever may be determined concerning meer *mental Relations* and *external Denominations*, which seem to have something less of *Entity* or *Being* in them, yet there are many *real Relations*, which ought not to be reduced to so low a Class; such are the *Situation* of Bodies, their mutual *Distances*, their particular *Proportions* and *Measures*, the Notions of *Fatherhood*, *Brotherhood*, *Sonship*, &c. all which are *relative Ideas*. The very Essence of *Vertue* or *Holiness* consists in the Conformity of our Actions, to the Rule

C. III. *The right Use of Reason.* 41

Rule of Right Reason, or the Law of God; The Nature and Essence of *Sincerity*, is the Conformity of our Words and Actions to our Thoughts, all which are but *meer Relations*; and surely we must not reduce such positive Beings as *Piety*, and *Vertue*, and *Truth*, to the Rank of *Non-Entities*, which have nothing real in them, tho' *Sin* is properly a *Not-Being*, for 'tis a Want of *Piety* and *Vertue*.



C H A P. III.

*Of the several sorts of Perceptions  
or Ideas.*



DEAS may be divided with  
Regard to their *Original*, their  
*Nature*, their *Objects* and their  
*Qualities*.

SECT.

## SECT. I.

*Of sensible, spiritual, and abstracted Ideas.*

THERE has been a great Controversy, whether any of our Ideas are *innate* or no, *i. e.* born with us, and naturally belonging to our Minds. Mr. *Lock* utterly denies it; others as positively affirm it: Now, though this Controversy may be compromised, by allowing that there is a Sense, wherein our first Ideas of some Things may be said to be *innate*, yet it does not belong to this Place and Business, to have that Point debated at large, nor will it hinder our Pursuit of the present Work to pass it over in Silence.

There is sufficient Ground to say, that all our Ideas, with Regard to their *Original*, may be divided into *sensible, spiritual, and abstracted* Ideas.

*Sensible* or *corporeal Ideas* are derived originally from our Senses, and from the Communication which the Soul has  
with



C.III.S.1. *The right Use of Reason.* 43

with the animal Body in this present State; such are the Notions we frame of all *Colours, Sounds, Tastes, Figures, or Shapes and Motions*; for our Senses being conversant about particular sensible Objects, become the Occasions of several distinct Perceptions in the Mind; and thus we come by the Ideas of *Yellow, White, Heat, Cold, Soft, Hard, Bitter, Sweet*, and all those which we call *sensible Qualities*. All the Ideas which we have of *Body*, and the several Modes and Properties that belong to it, seem to be derived from *Sensation*.

And howsoever these may be treasured up in the *Memory*, and by the Work of *Fancy* may be increas'd, diminish'd, compounded, or diversified, (which we are ready to call *our Invention*) yet they all derive their first Nature and Being from something that has been let into our Minds by one or other of our Senses. If I think of a *golden Mountain*, or a *Sea of liquid Fire*, yet the single Ideas of *Sea, Fire, Mountain*, and *Gold* came into my Thoughts  
at

at first by Sensation; the Mind has only compounded them.

\* *Spiritual* or *intellectual Ideas* are those which we gain by reflecting on the Nature and Actions of our own Souls, and turning our Thoughts within our selves, and observing what is transacted in our own Minds. Such are the Ideas we have of *Thought, Assent, Dissent, Judging, Reason, Knowledge, Understanding, Will, Love, Fear, Hope.*

Here it may be noted, that though the first Original of these two sorts of Ideas, (*viz.*) *Sensible* and *Spiritual*, may be entirely owing to these two Principles, *Sensation* and *Reflection*, yet the *Recollection* and fresh *Excitation* of them may be owing to a thousand other Occasions and Occurrences of Life. We could never inform a Man who was born Blind or Deaf, what we mean by the Words, *Yellow, Blue, Red*, or by the Words, *Loud* or *Shrill*, nor con-

---

\* Note, Here the Word *Spiritual* is used in a meer natural, and not in a religious Sense.

C.III.S.1. *The right Use of Reason.* 45

vey any just Ideas of these Things to his Mind, by all the Powers of Language, unless he has experienced those Sensations of Sound and Colour; nor could we ever gain the Ideas of *Thought, Judgment, Reason, Doubting, Hoping, &c.* by all the Words that Man could invent, without turning our Thoughts inward upon the Actions of our own Souls. Yet when once we have attained these Ideas by *Sensation* and *Reflection*, they may be excited afresh by the Use of Names, Words, Signs, or by any thing else that has been connected with them in our Thoughts; for when two or more Ideas have been associated together, whether it be by Custom, or Accident, or Design, the one presently brings the other to Mind.

Besides these *two* which we have named, there is a *third* sort of Ideas which represent the Relations of Things to one another, and which are usually called *abstracted Ideas*, because we gain them by that Act of the Mind which we call *Abstraction*; such are *Cause, Effect, Likeness, Unlikeness, Subject, Object, Identity, or Sameness, and Contrariety*;



*trariety*; and all our Terms of Art in the various Sciences, as *Noun, Pronoun, Verb*, in Grammar; a *Metaphor, Irony, Hyperbole*, in Rhetoric, *Theorem, Postulate, Problem*, in Mathematicks; *Essence, Existence*, in Metaphysicks, or Ontology, &c.

These Ideas of the Relations of Things which I now call *abstracted Ideas*, do not seem to be derived directly and immediately from our *Senses*, nor immediately from the meer inward *Reflection* upon our Minds, but from a *Comparison* of several corporeal or spiritual Ideas together, we find there is a certain Relation which one hath to another, as of *Likeness*, or *Unlikeness*, *Cause*, and *Effect*, &c.

These abstracted Ideas cannot have their immediate and distinct Original, either from *Sensation* or *Reflection*, because the Nature and the Actions both of Body or of Spirit, give us occasion to frame exactly the same Ideas of *Cause*, and *Effect*, *Likeness*, *Contrariety*, &c. therefore these cannot be called either *sensible* or *spiritual* Ideas; for they are not exact *Representations*, ei-  
ther

C.III.S.I. *The right Use of Reason.* 47

*ther of the Qualities, or Actions of Spirit or Body*, but seem to be a distinct kind of Idea framed in the Mind, to represent the *Relations of Things to one another*, without any Regard to their Natures, whether they be *corporeal* or *spiritual*. And the same general Ideas of *Cause and Effect, Likeness, &c.* may be transfer'd to a thousand other Things, whether bodily or spiritual, besides those from whence we first derived them: Even those *abstracted Ideas* which might be first occasioned by *Bodies*, may be as properly afterward attributed to *Spirits*.

Now, though Mr. *Lock* supposes *Sensation* and *Reflection* to be the two only Springs of all Ideas, and that these two are sufficient to furnish our Minds with all that rich Variety of Ideas which we have; yet *Abstraction* is certainly a different Act of the Mind, whence these *abstracted Ideas* have their Original; though perhaps *Sensation* or *Reflection* may furnish us with all the first Objects and Occasions whence these *abstracted Ideas* are excited and derived. Nor in this Sense and View of Things would Mr. *Lock* himself utterly deny it.

SECT.

## SECT. II.

*Of simple and complex, compound  
and collective Ideas.*

**I**DEAS considered in their *Nature*, are either *simple* or *complex*.

A *simple Idea*, is one uniform Idea which cannot be divided or distinguished by the Mind of Man into two or more Ideas; such are a Multitude of our Sensations, as the Idea of *Sweet, Bitter, Cold, Heat, White, Red, Blue, Hard, Soft, Motion, Rest, Extension, Duration*: Such are also many of our spiritual Ideas; such as *Thought, Will, Wish, Knowledge, &c.*

A *complex Idea* is made by joining two or more simple Ideas together, as a *Square, a Triangle, a Cube, a Pen, a Table, Reading, Writing, Truth, Falshood, a Body, a Man, a Horse, an Angel, a heavy Body, a swift Horse, &c.* Every Thing that can be divided by the Mind into two or more Ideas is called *complex*.

*Complex*



C.III.S.2. *The right Use of Reason.* 49

*Complex Ideas* are often considered as *single* and *distinct Beings*, tho' they may be made up of several *simple Ideas*; so a *Body*, a *Spirit*, a *House*, a *Tree*, a *Flower*. But when several of these *Ideas* of a *different Kind* are joined together, which are wont to be considered as *distinct single Beings*, this is called a *compounded Idea*, whether these united *Ideas* be *simple* or *complex*. So a *Man* is compounded of *Body* and *Spirit*, so *Mithridate* is a *compound Medicine*, because it is made of many *different Ingredients*: This I have shewn under the Doctrine of *Substances*. And *Modes* also may be compounded; *Harmony* is a *compound Idea*, made up of *different Sounds* united; so several *different Virtues* must be united to make up the *compounded Idea* or *Character*, either of a *Hero*, or a *Saint*.

But when many *Ideas* of the *same Kind* are joined together and united in one Name, or under one View, it is called a *collective Idea*; so an *Army*, or a *Parliament*, is a *Collection* of Men; a *Dictionary* or *Nomenclatura* is a *Collection* of Words; a *Flock* is a *Collec-*

D

tion

*Voices too perhaps!*

50      *LOGICK: Or, Part I.*  
tion of Sheep; a *Forest*, or *Grove*, a  
Collection of Trees; a *Heap* is a Col-  
lection of Sand, or Corn, or Dust, &c.  
a *City* is a Collection of Houses; a  
*Noseday* is a Collection of Flowers; a  
*Month*, or a *Year*, is a Collection of  
Days, and a *Thousand* is a Collection  
of Units.

The Difference between a *compound*  
and *collective* Idea is this, that a *com-  
pound* Idea unites Things of a different  
Kind, but a *collective* Idea Things  
of the same Kind.

---

SECT. III.

*Of universal and particular Ideas,  
real and imaginary.*

**I**Deas, according to their *Objects*, may  
first be divided into *particular* or  
*universal*.

A *particular Idea* is that which re-  
presents one Thing only.

Sometimes the one Thing is repre-  
sented in a loose and indeterminate  
Manner,

C.III.S.3. *The right Use of Reason*, 51  
Manner, as when we say, *some Man*,  
*any Man*, *one Man*, *another Man*; *some*  
*Horse*, *any Horse*; *one City*, or *ano-*  
*ther*, which is called by the Schools *In-*  
*dividuum Vagum*.

Sometimes the *particular Idea* repre-  
sents one Thing in a determinate Man-  
ner, and than 'tis called a *singular Idea*;  
such is *Bucephalus* or *Alexander's Horse*,  
*Cicero* the Orator, *Peter* the Apostle,  
the Palace of *Versailles*, *this Book*, *that*  
*River*, the *new Forest*, or the City of  
*London*: That Idea which represents  
one particular determinate Thing to me  
is called a *singular Idea*, whether it be  
simple, or complex, or compound.

The Object of any particular Idea  
is sometimes called an *individual*; so  
*Peter* is an individual Man, *London*  
is an individual City, *this Book*, *one*  
*Horse*, *another Horse*, are all *Individu-*  
*als*; tho' the Word *Individual* is usual-  
ly limited to a *singular Idea*.

An *universal Idea* is that which re-  
presents a common Nature agreeing to  
several particular Things; so a *Horse*,  
a *Man*, or a *Book* are called *universal*  
Ideas,



*Ideas*, because they agree to all *Horses*, *Men*, or *Books*.

And I think it is not amiss to intimate, in this Place, that these *universal Ideas* are formed by that Act of the Mind which is called *Abstraction*; for when *singular Ideas* are first let into the Mind by Sensation or Reflection, then, in order to make them *universal*, we leave out, or drop, all those determinate Characters, Qualities, Modes, or Circumstances, which belong meerly to any particular Being; and we only contemplate those Properties of it, wherein it agrees with other Beings: Tho' it must be confess'd, that the Name of *abstracted Ideas* is not attributed to the universal Ideas of real *Substances*, in the same Propriety of Expression, as it is to the Ideas of the meer *Relations* of Things; of which we have before spoken.

An *universal Idea* is either *general* or *special*.

A *general Idea* is called by the Schools, a *Genus*; and it is one common Nature agreeing to several other common Natures. So *Animal* is a *Genus*,

C.III.S.3. *The right Use of Reason.* 53

*Genus*, because it agrees to *Horse*, *Lion*, *Whale*, *Butterfly*, which are also common Ideas; so *Fish* is a *Genus*, because it agrees to *Trout*, *Herring*, *Crab*, which are common Natures.

A *special Idea* is called by the Schools, a *Species*; it is one common Nature that agrees to several singular or Individual Beings; so *Horse* is a *special Idea*, or a *Species*, because it agrees to *Bucephalus*, *Trott* and *Snow-ball*. *City* is a *special Idea*, for it agrees to *London*, *Paris*, *Bristol*.

*Note*, 1<sup>st</sup>, Some of these *Universals* are *Genus*'s, if compared with less common Natures; and they are *Species*'s, if compared with Natures more common. So *Bird* is a *Genus*, if compared with *Eagle*, *Sparrow*, *Raven*, which are also common Natures: But it is a *Species*, if compared with the more general Nature, *Animal*. The same may be said of *Fish*, *Beast*, &c.

This Sort of universal Ideas, which may either be considered as a *Genus*, or a *Species*, is called *Subaltern*: But the highest *Genus*, which is never a *Species*, is called the *most general*; and the low-

54      *LOGICK: Or, Part I.*  
est *Species*, which is never a *Genus*,  
is called the *most special*.

*Note, II<sup>dly</sup>*, In universal Ideas it is  
proper to consider their *Comprehension*  
and their *Extension*.

The *Comprehension* of an Idea re-  
gards all the essential Modes and Pro-  
perties of it: So *Body* in its *Compre-  
hension* takes in *Solidity*, *Figure*, *Quan-  
tity*, *Mobility*, &c. So a *Bowl* in its  
*Comprehension* includes *Roundness*, *Vo-  
lubility*, &c.

The *Extension* of an universal Idea  
regards all the particular Kinds and single  
Beings that are contained under it. So a  
*Body* in its *Extension* includes *Sun*,  
*Moon*, *Star*, *Wood*, *Iron*, *Plant*, *Ani-  
mal*, &c. which are the several *Species*,  
or *Individuals*, under the general Name  
of *Body*. So a *Bowl*, in its *Extension*,  
includes a *wooden Bowl*, a *Brass Bowl*,  
a *white* and *black Bowl*, a *heavy Bowl*,  
&c. and all Kinds of Bowls, together  
with all the particular individual Bowls  
in the World.

*Note*, The *Comprehension of an Idea*  
is sometimes taken in so large a Sense  
as not only to include the essential At-  
tributes,



C.III.S.3. *The right Use of Reason.* 55  
tributes, but all the Properties, Modes  
and Relations, that belong to any Be-  
ing, as will appear *Chap. VI.*

This Account of *Genus* and *Species*  
is Part of that famous Doctrine of *Uni-  
versals*, which is taught in the Schools,  
with diverse other Formalities belong-  
ing to it; for it is in this Place, that  
they introduce *Difference*, which is the  
primary essential Mode, and *Property*  
or the secondary essential Mode, and *Ac-  
cident* or the accidental Mode; and  
these they call the *five Predicables*, be-  
cause every thing that is affirmed con-  
cerning any being, must be either the  
*Genus*, the *Species*, the *Difference*, the  
*Property*, or *Accident*: But what fur-  
ther is necessary to be said concerning  
these Things, will be mentioned when  
we treat of *Definition*.

Having finish'd the Doctrine of *uni-  
versal and particular Ideas*, I should  
take Notice of another Division of  
them, which may also be derived from  
their *Objects*; and that is, they are ei-  
ther *real* or *imaginary*.

*Real Ideas* are such as have a just  
Foundation in Nature, and have real  
D 4 Objects,

Objects, or Exemplars, actually existing, which these Ideas actually represent; such are all our Ideas of *Long, Broad, Swift, Slow, Wood, Iron, Men, Horses, Thoughts, Spirits, &c.*

*Imaginary Ideas*, which are also called *fantastical*, or *chimerical*, are such as are made by enlarging, diminishing, uniting, dividing real Ideas in the Mind, in such a Manner, as no Objects, or Exemplars, did ever exist in Nature, tho' the several Parts of these Ideas are borrowed from real Objects, such are the Conceptions we have of a *Centaur*, a *Satyr*, a *golden Mountain*, a *flying Horse*, a *Dog without a Head*, a *Bull less than a Mouse*, or a *Mouse as big as a Bull*.

Some of these *fantastic* Ideas are *possible*, that is, they are not utterly inconsistent in the Nature of Things; and therefore it is within the Reach of Divine Power to make such Objects; such are most of the Instances already given: But *Impossibles* carry an utter Inconsistence in the Ideas which are joined; such are *self-active Matter*, and *infinite or eternal Men*, a *pious Man*

C.III.S.4. *The right Use of Reason.* 57  
*Man without Honesty, or Heaven without Holiness.*

*† this is not impossible —*

#### SECT. IV.

*The Division of Ideas, with Regard to their Qualities.*

**I**Deas, with Regard to their *Qualities*, afford us these several Divisions of them. 1. They are either *clear* and *distinct*, or *obscure* and *confused*. 2. They are *vulgar* or *learned*. 3. They are *perfect* or *imperfect*. 4. They are *true* or *false*.

I. Our Ideas are either *clear* and *distinct*, or *obscure* and *confused*.

Several Writers have distinguished the *clear Ideas* from those that are *distinct*, and the *confused Ideas* from those that are *obscure*; and it must be acknowledged there may be some Difference between them; for it is the *Clearness* of Ideas for the most Part makes them *distinct*, and the *Obscurity* of Ideas is one thing that will always bring a Sort

D 5

of



of *Confusion* into them. Yet when these Writers come to talk largely upon this Subject, and to explain and adjust their Meaning with great Nicety, I have always found that they did not keep up the Distinction they first designed, but they confound the one with the other. I shall therefore treat of *clear* or *distinct Ideas*, as one and the same Sort, and *obscure*, or *confused Ideas*, as another.

A *clear and distinct Idea* is that which represents the Object to the Mind with full Evidence and Strength, and plainly distinguishes it from all other Objects whatsoever.

An *obscure and confused Idea* represents the Object either so faintly, so imperfectly, or so mingled with other Ideas, that the Object of it doth not appear plain to the Mind, nor purely in its own Nature, nor sufficiently distinguished from other Things.

When we see the *Sea* and *Sky* near at Hand, we have a *clear and distinct* Idea of each; but when we look far towards the Horizon, especially in a misty Day, our Ideas of both are but  
*obscure*

C.III.S4. *The right Use of Reason.* 59

*obscure and confused*; for we know not which is *Sea* and which is *Sky*. So when we look at the *Colours of the Rainbow* we have a *clear* Idea of the *red*, the *blue*, the *green* in the *Middle* of their several *Arches*, and a *distinct* Idea too, while the Eye fixes there; but when we consider the *Border* of those *Colours*, they so run into one another that renders their Ideas *confused* and *obscure*. So the Idea which we have of our *Brother*, or our *Friend*, whom we see daily, is *clear* and *distinct*; but when the Absence of many Years has injured the Idea, it becomes *obscure* and *confused*.

*Note here*, that some of our Ideas may be very *clear* and *distinct* in one Respect, and very *obscure* and *confused* in another. So when we speak of a *Chiliagonum*, or a *Figure of a thousand Angles*, we may have a *clear* and *distinct rational Idea* of the Number *one thousand Angles*, for we can demonstrate various Properties concerning it by Reason: But the *Image*, or *sensible Idea*, which we have in our Minds of the Figure, is but *confused* and *obscure*; for we can-

not precisely distinguish it by *Fancy* from the Image of a *Figure that has nine hundred Angles or nine hundred and ninety*. So when we speak of the *infinite Divisibility of Matter*, we always keep a very clear and distinct Idea of *Division and Divisibility*: But after we have made a little Progress in dividing, and come to Parts that are far too small for the Reach of our Senses, then our *Ideas*, or *sensible Images* of these little Bodies, become *obscure and indistinct*, and the Idea of *Infinite* is very *obscure, imperfect and confused*.

II. Ideas are either *vulgar* or *learned*. A *vulgar Idea* represents to us the most obvious and sensible Appearances that are contained in the Object of them: But a *learned Idea* penetrates farther into the Nature, Properties, Reasons, Causes and Effects of things. This is best illustrated by some Examples.

It is a *vulgar Idea* that we have of a *Rainbow*, when we conceive a large Arch in the Clouds made up of various Colours parallel to each other: But it is a *learned Idea* which a Philosopher has, when he considers it as the various  
Reflections



C.III.S.4. *The right Use of Reason.* 61

Reflections and Refractions of Sun-Beams, in Drops of falling Rain. So it is a *Vulgar Idea* which we have of the *Colours of solid Bodies*, when we perceive them to be, as it were, a red, or blue, or green Tincture of the Surface of those Bodies: But it is a *philosophical Idea*, when we consider the *various Colours* to be nothing else but different Sensations excited in us by the variously refracted Rays of Light, reflected on our Eyes in a different Manner, according to the different Shape, or Situation of the Particles of which the Surfaces of those Bodies are composed. It is a *vulgar Idea* which we have of a *Watch or Clock*, when we conceive of it as a pretty Instrument, made to shew us the Hour of the Day: But it is a *learned Idea* which the *Watch-Maker* has of it, who knows all the several Parts of it, the Spring, the Balance, the Chain, the Wheels, their Axles, &c. together with the various Connections and Adjustments of each Part, whence the exact and uniform Motion of the Index is derived, which points to the Minute  
and

and Hour. So when a common Understanding reads *Virgil's Aeneid*, he has, but a *vulgar Idea* of that Poem, yet his Mind is naturally entertained with the Story, and his Ears with the Verse: But when a *Critick*, or a Man who has Skill in Poesy, reads it, he has a *learned Idea* of its peculiar Beauties, he tastes and relishes a superior Pleasure; he admires the *Roman Poet*, and wishes he had known the *Christian Theology*, which would have furnished him with nobler Materials and Machines than all the *Heathen Idols*.

It is with a *vulgar Idea* that the World beholds the Cartons of *Raphael* at *Hampton Court*, and every one feels his Share of Pleasure and Entertainment: But a *Painter* contemplates the Wonders of that *Italian Pencil*, and sees a thousand Beauties in them, which the vulgar Eye neglected: His *learned Ideas* give him a transcendent Delight, and yet, at the same time, discover the Blemishes which the common Gazer never observed.

III. Ideas are either *perfect* or *imperfect*,

11951 8000 1190.

C.III.S.4. *The right Use of Reason.* 63

*fect*, which are otherwise called *adequate* or *inadequate*.

Those are *adequate Ideas* which perfectly represent their Archetypes. *Inadequate Ideas* are but a partial, or incomplete Representation of those Archetypes to which they are referred.

All our *simple Ideas* are in some Sense *adequate* or *perfect*, because *simple Ideas*, considered meerly as our first Perceptions, have no Parts in them: So we may be said to have a perfect Idea, of *White, Black, Sweet, Sour, Length, Light, Motion, Rest, &c.* We have also a perfect Idea of various Figures, as a *Triangle, a Square, a Cylinder, a Cube, a Sphere*, which are complex Ideas: But our Idea or Image of a *Figure of a thousand Sides*, our Idea of the *City of London*, or the *Powers of a Loadstone*, are very imperfect, as well as all our Ideas of *infinite Length or Breadth, infinite Power, Wisdom or Duration*; for the Idea of *infinite* is endless and ever growing, and can never be compleated.

*Note, 1.* When we have a perfect Idea of any thing in all its *Parts*, 'tis called



called a *complete Idea*; when in all its *Properties*, 'tis called *comprehensive*. But when we have but an *inadequate* and *imperfect* Idea, we are only said to *apprehend* it; therefore we use the Term *Apprehension*, when we speak of our Knowledge of God, who can never be *comprehended* by his Creatures.

*Note, 2.* Tho' there are a Multitude of Ideas which may be called *perfect*, or *adequate* in a *vulgar Sense*, yet there are scarce any Ideas which are *adequate* and *complete* in a *philosophical Sense*; for there is scarce any thing in the World that we know, as to all the Parts and Powers, and Properties of it in Perfection. Even so plain an Idea as that of a *Triangle*, has, perhaps, infinite Properties belonging to it, of which we know but a few. Who can tell what are the Shapes and Positions of those Particles, which cause all the Variety of Colours that appear on the Surface of things? Who knows what are the Figures of the little Corpuscles that compose and distinguish different Bodies? The Ideas of *Brass*, *Iron*, *Gold*,

C.III.S.4. *The right Use of Reason.* 65  
*Gold, Wood, Stone, Hyssop and Rosemary* have an infinite Variety of hidden Mysteries contained in the Shape, Motion and Position of the little Particles, of which they are composed; and, perhaps, infinite unknown Properties and Powers, that may be derived from them. And if we arise to the *Animal World*, or the *World of Spirits*, our Knowledge of them must be amazingly imperfect, when there is not the least *Grain of Sand*, or *empty Space*, but has too many Questions and Difficulties belonging to it for the wisest Philosopher upon Earth to answer and resolve.

IV. Our Ideas are either *true* or *false*; for an Idea being the Representation of a thing in the Mind, it must be either a *true* or a *false Representation* of it. If the Idea be conformable to the Object or Archetype of it, it is a *true* Idea; if not, it is a *false* one. So when a Man under the Jaundice sees *all things yellow*, he has a *false* Idea of them. So if we see the *Sun or Moon, rising or setting*, our Idea represents them *bigger* than when they are *on the Meridian*:

*dian*: And in this Sense it is a *false Idea*, because those heavenly Bodies are all Day, and all Night, of the same Bigness. Or when I see a *strait Staff* appear crooked while it is half under the Water; I say, the Water gives me a *false Idea* of it. So when I hear a Man use the Words *Church* and *Sacraments*, if I understand by these Words, a *Congregation of faithful Men, who profess Christianity, and the two Ordinances*, Baptism and the Lord's Supper, I have a *true Idea* of those Words in the common Sense of *Protestants*: but if the Man who speaks of them be a *Papist*, he means the *Church of Rome and the seven Sacraments*, and then I have a *mistaken Idea* of those Words, as spoken by him, for he has a different Sense and Meaning.

Some think that *Truth, or Falshood* properly belongs only to *Propositions*, which shall be the Subject of Discourse in the second Part of *Logick*; for if we consider *Ideas* as meer Impressions upon the Mind, made by outward Objects, those Impressions will ever be conformable to the Laws of Nature in such a Case:



C.III.S.4. *The right Use of Reason.* 67  
a Case : The *Water* will make a *Stick*  
appear *crooked*, and the *horizontal Air*  
will make the *Sun* and *Moon* appear  
*bigger*. And generally where there is  
*Falshood* in *Ideas*, there seems to be  
some *secret or latent Proposition*, where-  
by we judge falsely of things : This is  
more obvious where we take up the  
Words of a Writer or Speaker in a  
mistaken Sense, for we join his Words to  
our own Ideas, which are different from  
his. But after all, since Ideas are Pictures  
of Things, it can never be very im-  
proper to pronounce them to be *true*  
or *false*, according to their *Conformi-*  
*ty* or *Nonconformity* to their Exemp-  
lars.





## C H A P. IV.

*Of Words and their several Divisions, together with the Advantage and Danger of them.*

---

## SECT. I.

*Of Words in general, and their Use.*



HO' our Ideas are first acquired by the Perception of Objects, or various *Sensations* and *Reflections*, yet we convey them to each other by the Means of certain Sounds, or written Marks, which we call *Words*; and a great Part of our Knowledge is both obtained and communicated by *Language*.

But

C.IV.S.1. *The right Use of Reason.* 69

But as we are led into the Knowledge of Things by *Words*, so we are oftentimes led into Error, or Mistake, by the Use or Abuse of *Words* also. And in order to guard against such Mistakes, as well as to promote our Improvement in Knowledge, it is necessary to acquaint our selves a little with *Words* and *Terms*. We shall begin with these Observations.

*Observ.* 1. Words (whether they are spoken or written) have no natural Connection with the Ideas they are designed to signify, nor with the things which are represented in those Ideas. There is no Manner of Affinity between the Sounds *white* in *English*, or *blanc* in *French*, and that Colour which we call by that Name; nor have the Letters, of which these Words are composed, any natural Aptness to signify that Colour rather than *red* or *green*. Words and Names therefore are meer *arbitrary Signs* invented by Men to communicate their Thoughts, or Ideas, to one another.

*Observ.* 2. If one single Word were appointed to express but one simple Idea,



dea, and nothing else, as *White, Black, Sweet, Sour, Sharp, Bitter, Extension, Duration*, there would be scarce any Mistake about them.

But alas! it is a common Unhappiness in Language, that *different simple Ideas* are sometimes express'd by the *same Word*; so the Words *sweet* and *sharp* are applied both to the Objects of hearing and tasting, as we shall see hereafter; and this, perhaps, may be *one Cause* or Foundation of Obscurity and Error arising from Words.

*Observ.* 3. In communicating our complex Ideas to one another, if we could join as many peculiar and appropriated Words together in one Sound, as we join simple Ideas to make one complex one, we should seldom be in Danger of mistaking: When I express the Taste of an Apple, which we call the *Bitter-Sweet*, none can mistake what I mean.

Yet this Sort of *Composition* would make all Language a most tedious and unwieldy thing, since most of our Ideas are complex, and many of them have eight or ten simple Ideas in them; so  
that

C.IV.S.1. *The right Use of Reason.* 71

that the Remedy would be worse than the Disease; for what is now express'd in one short Word, as *Month*, or *Year*, would require two Lines to express it. It is necessary, therefore, that *single Words* be invented to express *complex Ideas*.

But here is our great Infelicity, that when *single Words* signify *complex Ideas*, one Word can never distinctly manifest all the Parts of a complex Idea, and thereby it will often happen, that one Man includes *more* or *less* in his Idea, than another does, while he affixes the *same* Word to it. In this Case there will be Danger of Mistake between them, for they do not mean the *same Object*, tho' they use the *same Name*. So if one Person, or Nation, by the Word *Year* mean twelve Months of thirty Days each, *i. e.* three hundred and sixty Days, another intend a *Solar Year* of three hundred sixty five Days, and a third mean a *Lunar Year*, or twelve *Lunar Months*, *i. e.* three hundred fifty four Days, there will be a great Variation and Error in their Account of Things, unless they are well apprized

of each other's meaning beforehand. This is supposed to be the Reason, why some ancient *Histories*, and *Prophecies*, and Accounts of *Chronology* are so hard to be adjusted. And this is the true Reason of so furious and endless Debates on many Points in Divinity; the Words *Church*, *Worship*, *Idolatry*, *Repentance*, *Faith*, *Election*, *Merit*, *Grace*, and many others which signify very *complex Ideas*, are not applied to include just the same simple Ideas, and the same Number of them, by the various contending Parties; thence arise Confusion and Contest.

*Observ. 4.* Tho' a *single Name* does not certainly manifest to us all the Parts of a *complex Idea*, yet it must be acknowledged, that in many of our *complex Ideas*, the single Name may point out to us some *chief Property* which belongs to the thing that the Word signifies; especially when the Word, or Name, is trac'd up to its Original thro' several Languages from whence it is borrowed. So an *Apostle* signifies *one who is sent forth*. But this tracing of a Word to its Original (which is called



C.IV.S.I. *The right Use of Reason.* 73

ed *Etymology*) is sometimes a very precarious and uncertain Thing: And after all, we have made but a little Progress towards the Attainment of the full meaning of a *complex Idea*, by knowing some one chief Property of it. We know but a small part of the Notion of an *Apostle*, by knowing barely that he is *sent forth*.

*Observ. 5.* Many (if not most) of our Words which are applied to *moral* and *intellectual Ideas*, when traced up to their Original in the learned Languages, will be found to signify *sensible* and *corporeal* Things: Thus the Words *Apprehension*, *Understanding*, *Abstraction*, *Invention*, *Idea*, *Inference*, *Prudence*, *Religion*, *Church*, *Adoration*, &c. have all a corporeal Signification in their Original. The Name *Spirit* it self signifies *Breath* or *Air*, in *Latin*, *Greek*, and *Hebrew*: Such is the Poverty of all Languages, they are forced to use these Names for *incorporeal* Ideas, which has a Tendency to Error and Confusion.

*Observ. 6.* The last thing I shall mention that leads us into many a Mistake, is, the Multitude of Objects that

E

one

one Name sometimes signifies: There is almost an infinite Variety of Things and Ideas both simple and complex, beyond all the Words that are invented in any Language; thence it becomes almost necessary, that one Name should signify several Things. Let us but consider the two Colours of *Yellow* and *Blue*, if they are mingled together in any considerable Proportion they make a *Green*: Now there may be infinite Differences of the Proportions in the Mixture of *Yellow* and *Blue*; and yet we have only these three Words, *Yellow*, *Blue*, and *Green*, to signify all of them.

When I use the Word *Shore*, I may intend thereby a *Coast of Land near the Sea*, or a *Drain to carry off Water*, or a *Prop to support a Building*; and by the Sound of the Word *Porter*, who can tell whether I mean a *Man who bears Burdens*, or a *Servant who waits at a Nobleman's Gate*? The World is fruitful in the Invention of *Utensils* of Life, and new *Characters* and *Offices* of Men, yet *Names* entirely new are seldom invented; therefore  
old

C.IV.S.1. *The right Use of Reason*, 75

old Names are necessarily used to signify new Things, which may occasion much Confusion and Error in the receiving and communicating of Knowledge.

Give me leave to propose one single Instance, wherein all these Notes shall be remarkably exemplified. 'Tis the Word *Bishop*, which in *French* is called *Evêque*; upon which I would make these several Observations. (1.) That there is no natural Connexion between the sacred Office hereby signified, and the Letters or Sound which signify this Office; for both these Words, *Evêque* and *Bishop* signify the same Office, though there is not one Letter alike in them; nor have the Letters which compose the *English* or the *French* Word, any thing sacred belonging to them, more than the Letters that compose the Words *King* or *Soldier*. (2.) If the Meaning of a Word could be learnt by its Derivation or Etymology, yet the original Derivation of Words is oftentimes very dark and unsearchable; for who would imagine that each of these Words are derived from the Latin *Epis-*



*copus*, or the Greek Ἐπίσκοπος? yet in this Instance we happen to know the Derivation; the *French* being anciently writ *Evesque*, is borrowed from the first part of the *Latin* Word; and the old English *Biscop* from the middle of it. (3.) The original *Greek* Word signifies an *Overlooker*, or one who stands higher than his Fellows, and overlooks them: It is a compound Word, that primarily signifies *sensible Ideas*, translated to signify or include several *moral* or *intellectual Ideas*; therefore all will grant, that the Nature of the Office can never be known by the meer Sound of the Word *Overlooker*. (4.) I add further, the Word *Bishop*, or *Episcopus*, even when it is thus translated from a sensible Idea, to include several intellectual Ideas, may yet equally signify an *Overseer* of the Poor; an *Inspector* of the Customs; a *Surveyor* of the Highways; a *Supervisor* of the Excise, &c. but by the Consent of Men, and the Language of Scripture, it is appropriated to signify a *sacred Office in the Church*. (5.) This very Idea and Name, thus translated from Things sensible,

C.IV.S.1. *The right Use of Reason.* 77

sible, to signifie a spiritual and sacred Thing, contains but one Property of it, (*viz.*) *one that has an Oversight, or Care over others*: But it does not tell us, whether it includes a *Care over one Church*, or *many*; over the *Laity*, or the *Clergy*. (6.) Thence it follows, that those who in the complex Idea of the Word *Bishop*, include an Oversight over the Clergy, or over a whole Diocese of People, a Superiority to Presbyters, a distinct Power of Ordination, &c. must necessarily disagree with those, who include in it only the Care of a single Congregation. Thus according to the various Opinions of Men, this Word signifies a *Pope*, a *Gallican Bishop*, a *Lutheran Superintendant*, an *English Prelate*, a *Pastor of a single Assembly*, or a *Presbyter* or *Elder*. Thus they quarrel with each other perpetually; and 'tis well if any of them all have hit precisely the Sense of the sacred Writers, and included just the same Ideas in it, and no others. I might make all the same Remarks on the Word *Church*, which has been the

S E C T. II.

*Of negative and positive Terms.*

FROM these and other Considerations it will follow, that if we would avoid Error in our Pursuit of Knowledge, we must take good heed to the Use of *Words* and *Terms*, and be acquainted with the various Kinds of them.

I. Terms are either *positive* or *negative*.

*Negative* Terms are such as have a little Word or Syllable of denying joined to them, according to the various Idioms of every Language, as *Unpleasant, Imprudent, Immortal, Irregular, Ignorant, Infinite, Endless, Lifeless, Deathless, Nonsense, Abyss, Anonymous*; where the Prepositions *Un,*  
*Im,*



C.IV.S.2. *The right Use of Reason.* 79

*Im, In, Non, A, An,* and the Termination *less*, signify a Negation, either in *English, Latin, or Greek.*

*Positive* Terms are those which have no such negative Appendices belonging to them, as *Life, Death, End, Sense, Mortal.*

But so unhappily are our Words and Ideas link'd together, that we can never know which are *positive* Ideas, and which are *negative*, by the Word that is used to express them, and that for these Reasons.

1<sup>st</sup>, There are some *positive Terms* which are made to signify a *negative Idea*; as *Dead* is properly a Thing that is deprived of *Life*; *Blind* implies a Negation or Privation of *Sight*; *Deaf* a Want of *Hearing*; and *Dumb* a Denial of *Speech*.

2<sup>dly</sup>, There are also some *negative Terms*, which imply *positive Ideas*, such as *immortal* and *deathless*, which signify *Ever-living*, or a Continuance in Life: *Insolent* signifies rude and haughty: *Indemnify* to keep safe: And *Infinite* perhaps has a *positive Idea* too, for it is an Idea ever growing; and when it

is applied to *God*, it signifies his *compleat Perfection*.

3<sup>dly</sup>, There are both *positive* and *negative* Terms, invented to signify the *same*, and *contrary* Ideas; as *Unhappy* and *Miserable*, *Sinless* and *Holy*, *Pure* and *Undefiled*, *Impure* and *Filthy*, *Unkind* and *Cruel*, *Irreligious* and *Profane*, *Unforgiving* and *Revengeful*, &c. and there is a great deal of Beauty and Convenience derived to any Language from this Variety of Expression; though sometimes it a little confounds our Conceptions of *Being* and *Not-Being*, our *positive* and *negative* Ideas.

4<sup>thly</sup>, I may add also, that there are some Words which are *negative* in their *original* Language, but seem *positive* to an *Englishman*, because the Negation is unknown; as *Abyss*, a Place without a Bottom; *Anodyne*, an easing Medicine; *Amnesty*, an Unremembrance or general Pardon; *Anarchy*, a State without Government; *Anonymous*, *i. e.* nameless; *Inept*, *i. e.* not fit; *Iniquity*, *i. e.* Unrighteousness; *Infant*, one that can't speak (*viz.*) a Child; *Injurious*, not doing Justice or Right.

The

C.IV.S.2. *The right Use of Reason.* 81

The Way therefore to know whether any Idea be *negative* or not, is, to consider whether it primarily imply the Absence of any positive Being, or Mode of Being; if it doth, then it is a *Negation* or *negative Idea*; otherwise it is a *positive* one, whether the Word that expresses it be positive or negative. Yet after all, in many Cases this is very hard to determine; as in *Amnesty*, *Infinite*, *Abyss*, which are originally Negative Terms, but they signify *Pardon*, &c. which seem to be Positives. So *Darkness*, *Madness*, *Clown*, are positive Terms; but they imply the Want of *Light*, the Want of *Reason*, and the Want of *Manners*; and perhaps these may be ranked among the negative Ideas.

Here Note, that in the *English* Tongue, *two negative* Terms are equal to *one positive*, and signify the same Thing, as, *not-unhappy* signifies *happy*; *not-immortal* signifies *mortal*; he is no *imprudent Man*, i. e. he is a *Man of Prudence*: But the Sense and Force of the Word in such a negative



way of Expression seems to be a little diminished.

---

### S E C T. III.

#### *Of simple and complex Terms.*

II. **T***erms* are divided into *simple* or *complex*. A *simple Term* is one Word, a *complex Term* is when more Words are used to signify one Thing.

Some Terms are *complex in Words*, but not in *Sense*, such is the *second Emperor of Rome*; for it excites in our Mind only the Idea of one Man (*viz.*) *Augustus*.

Some Terms are *complex in Sense*, but not in *Words*; so when I say an *Army*, a *Forest*, I mean a *Multitude of Men*, or *Trees*; and almost all our *moral* Ideas, as well as many of our *natural* ones are express'd in this manner; *Religion*, *Piety*, *Loyalty*, *Knavery*, *Theft*, include a variety of Ideas in each Term.

There

C.IV.S.3. *The right Use of Reason.* 83

There are other Terms which are *complex both in Words and Sense*; so when I say, a *fierce Dog*, or a *pious Man*, it excites an Idea, not only of those two Creatures, but of their peculiar Characters also.

Among the Terms that are *complex in Sense but not in Words*, we may reckon those simple Terms, which contain a *primary* and a *secondary* Idea in them; as when I hear my Neighbour speak that which is not true, and I say to him *this is not true*, or *this is false*, I only convey to him the naked Idea of his Error; this is the *primary Idea*: But if I say *'tis a Lye*, the Word *Lye* carries also a *secondary* Idea in it, for it implies both the Falshood of the Speech, and my Reproach and Censure of the Speaker. On the other hand, if I say *'tis a Mistake*, this carries also a *secondary Idea* with it; for it not only refers to the Falshood of his Speech, but it includes my Tenderness and Civility to him at the same Time. Another Instance may be this; when I use the Word *Incest*, *Adultery*, and *Murder*, I convey to another, not only the *pri-*  
E 6 *mary*

*mary Idea* of those Actions, but I include also the *secondary Idea* of their Unlawfulness, and my Abhorrence of them.

*Note, 1<sup>st</sup>*, Hence it comes to pass, that among Words which signify the same *principal Ideas*, some are *clean* and *decent*, others *unclean*; some *chaste*, others *obscene*; some are *kind*, others are *affronting* and *reproachful*, because of the *secondary Idea* which Custom has affixed to them. And it is the Part of a wise Man, when there is a Necessity of expressing any *evil Actions*, to do it either by a Word that has a secondary Idea of *Kindness*, or *Softness*; or a Word that carries in it an Idea of *Rebuke* and *Severity*, according as the Case requires: So when there is a Necessity of expressing things *unclean* or *obscene*, a wise Man will do it in the most *decent* Language, to excite as few uncleanly Ideas as possible in the Minds of the Hearers.

*Note, 2<sup>d</sup>*, In Length of Time, and by the Power of Custom, Words sometimes change their *primary Ideas*, as shall be declared, and sometimes they have



C.IV.S.3. *The right Use of Reason.* 85

have changed their *secondary Ideas*, though the *primary Ideas* may remain: So Words that were once *chaste*, by frequent Use, grow *obscene* and *uncleanly*; and Words that were once *honourable*, may in the next Generation grow *mean* and *contemptible*. So the Word *Dame* originally signified a Mistress of a Family, who was a *Lady*, and 'tis used still in the *English Law* to signify a *Lady*; but in common Use now-a-days it represents a *Farmer's Wife*, or a *Mistress of a Family, of the lower Rank in the Country*. So those Words of *Rabshakeh*, Isa. xxxvi. 12. in our Translation, *Eat their own Dung, and drink their own Piss*, were doubtless, decent and clean Language, when our Translators wrote them, above a hundred Years ago. The Word *Dung* has maintained its old secondary Idea and inoffensive Sense to this Day; but the *other Word* has by Custom acquired a more uncleanly Idea, and should now rather be changed into *Water*, and so it may be read in publick, unless it should be thought more proper to omit the Sentence.

For

For this Reason it is, that the *Jewish Rabbins* have supplied other chaste Words in the Margin of the *Hebrew Bible*, where the Words of the Text, through Time and Custom, are degenerated, so as to carry any base and *unclean secondary Idea* in them; and they read the Word which is in the Margin, which they call *Keri*, and not that which was written in the Text, which they call *Chetib*.

---

#### SECT. IV.

*Of Words common and proper.*

III. **WORDS** and *Names* are either *common* or *proper*. *Common Names* are such as stand for universal Ideas, or a whole Rank of Beings, whether general or special. These are called *Appellatives*; so *Fish, Bird, Man, City, River*, are common Names; and so are *Trout, Eel, Lobster*, for they all agree to many *Individuals*, and some of them to many *Species*: But *Cicero, Virgil,*

C.IV.S.4. *The right Use of Reason.* 87

*Virgil, Bucephalus, London, Rome, Aetna, the Thames,* are proper Names, for each of them agrees only to one *single Being.*

*Note* here *first*, that a *proper Name* may become in some Sense *common*, when it hath been given to several Beings of the same Kind ; so *Cæsar*, which was the proper Name of the first Emperor *Julius*, became also a common Name to all the following Emperors. And *Tea*, which was the proper Name of one sort of *Indian Leaf*, is now-a-days become a common Name for many Infusions of Herbs, or Plants, in *Water* ; as *Sage-Tea, Alehoof-Tea, Lemon-Tea, &c.* So *Peter, Thomas, John, William*, may be reckoned common Names also, because they are given to many Persons, unless they are determined to signify a single Person, at any particular Time, or Place.

*Note* in the *second Place*, that a *common Name* may become *proper* by Custom, or by the Time, or Place, or Persons that use it ; as in *Great Britain*, when we say *the King*, we mean our  
present



present rightful Sovereign, *King George*, who now reigns; when we speak of the *Prince*, we intend his Royal Highness, *George Prince of Wales*: If we mention the *City* when we are near *London*, we generally mean the *City of London*; when in a Country Town, we say the *Parson* or the *Esquire*, all the Parish knows who are the single Persons intended by it; so when we are speaking of the History of the New Testament, and use the Words *Peter*, *Paul*, *John*, we mean those three Apostles.

Note in the *third Place*, that any common Name whatsoever is made proper, by Terms of Particularity added to it, as the common Words *Pope*, *King*, *Horse*, *Garden*, *Book*, *Knife*, &c. are designed to signify a singular Idea, when we say the *present Pope*; *the King of Great Britain*; *the Horse that won the last Plate at New-Market*; *the Royal Garden at Kensington*; *this Book*; *that Knife*, &c.

SECT. V.

*Of concrete and abstract Terms.*

IV. **W**Ords or Terms are divided into *abstract* and *concrete*.

*Abstract* Terms, signify the Mode or Quality of a Being; without any Regard to the Subject in which it is; as *Whiteness, Roundness, Length, Breadth, Wisdom, Mortality, Life, Death.*

*Concrete* Terms, while they express the Quality, do also either express, or imply, or refer to some Subject to which it belongs; as *white, round, long, broad, wise, mortal, living, dead.* But these are not always *Noun Adjectives* in a grammatical Sense; for a *Fool, a Knave, a Philosopher*, and many other Concretes are *Substantives*, as well as *Knavery, Folly, and Philosophy*, which are the abstract Terms that belong to them.

## S E C T. VI.

*Of univocal and equivocal Words.*

V. *W*ords and *Terms* are either *univocal* or *equivocal*. *Univocal* Words, are such as signify but one Idea, or at least but one sort of Thing; *equivocal* Words are such as signify two or more different Ideas, or different sorts of Objects. The Words *Book*, *Bible*, *Fish*, *House*, *Elephant*, may be called *univocal* Words; for I know not that they signify any thing else but those Ideas to which they are generally affixt; but *Head* is an equivocal Word, for it signifies the Head of a *Nail* or a *Pin*, as well as of an *Animal*: *Nail* is an equivocal Word, it is used for the *Nail of the Hand* or *Foot*, and for an *iron Nail* to fasten any thing. *Post* is equivocal, 'tis a *Piece of Timber*, or a *swift Messenger*. A *Church* is a *religious Assembly*, or the *large fair Building* where they meet; and sometimes the same Word means a *Synod of Bishops*, or of *Presbyters*, and in some  
Places,



C.IV.S.6. *The right Use of Reason.* 91  
Places, it is the *Pope and a general Council.*

Here let it be noted, that when two or more Words signify the same Thing, as *Wave* and *Billow*, *Mead* and *Meadow*, they are usually called *synonymous Words*: But it seems very strange, that Words which are directly contrary to each other, should sometimes represent, almost the same Ideas; yet thus it is in some few Instances; a *valuable*, or an *invaluable* Blessing; a *shameful*, or a *shameless* Villain; a *thick Skull*, or a *thin skulled* Fellow, a meer *paper Skull*; a Man of a *large Conscience*, *little Conscience*, or no *Conscience*; a *famous Rascal*, or an *infamous* one: So uncertain a Thing is human Language, whose Foundation and Support is *Custom*.

As Words signifying the same Thing, are called *synonymous*; so *equivocal* Words, or those which signify several Things, are called *homonymous*, or *ambiguous*; and when Persons use such ambiguous Words, with a Design to deceive, it is called *Equivocation*.

Our

Our *simple Ideas*, and especially the *sensible Qualities*, furnish us with a great Variety of *equivocal*, or *ambiguous Words*; for these being the first, and most natural Ideas we have, we borrow some of their Names, to signify many other Ideas, both simple and complex. The Word *sweet*, expresses the pleasant Perceptions of almost every Sense; *Sugar* is sweet, but it hath not the same Sweetness as *Musick*; nor hath *Musick* the Sweetness of a *Rose*; and a sweet *Prospect*, differs from them all: Nor yet have any of these the same Sweetness as *Discourse*, *Counsel*, or *Meditation* hath; yet the royal *Psalmist* saith of a Man, *We took sweet Counsel together*; and of God, *My Meditation of him shall be sweet*. *Bitter* is also such an equivocal Word; there is bitter *Wormwood*, there are bitter *Words*, there are bitter *Enemies*, and a bitter *cold Morning*. So there is a Sharpness in *Vinegar*, and there is a Sharpness in *Pain*, in *Sorrow*, and in *Reproach*; there is a sharp *Eye*, a sharp *Wit*, and a sharp *Sword*: But there is not one of these seven *Sharpnesses*, the same as another of them, and a sharp  
East

C.IV.S.6. *The right Use of Reason.* 93

*East Wind*, is different from them all.

There are also *Verbs*, or Words of Action, which are equivocal as well as *Nouns*, or *Names*. The Words *to bear*, *to take*, *to come*, *to get*, are sufficient Instances of it; as when we say, *to bear a Burden*, *to bear Sorrow* or *Reproach*, *to bear a Name*, *to bear a Grudge*, *to bear Fruit*, or *to bear Children*; the Word *bear* is used in very different Senses. And so is the Word *get*, when we say, *to get Money*, *to get in*, *to get off*, *to get ready*, *to get a Stomach*, and *to get a Cold*, &c.

There is also a great deal of Ambiguity in many of the *English Particles*, as, *but*, *before*, *beside*, *with*, *without*, *that*, *then*, *there*, *for*, *forth*, *above*, *about*, &c. of which Grammars, and Dictionaries, will sufficiently inform us.



## SECT. VII.

*Various Kinds of equivocal Words.*

**I**T would be endless to run through all the Varieties of Words, and Terms, which have different Senses applied to them; I shall only mention, therefore, a few of the most remarkable, and most useful *Distinctions* among them.

1<sup>st</sup> The first *Division* of equivocal Words lets us know that some are equivocal *only in their Sound or Pronunciation*; others are equivocal *only in Writing*; and others, *both in Writing, and in Sound*.

Words equivocal *in Sound only*, are such as these; the *Rein* of a Bridle, which hath the same Sound with the *Reign* of a King, or a Shower of *Rain*, but all three have different Letters, and distinct Spelling. So *Might*, or Strength, is equivocal in Sound, but differs in Writing from *Mite*, a little Animal,

or

C.IV.S.7. *The right Use of Reason.* 95

or a small Piece of Money. And the Verb to *write*, has the same Sound with *Wright* a Workman, *Right* or *Equity*, and *Rite* or Ceremony ; but it is spelled very differently from them all.

Words equivocal *in Writing only*, are such as these ; to *tear* in Pieces, has the same Spelling with a *Tear* : To *lead*, or guide, has the same Letters as *Lead* the Metal : And a *Bowl* for Recreation, is written the same Way, as a *Bowl* for drinking, but the Pronunciation of all these is different.

But those Words which are most commonly, and justly called *equivocal*, are such as are both written and pronounced the same Way, and yet have different Senses or Ideas belonging to them ; such are all the Instances, which were given in the preceding Section.

Among the Words which are equivocal *in Sound only*, and *not in Writing*, there is a large Field for Persons who delight in *Jests* and *Puns*, in *Riddles* and *Quibbles*, to sport themselves. This Sort of Words is also used by wanton Persons, to convey *lewd Ideas*, under the Covert of *chaste Expressions*,  
which

which are called *double Entendres*; or when Persons speak *Falshood* with a Design to deceive, under the Covert of *Truth*. Though it must be confest, that all Sorts of equivocal Words, yield sufficient Matter for such Purposes.

There are many Cases also, wherein an equivocal Word is used for the sake of *Decency* to cover a *foul Idea*: For the most chaste, and modest, and well-bred Persons, having sometimes a Necessity to speak of the Things of Nature, convey their Ideas in the most inoffensive Language by this Means. And indeed, the meer Poverty of all Languages, makes it necessary to use *equivocal Words* upon many Occasions, as the common Writings of Men, and even the holy Book of God sufficiently manifest.

2<sup>dly</sup>, Equivocal Words are usually distinguished into such, whose various Senses arise from *meer Chance* or *Accident*, and such as are made equivocal by *Design*; as the Word *Bear* signifies a *shaggy Beast*, and it signifies also to *bear or carry a Burden*; this seems to be the meer effect of *Chance*: But  
if



C.IV S 7. *The right Use of Reason.* 97

if I call my Dog, *Bear*, because he is shaggy, or call one of the *Northern Constellations* by that Name, from a fancied Situation of the Stars in the Shape of that Animal, then it is by *Design*, that the Word is made, yet further equivocal.

But because I think this common Account of the Spring, or Origin of equivocal Words is too slight and imperfect, I shall reserve this Subject to be treated of by it self, and proceed to the *third Division*.

3<sup>dly</sup>, Ambiguous or equivocal Words, are such, as are sometimes taken in a *large and general Sense*, and sometimes in a *Sense more strict and limited*, and have different Ideas affix'd to them accordingly. *Religion* or *Virtue* taken in a large Sense, includes both our *Duty to God and our Neighbour*; but in a more strict, limited, and proper Sense, *Virtue* signifies our *Duty towards Men*, and *Religion*, our *Duty to God*. *Virtue* may yet be taken in the strictest Sense, and then it signifies *Power or Courage*, which is the Sense of it, in some Places of the

F

New

New Testament. So *Grace* taken in a large Sense, means the *Favour of God*, and all the spiritual Blessings that proceed from it, (which is a frequent Sense of it in the Bible) but in a limited Sense, it signifies the *Habit of Holiness* wrought in us by Divine Favour, or a complex Idea of the *Christian Virtues*. It may be also taken in the strictest Sense; and thus it signifies any *single Christian Virtue*, as in 2 Cor. viii. 6, 7. where 'tis used for *Liberality*. So a *City*, in a strict and proper Sense, means the *Houses inclosed within the Walls*; in a larger Sense it reaches to all the *Suburbs*.

This *larger and stricter* Sense of a Word is used in almost all the Sciences, as well as in Theology, and in common Life. The Word *Geography*, taken in a *strict Sense*, signifies the Knowledge of the Circles of the earthly Globe, and the Situation of the various Parts of the Earth; when 'tis taken in a *little larger Sense*, it includes the Knowledge of the Seas also; and in the *largest Sense* of all, it extends to the various Customs, Habits, and Governments of Nations. When an Astronomer uses the Word *Star* in its proper and strict Sense, 'tis applied

C.IV.S.7. *The right Use of Reason.* 99

plied only to the *fix'd Stars*, but in a large Sense, it includes the *Planets* also.

This equivocal Sense of Words belongs also to many proper Names: So *Asia* taken in the largest Sense, is one Quarter of the World; in a more limited Sense, it signifies *Natolia*, or the lesser *Asia*; but in the strictest Sense, it means no more than one little Province of *Natolia*, where stood the Cities of *Ephesus*, *Smyrna*, *Sardis*, &c. and this is the most frequent Sense of it in the New Testament. *Flanders* and *Holland* in a strict Sense, are but two single Provinces among the seventeen; but in a large Sense, *Holland* includes seven of them, and *Flanders* ten.

There are also some very common and little Words in all Languages, that are used in a more *extensive* or more *limited* Sense; such as *all*, *every*, *who-soever*, &c. When the Apostle says, *all Men have sinned*, and *all Men must die*, *all* is taken in its most universal and extensive Sense, including *all Mankind*, Rom. v. 12. When he appoints *Prayer to be made for all Men*, it appears by the following Verses, that he restrains the Word *all* to signify chiefly



*all Ranks and Degrees of Men*, 1 Tim. ii. 1. But when St. Paul says, *I please all Men in all Things*, 1 Cor. x. 33. the Word *all* is exceedingly limited, for it reaches no farther, than that he pleased all those Men *whom he conversed with*, in all Things that were *lawful*.

4<sup>thly</sup>, Equivocal Words are in the fourth Place distinguished by their *literal* or *figurative* Sense. Words are used in a *proper* or *literal* Sense, when they are designed to signify those Ideas for which they were originally made, or to which they are primarily and generally annexed; but they are used in a *figurative* or *tropical* Sense, when they are made to signify some Things, which only bear either a *Reference* or a *Resemblance* to the primary Ideas of them. So when two *Princes* contend by their Armies, we say they are at *War* in a proper Sense; but when we say there is a *War* betwixt the *Winds* and the *Waves* in a Storm, this is called *Figurative*, and the peculiar Figure is a *Metaphor*. So when the Scripture says, *Riches make themselves Wings, and fly away as an Eagle toward Heaven*,

C.IV.S.7. *The right Use of Reason.* For *ven*, the *Wings* and the *Flight* of the Eagle are *proper* Expressions; but when *Flight* and *Wings* are applied to *Riches*, it is only by Way of *Figure* and *Metaphor*. So when Man is said to *repent*, or *laugh* or *grieve*, 'tis literally taken; but when God is said to *be grieved*, to *repent*, to *laugh*, &c. these are all figurative Expressions, borrowed from a Resemblance to Mankind. And when the Words *Job* or *Esther* are used to signify those very Persons, 'tis the *literal* Sense of them; but when they signify those two Books of Scripture, this is a *figurative* Sense. The Names of *Horace*, *Juvenal*, and *Milton*, are used in the same manner, either for *Books* or *Men*.

When a Word, which originally signifies any particular Idea or Object, is attributed to several other Objects, not so much by way of *Resemblance*, but rather on the account of some evident *Reference* or *Relation* to the original Idea, this is sometimes peculiarly called an *analogical* Word; so a *sound* or *healthy Pulse*; a *sound Digestion*; *sound Sleep*, are all so called,

led, with *Reference* to a *sound* and *healthy* Constitution; but if you speak of *sound Doctrine*, or *sound Speech*, this is by way of *Resemblance* to Health, and the Words are *metaphorical*: Yet many Times *Analogy* and *Metaphor* are used promiscuously in the same Sense, and not distinguished.

Here *Note*, That the Design of *metaphorical Language* and *Figures of Speech*, is not meerly to represent our Ideas, but to represent them with *Vivacity*, *Spirit*, *Affection*, and *Power*; and though they often make a deeper Impression on the Mind of the Hearer, yet they do as often lead him into a Mistake, if they are used at improper Times and Places. Therefore, where the Design of the Speaker or Writer is meerly to *explain*, to *instruct*, and to lead into the Knowledge of naked Truth, he ought, for the most part, to use *plain* and *proper* Words, if the Language affords them, and not to deal much in *figurative Speech*. But this sort of Terms is used very profitably by *Poets* and *Orators*, whose Business is to move, and persuade, and work on the Passions,



C.IV.S.7. *The right Use of Reason.* 103

ons, as well as on the Understanding. Figures are also happily employ'd in proverbial *moral Sayings* by the *wisest* and the *best* of Men, to impress them deeper on the Memory by *sensible Images*; and they are often used for other valuable Purposes in the *sacred Writings*.

5<sup>thly</sup>, I might adjoin another sort of *equivocal Words*; as, there are some which have a different Meaning in *common Language*, from what they have in the *Sciences*; the Word *Passion* signifies the *receiving any Action* in a large philosophical Sense; in a more limited philosophical Sense, it signifies *any of the Affections of human Nature*, as *Love, Fear, Joy, Sorrow, &c.* But the *common People* confine it only to *Anger*. So the Word *simple* philosophically signifies *single*, but vulgarly 'tis used for *foolish*.

6<sup>thly</sup>, Other equivocal Words are used sometimes in an *absolute Sense*, as when God is called *perfect*, which allows of no Defect; and sometimes in a *comparative Sense*, as good Men are oftentimes called *perfect* in Scripture, in Comparison of those who are much in-

ferior to them in Knowledge or Holiness: But I have dwelt rather too long upon this Subject already, therefore I add no more.

---

### S E C T. VIII.

#### *The Origin or Causes of equivocal Words.*

NOW, that we may become more skilful in guarding our selves and others against the Dangers of Mistake which may arise from *equivocal Words*, it may not be amiss to conclude this Chapter, with a short Account of the various Ways or Means whereby a Word changes its Signification, or acquires any new Sense, and thus becomes *equivocal*, especially if it keep its old Sense also.

1. *Meer Chance* sometimes gives the same Word different Senses; as the Word *Light* signifies a *Body that is not heavy*; and it also signifies the *Effect of Sun-Beams*, or the *Medium whereby we see Objects*: This is merely acci-

C.IV.S.8. *The right Use of Reason.* 105

accidental, for there seems to be no Connection between these two Senses, nor any Reason for them.

2. *Error and Mistake* is another Occasion of giving various Senses to the same Word; as when different Persons read the Names of *Priest, Bishop, Church, Easter, &c.* in the New Testament, they affix different Ideas to them, for want of Acquaintance with the true Meaning of the sacred Writer; though it must be confess'd, these various Senses, which might arise at first from honest Mistake, may be culpably supported and propagated by *Interest, Ambition, Prejudice*, and a *Party-Spirit* on any side.

3. *Time and Custom* alters the meaning of Words. *Knave* heretofore, signified a *diligent Servant* (*Gnavus*;) and a *Villain* was a *meaner Tenant to the Lord of the Mannor* (*Villicus*;) but now both those Words carry an Idea of Wickedness and Reproach in them. A *Ballad* once signified a solemn and sacred Song, as well as one that is trivial, when *Solomon's Song* was called the *Ballad of Ballads*; but now 'tis



applied to nothing but trifling Verse, or comical Subjects.

4. Words change their Sense by *Figures* and *Metaphors*, which are derived from some *real Analogy* or *Resemblance* between several Things; as when *Wings* and *Flight* are applied to *Riches*, it signifies only, that the Owner may as easily lose them, as he would lose a Bird who flew away with Wings.

And I think, under this Head, we may rank those Words, which signify different Ideas, by a sort of an unaccountable far-fetcht *Analogy*, or distant *Resemblance*, that Fancy has introduced between one thing and another; as when we say, the *Meat* is *green* when it is *half-roasted*: We speak of *airing Linen by the Fire*, when we mean *drying* or *warming* it: We call for *round Coals* for the Chimney, when we mean *large square ones*: And we talk of the *Wing of a Rabbit*, when we mean the *Fore-Leg*: The true Reason of these Appellations we leave to the Criticks.

5. Words also change their Sense by the *special Occasion* of using them,  
the

C.IV.S.8. *The right Use of Reason.* 167  
the *peculiar manner of Pronunciation*,  
the *Sound of the Voice*, the *Motion of*  
*the Face*, or *Gestures of the Body*; so  
when an angry Master says to his Ser-  
vant, 'tis *bravely done*, or *you are a*  
*fine Gentleman*, he means just the con-  
trary; namely, 'tis *very ill done*; *you*  
*are a sorry Fellow*: 'Tis one way of  
giving a severe Reproach, for the  
Words are spoken by way of *Sarcasm*  
or *Irony*.

6. Words are applied to various Sen-  
ses, by *new Ideas* appearing or arising  
faster than *new Words* are framed. So  
when *Gun-Powder* was found out, the  
Word *Powder*, which before signified  
only *Dust*, was made then to signify  
that *Mixture or Composition of Nitre,*  
*Charcoal, &c.* and the Name *Canon*,  
which before signified a *Law* or a  
*Rule*, is now also given to a *great*  
*Gun*, which gives Laws to Nations.  
So Footboys, who had frequently the  
common Name of *Jack* given them,  
were kept to turn the Spit, or to pull  
off their Masters Boots; but when In-  
struments were invented for both those  
Services, they were both called *Jacks*,

though one was of Iron, t'other of Wood, and very different in their Form.

7. Words alter their Significations according to the *Ideas of the various Persons, Sects, or Parties* who use them, as we have hinted before; so when a *Papist* uses the Word *Heretics*, he generally means the *Protestants*; when a *Protestant* uses the Word, he means any *Persons who are wilfully* (and perhaps contentiously) *obstinate in fundamental Errors*. When a *Jew* speaks of the *true Religion*, he means the *Institutions of Moses*; when a *Turk* mentions it, he intends the *Doctrine of Mahomet*; but when a *Christian* makes use of it, he designs to signify *Christianity*, or the *Truths and Precepts of the Gospel*.

8. Words have different Significations according to the *Book, Writing, or Discourse* in which they stand. So in a *Treatise of Anatomy*, a *Foot* signifies that *Member in the Body of Man*: But in a *Book of Geometry or Mensuration*, it signifies *twelve Inches*.



C.IV.S.8. *The right Use of Reason.* 109

If I had room to exemplify most of these Particulars in one single Word, I know not where to chuse a fitter than the Word *Sound*, which seems (as it were) by *Chance*, to signify three distinct Ideas, (*viz.*) *Healthy* (from *Sanus*) as a sound *Body*; *Noise* (from *Sonus*) as a *shrill* Sound; and to sound the *Sea* (from the *French Sonde* a Probe.) From these three, which I may call *original Senses*, various *derivative Senses* arise; as sound *Sleep*, sound *Lungs*, sound *Wind* and *Limb*, a sound *Heart*, a sound *Mind*, sound *Preaching*, a sound *Divine*, sound *Reason*, a sound *Cask*, sound *Timber*, a sound *Reproof*, to *beat one* soundly, to sound ones *Meaning* or *Inclination*, and a sound or narrow *Sea*; turn all these into *Latin*, and the Variety will appear plain.

I confess, some few of these which I have mentioned, as the different Springs of equivocal Words, may be reduced in some Cases to the same original: But it must also be granted, that there may be other Ways beside these, whereby a Word comes to extend its Signification, to include various Ideas, and become *equivocal*. And though it is  
the

the Business of a *Grammarian* to pursue these Remarks with more Variety and Particularity, yet it is also the Work of a *Logician* to give Notice of these Things, lest Darkness, Confusion, and Perplexity be brought in- to our Conceptions by the Means of Words, and thence our *Judgments* and *Reasonings* become erroneous.



## CHAP. V.

*General Directions relating to our Ideas.*

### SECT. I.

*Of acquiring a Treasure of Ideas.*

*Direction I.* **F***urnish your selves with a rich Variety of Ideas ; acquaint your selves with Things antient and modern ; Things natural, civil, and religious ; Things domestick, and national ; Things of your native*  
I
Land,

C.V.S.1. *The right Use of Reason.* 111

Land, and of foreign Countreies; Things present, past, and future; and above all, be well acquainted with God and your selves; learn animal Nature, and the workings of your own Spirits.

Such a general Acquaintance with Things will be of very great Advantage.

The *first Benefit* of it is this; it will assist the Use of Reason in all its following Operations; it will teach you to *judge* of Things *aright*, to *argue justly*, and to *methodise* your Thoughts with *Accuracy*. When you shall find several Things a-kin to each other, and several different from each other, agreeing in some Part of their Idea, and disagreeing in other Parts, you will range your Ideas in better Order, you will be more easily led into a distinct Knowledge of Things, and will obtain a rich Store of proper Thoughts and Arguments upon all Occasions.

You will tell me, perhaps, that you design the Study of the *Law* or *Divinity*; and what Good can natural *Philosophy* or *Mathematicks* do you, or any other Science, not directly subordinate to your chief Design? But let  
it



it be considered, that all Sciences have a sort of mutual Connection; and Knowledge of all Kinds fits the Mind to reason and judge better concerning any particular Subject. I have known a *Judge* upon the Bench betray his Ignorance, and appear a little confused in his Sentiments about a Case of suspected Murder brought before him, for want of some Acquaintance with *animal Nature* and *Philosophy*.

*Another Benefit* of it is this; such a large and general Acquaintance with Things, will secure you from *perpetual Admirations* and *Surprises*, and guard you against that Weakness of ignorant Persons, who have never seen any thing beyond the Confines of their own Dwelling, and therefore they wonder at almost every Thing they see; every Thing beyond the Smoke of their own Chimney, and the Reach of their own Windows, is new and strange to them.

*A third Benefit* of such an universal Acquaintance with Things, is this; it will keep you from being too positive and *dogmatical*, from an Excess of *Credulity* and *Unbelief*; *i. e.* a Readiness  
to

C.V.S.1. *The right Use of Reason.* 113

to believe, or to deny every Thing at first hearing; when you shall have oft-en seen, that strange and uncommon Things, which once seemed incredible, are found to be true, and Things very commonly received, have been found false.

The *Way of attaining such an extensive Treasure of Ideas*, is, with Diligence to apply your self to read the best Books; converse with the most knowing and the wisest of Men; and endeavour to improve by every Person in whose Company you are; suffer no Hour to pass away in a lazy Idleness, in impertinent Chattering, or useless Trifles: Visit other Cities and Countries when you have seen your own, under the Care of one who can teach you to profit by Traveling, and to make wise Observations; indulge a just Curiosity in seeing the Wonders of Art and Nature; search into Things your selves, as well as learn them from others; be acquainted with Men as well as Books; learn all Things as much as you can at first Hand; and let as many of your Ideas as possible be the Representations of Things, and not meerly the Representations

rions of other Mens Ideas: Thus your Soul, like some noble Building, shall be richly furnished with original Paintings, and not with meer Copies.

---

## SECT. II.

### *Of retaining Ideas in Memory.*

Direct. II. **USE** the most proper Methods to retain that Treasure of Ideas which you have acquir'd; for the Mind is ready to let many of them slip, unless some Pains and Labour be taken to fix them upon the Memory.

And more especially, let those Ideas be laid up and preserved with the greatest Care, which are most directly suited, either to your *eternal Welfare* as a *Christian*, or to your *particular Station and Profession* in this Life; for though the former Rule recommends an universal Acquaintance with Things, yet it is but a more general and superficial Knowledge that is required or expected of any Man, in Things which  
are



C.V.S.2. *The right Use of Reason.* 115

are utterly foreign to his own Business; but it is necessary you should have a more particular and accurate Acquaintance with those Things that refer to your peculiar Province and Duty in this Life, or your Happiness in another.

There are some Persons who never arrive at any deep, solid, or valuable Knowledge in any Science, or any Business of Life, because they are perpetually fluttering over the Surface of Things in a curious and wandring Search of infinite Variety; ever hearing, reading, or asking after something new, but impatient of any Labour to lay up and preserve the Ideas they have gained: Their Souls may be compared to a *Looking-Glass*, that wheresoever you turn it, it receives the Images of all Objects, but retains none.

In order to preserve your Treasure of Ideas, and the Knowledge you have gained; pursue these Advices, especially in your younger Years.

1. *Recollect every Day the Things you have seen, or heard, or read*, which may have made any Addition to your Understanding: Read the Writings of God and  
Men

Men with Diligence, and perpetual Reviews: Be not fond of hastning to a new Book, or a new Chapter, till you have well fixed and established in your Minds what was useful in the last: Make use of your Memory in this manner, and you will sensibly experience a gradual Improvement of it, while you take Care not to load it to Excess.

2. *Talk over the Things which you have seen, heard, or learnt, with some proper Acquaintance*; this will make a fresh Impression upon your Memory; and if you have no fellow Student at hand, none of equal Rank with your selves, tell it over to any of your Acquaintance, where you can do it with Propriety and Decency; and whether they learn any thing by it or no, your own Repetition of it will be an Improvement to your self: And this Practice also will furnish you with a *Variety of Words*, and copious Language, to express your Thoughts upon all Occasions.

3. Commit to writing some of the most considerable Improvements which you daily make, at least such Hints

as

C.V.S.2. *The right Use of Reason.* 117

as may recall them again to your Mind, when perhaps they are vanish'd and lost. And here I think Mr. *Lock's* Method of *Adversaria*, or *common Places* which he describes in the end of the first Volume of his *posthumous Works*, is the best; using no learned Method at all, setting down Things as they occur, leaving a distinct Page for each Subject, and making an Index to the Pages.

At the end of every Week, or Month, or Year, you may review your Remarks for these two Reasons: *first*, to judge of your own Improvement, when you shall find, that many of your younger Collections are either weak and trifling; or if they are just and proper, yet they are grown now so familiar to you, that you will thereby see your own Advancement in Knowledge. And in the next Place what Remarks you find there worthy of your riper Observation, you may note them with a marginal Star, instead of transcribing them, as being worthy of your second Year's Review, when the others are neglected.

To shorten something of this Labour, if the Books which you read are your  
own



own, mark with a Pen, or Pencil, the most considerable Things in them, which you desire to remember. Thus you may read that Book the second Time over with half the Trouble, by your Eye running over the Paragraphs, which your Pencil has noted. 'Tis but a very weak Objection, against this Practice, to say, *I shall spoil my Book*; for I persuade my self, that you did not buy it as a *Bookseller* to sell it again for Gain; but as a *Scholar* to improve your Mind by it; and if the Mind be improved, your Advantage is abundant, tho' your Book yield less Money to your Executors.

---

Note, This Advice of *Writing, Marking, and Reviewing* your Marks, refers chiefly to those *occasional Notions* you meet with, either in Reading, or in Conversation; But when you are *directly and professedly* pursuing any Subject of Knowledge in a good System in your younger Years, the *System* it self is your *Common-Place Book*, and must be entirely reviewed. The same may be said concerning any *Treatise* which closely, succinctly and accurately handles any particular Theme.

SECT.

SECT. III.

*Of selecting useful Ideas.*

Direct. III. *AS* you proceed both in Learning and in Life, make a wise Observation what are the Ideas, what the Discourses and the Parts of Knowledge, that have been more or less useful to your self or others. In our younger Years, while we are furnishing our Minds with a Treasure of Ideas, our Experience is but small, and our Judgment weak; 'Tis therefore impossible at that Age to determine aright concerning the *real Advantage* and *Usefulness* of many Things we learn. But when Age and Experience have matured your Judgment, then you will gradually drop the more *useless Part* of your younger Furniture, and be more solicitous to retain that which is most necessary for your Welfare in this Life, or a better. Hereby you will come to make the same Complaint that almost every learned Man has done, after long Experience in Study, and in the Affairs of human Life and

and Religion; *Alas! how many Hours, and Days, and Months, have I lost in pursuing some Parts of Learning, and in reading some Authors, which have turned to no other Account, but to inform me, that they were not worth my Labour and Pursuit!* Happy the Man who has a wise Tutor to conduct him thro' all the Sciences in the first Years of his Study; and who has a prudent Friend always at Hand to point out to him, from Experience, how much of every Science is worth his Pursuit! and happy the Student that is so wise as to follow such Advice!

---

#### SECT. IV.

*Of the Government of our Thoughts.*

Direct. IV. **L**Earn to acquire a Government over your Ideas and your Thoughts, that they may come when they are called, and depart when they are bidden. There are some Thoughts that rise and intrude upon us while we shun them; there are others that



C.V.S 7. *The right Use of Reason.* 121

that fly from us, when we would hold and fix them.

If the *Ideas* which you would willingly make the Matter of your present Meditation *are ready to fly from you*, you must be obstinate in the Pursuit of them by an Habit of fixed Meditation; you must keep your Soul to the Work, when it is ready to start aside every Moment, unless you will abandon your self to be a Slave to every wild Imagination. It is a common, but it is an unhappy and a shameful Thing, that every Trifle that comes across the Senses or Fancy, should divert us, that a buzzing Fly should teize our Spirits, and scatter our best Ideas; But we must learn to be deaf and regardless of other Things, besides that which we make the present Subject of our Meditation: And in order to help a wandring and fickle Humour, it is useful to have a Book or Paper in our Hands, which has some proper Hints of the Subject that we design to pursue. We must be resolute and laborious, and sometimes conflict with our selves if we would be wise and learned.

G

Yet

Yet I would not be too severe in this *Rule*: It must be confess'd there are *Seasons* when the Mind, or rather the Brain, is *overtired*, or *jaded* with Study, or thinking; or upon some other Accounts Animal Nature may be *languid* or *cloudy*, and unfit to assist the Spirit in Meditation; at such *Seasons*, (provided that they return not too often) it is better, sometimes, to yield to the present Indisposition; for if Nature intirely resist, nothing can be done to the Purpose, at least, in that Subject or Science. Then you may think it proper to give your self up to some Hours of *Leisure* and *Recreation*, or *useful Idleness*; or if not, then turn your Thoughts to some *other alluring Subject*, and pore no longer upon the *first*, till some brighter, or more favourable Moments arise. A Student shall do more in one Hour, when all Things concur to invite him to any special Study, than in four Hours, at a dull and improper Season.

I would also give the same Advice, if some *vain*, or *worthless*, or *foolish Idea* will croud it self into your Thoughts,

C.V.S.7. *The right Use of Reason.* 123

Thoughts, and if you find that all your Labour and Wrestling cannot defend your self from it, then divert the Importunity of that which offends you by turning your Thoughts to some entertaining Subject, that may amuse a little and draw you off from the troublesome and imposing Guest; and many a Time also in such a Case, when the impertinent and intruding Ideas would divert from present Duty, *Devotion* and *Prayer* have been very successful to overcome such obstinate Troublers of the Peace and Profit of the Soul.

If the natural Genius and Temper be too *volatile, fickle* and *wandering*, such Persons ought in a more especial Manner to apply themselves to *mathematical Learning*, and to begin their Studies with *Arithmetick* and *Geometry*; wherein new Truths continually arising to the Mind out of the plainest and easiest Principles, will allure the Thoughts with incredible Pleasure in the Pursuit: This will give the Student such a delightful Taste of Reasoning, as will fix his Attention to the single Subject which he pursues, and by De-




124      *LOGICK: Or,*      Part I.  
grees will cure the habitual Levity of  
his Spirit.



## CH A P. VI.

### *Special Rules to direct our Con- ception of Things.*

 Great Part of what has been al-  
ready written, is to lay a Foun-  
dation for those *Rules*, which  
may guide and regulate our Concep-  
tions of Things; this is our main Busi-  
ness and Design in the *first Part of Lo-  
gick*. Now if we can but direct our  
Thoughts to a just and happy Manner  
in *forming our* Ideas of Things, the  
other Operations of the Mind will not  
so easily be perverted; because most  
of our Errors in *Judgment*, and the  
Weakness, Fallacy and Mistake of our  
*Argumentation* proceed from the Dark-  
ness, Confusion, Defect, or some other  
Irregularity in our Conceptions.

The

C.VI.S.1. *The right Use of Reason.* 125

The Rules to assist and direct our Conceptions are these.

1. Conceive of Things *clearly and distinctly* in their own *Natures*.
  2. Conceive of Things *completely* in all their *Parts*.
  3. Conceive of Things *comprehensively* in all their *Properties and Relations*.
  4. Conceive of Things *extensively* in all their *Kinds*.
  5. Conceive of Things *orderly, or in a proper Method*.
- 

SECT. I.

*Of gaining clear and distinct Ideas.*

**T**HE first Rule is this, *Seek after a clear and distinct Conception of Things as they are in their own Nature, and do not content your selves with obscure and confused Ideas, where clearer are to be attained.*

There are some Things, indeed, whereof distinct Ideas are scarce attainable, they seem to surpass the Ca-

capacity of the Understanding in our present State, such are the Notions of *Eternal, Immense, Infinite*, whether this *Infinity* be applied to *Number*, as an infinite Multitude; to *Quantity*, as infinite Length, Breadth; to *Powers* and *Perfections*, as Strength, Wisdom, or Goodness infinite, &c. Tho' Mathematicians, in their Way, demonstrate several Things in the Doctrine of *Infinities*, yet there are still some insolvable Difficulties that attend the Ideas of *Infinity*, when it is applyed to Mind or Body; and while it is in Reality but an *Idea ever growing*, we cannot have so clear and distinct a Conception of it as to secure us from Mistakes in some of our Reasonings about it.

There are many other Things that belong to the material World, wherein the sharpest Philosophers have never yet arrived at clear and distinct Ideas, such as the particular *Shape, Situation, Contexture, Motion of the small Particles of Minerals, Metals, Plants, &c.* whereby their very Natures and Essences are distinguished from each other. Nor have we either Senses, or Instruments,  
suffici-



C.VI.S. 1. *The right Use of Reason.* 127

sufficiently nice and accurate to find them out. There are other Things in the World of Spirits, wherein our Ideas are very dark and confused, such as their *Union with animal Nature, the Way of their acting on material Beings,* and their *Converse with each other.* And tho' it is a laudable Ambition to search what may be known of these Matters, yet it is a vast Hindrance to the Enrichment of our Understandings, if we spend too much of our Time and Pains among *Infinities,* and *Unsearchables,* and those Things for the Investigation whercof we are not furnish'd with proper Faculties in the present State. 'Tis therefore of great Service to the true Improvement of the Mind to distinguish well between *Knowables* and *Unknowables.*

As far as Things are *knowable* by us, it is of excellent Use to accustom our selves to *clear and distinct Ideas.* Now among many other Occasions of the Darkness and Mistakes of our Minds, there are these two Things which most remarkably bring *Confusion* into our Ideas.

1. That from our Infancy we have had the Ideas of Things so far connected with the *Ideas of Words*, that we often mistake Words for Things, we mingle and confound one with the other.

2. From our youngest Years we have been ever ready to consider Things, not so much in their own Natures, as in their *various Respects to our selves*, and chiefly to our *Senses*; and we have also joined and mingled the Ideas of *some Things*, with many *other Ideas*, to which they are not akin in their own Natures.

In order therefore to a *clear and distinct* Knowledge of Things, we must uncloath them of all these *Relations and Mixtures*, that we may contemplate them naked, and *in their own Natures*; and distinguish the Subject that we have in View from all other Subjects whatsoever: Now to perform this well, we must here consider the *Definition of Words*, and the *Definition of Things*.

## S E C T. II.

*Of the Definition of Words, or  
Names.*

**I**F we could conceive of Things as Angels and unbodied Spirits do, without involving them in those Clouds which Words and Language throw upon them, we should seldom be in Danger of such Mistakes as are perpetually committed by us in the present State; and indeed it would be of unknown Advantage to us to accustom our selves to *form Ideas of Things without Words*, that we might know them in their *own proper Natures*. But since we must use *Words*, both to learn and to communicate most of our Notions, we should do it with just Rules of Caution. I have already declared, in Part, how often, and by what Means our Words become the Occasions of Errors in our Conception of Things. To remedy such Inconveniences, we must get an exact *Definition of the Words* we make use of, *i. e.* we must determine precisely the Sense of our Words,



which is called the *Definition of the Name*.

Now a *Definition of the Name* being only a *Declaration in what Sense the Word is used*, or what Idea, or Object, we mean by it, this may be express'd by any one or more of the Properties, Effects or Circumstances of that Object which do sufficiently distinguish it from other Objects: As if I were to tell what I mean by the Word *Air*, I might say it is *that thin Matter which we breathe in and breathe out continually*; or it is *that fluid Body in which the Birds fly a little above the Earth*; or it is *that invisible Matter which fills all Places near the Earth, or which immediately incompasses the Globe of Earth and Water*. So if I would tell what I mean by *Light*, I would say, it is *that whereby we see the Colours and Shapes of Things*; or it is *that which distinguishes the Day from the Night*. If I were asked what I mean by *Religion*, I would answer, it is a *Collection of all our Duties to God*, if taken in a strict and limited Sense; but if taken in a large

C.VI.S.2. *The right Use of Reason.* 131

large Sense, it is a *Collection of all our Duties both to God and Man.* These are called the *Definitions of the Name.*

*Note,* In defining the Name there is no Necessity that we should be acquainted with the intimate Essence, or Nature of the Thing; for any Manner of *Description* that will but sufficiently acquaint another Person what we mean by such a Word, is a sufficient *Definition for the Name.* And on this Account, a *synonymous Word*, or a meer *Negation of the contrary*, a *Translation of the Word* into another Tongue, or a *Grammatical Explication* of it, is sometimes sufficient for this Purpose; as, if one would know what I mean by a *Sphere*, I tell him it is a *Globe*; if he ask what is a *Triangle*, it is that *which has three Angles*; or an *Oval* is that which has the *Shape of an Egg*. *Dark* is that which has *no Light*; *Asthma* is a *Difficulty of breathing*; a *Diaphoretick Medicine*, or a *Sudorifick*, is something that will *provoke Sweating*; and an *Insolvent* is a *Man that cannot pay his Debts.*

Since 'tis the Design of *Logick*, not only to assist us in *Learning*, but in *Teaching* also, it is necessary, that we should be furnished with some particular Directions relating to the *Definition of Names*, both in *Teaching*, and *Learning*.

## S E C T. III.

*Directions concerning the Definition of Names.*

Direct. I. **H**AVE a Care of making Use of meer Words, instead of Ideas; i. e. such Words as have no Meaning, no Definition, belonging to them: *Do not always imagine, that there are Ideas, where-so-ever there are Names*; for tho' Mankind hath so many Millions of Ideas, more than they have Names; yet so foolish and lavish are we, that too often, we use some Words in meer Waste, and have *no Ideas* for them; or at least, our Ideas are so exceedingly shattered and confused, broken and blended, various and unsettled, that they can signify nothing toward the Improvement of the Understanding. You will find a great deal of Reason for this Remark,



C.VI.S.3. *The right Use of Reason.* 133

if you read the *Popish School-men*, or the *mystick Divines*.

Never rest satisfied therefore, with *meer Words which have no Ideas belonging to them*, or at least, *no settled and determinate Ideas*. Deal not in such empty Ware, whether you are a Learner or a Teacher; for hereby some Persons have made themselves rich in Words, and learned in their own Esteem; whereas in reality, their Understandings have been poor, and they knew nothing.

Let me give, for Instance, some of those Writers, or Talkers, who deal much in the Words, *Nature, Fate, Luck, Chance, Perfection, Power, Life, Fortune, Instinct, &c.* and that even in the most calm, and instructive Parts of their Discourse; though neither they themselves, nor their Hearers, have any settled Meaning under those Words; and thus they build up their Reasonings, and infer what they please, with an Ambition of the Name of Learning, or of sublime Elevations in Religion; whereas in truth, they do but amuse themselves and their Admirers with *swelling Words of Vanity, understanding neither what they say,*  
*nor*

*nor whereof they affirm.* But this Sort of Talk, — was reprov'd of old, by the two chief Apostles, St. Peter, and St. Paul, 1 Tim. i. 7. and 2 Pet. ii. 18.

When Pretenders to Philosophy or good Sense, grow fond of this Sort of Learning, they dazle and confound their weaker Hearers, but fall under the Neglect of the Wise. The *Epicureans*, are guilty of this Fault, when they ascribe the Formation of this World to *Chance*: The *Aristotelians*, when they say, *Nature abhors a Vacuum*: The *Stoicks*, when they talk of *Fate*, which is superior to the Gods: And the *Gamesters*, when they curse their *Ill-Luck*, or hope for the Favours of *Fortune*. Whereas, if they would tell us, that by the Word *Nature*, they mean *the Properties of any Being, or the Order of Things established at the Creation*; that by the Word *Fate*, they intend the *Decrees of God, or the necessary Connexion, and Influence, of second Causes and Effects*; if by the Word *Luck, or Chance*, they signify the *absolute Negation of any determinate Cause, or only their Ignorance of any such Cause*, we should know how to converse

C.VI.S.3. *The right Use of Reason.* 135

converse with them, and to assent, to, or dissent from their Opinions. But while they flutter in the dark, and make a Noise with Words which have no fixt Ideas, they talk to the Wind, and can never profit.

I would make this Matter a little plainer still by Instances borrowed from the *Peripatetick* Philosophy, which was taught once in all the Schools. The Professor fancies, he has assigned the true Reason, why all *heavy Bodies tend downward*, why *Amber will draw Feathers and Straws*, and the *Load-Stone draw Iron*, when he tells you, that this is done by certain *gravitating*, and *attractive Qualities*, which proceed from the *substantial Forms* of those various Bodies. He imagines, that he has explained, why *the Load-stone's North Pole, shall repel the North End of a magnetick Needle, and attract the South*, when he affirms, that this is done by its *Sympathy* with one End of it, and its *Antipathy* against the other End. Whereas in truth, all these Names of *Sympathy, Antipathy, substantial Forms and Qualities*, when they are put for the Causes  
of



of these Effects, are but hard Words, which only express a learned and pompous Ignorance of the true Cause of natural Appearances; and in this Sense they are *meer Words without Ideas*.

This will evidently appear, if one ask me, *why a concave Mirrour, or convex Glass, will burn Wood in the Sun Beams, or, why a Wedge will cleave it?* and I should tell him, it is by an *ustorious Quality* in the Mirrour, or Glass, and by a *cleaving Power* in the Wedge, arising from a certain unknown *substantial Form* in them, whence they derive these *Qualities*; Or, if he should ask me, *why a Clock strikes, and points to the Hour*, and I should say, it is by an *indicating Form*, and *sonorific Quality*; whereas, I ought to tell him, how the Sun Beams are collected, and united, by a *burning Glass*; whence the mechanical Force of a *Wedge* is derived; and what are the *Wheels*, and *Springs*, the *Pointer*, and *Hammer*, and *Bell*, whereby a *Clock* gives Notice of the Time, both to the Eye and the Ear. But these *ustorious* and *cleaving Powers*, *sonorous* and *indicating Forms*, and *Qualities*, do either teach the En-  
quirer

C.VI.S.3. *The right Use of Reason.* 137

quirer nothing at all, but what he knew before, or they are *meer Words without Ideas* \*.

And there is many a Man, in the vulgar, and in the learned World, who imagines himself deeply skilled in the *Controversies of Divinity*, whereas, he has only furnished himself with a Parcel of *scholastick*, or *mystick Words*, under some of which the Authors themselves had no just Ideas, and the Learner when he hears, or pronounces

---

\* It may be *objected* here, "And what does the modern Philosopher, with all his Detail of mathematical Numbers, and Diagrams, do more than this, toward the Solution of these Difficulties? Does he not describe Gravity, by a certain *unknown Force*, whereby Bodies tend downward to the Centre? Hath he found the certain and mechanical Reasons of *Attraction*, *Magnetism*, &c?" I *Answer*, That the Moderns have found a thousand Things, by applying Mathematics to natural Philosophy, which the Antients were ignorant of; and when they use any Names of this Kind, *viz.* *Gravitation*, *Attraction*, &c. they use them only to signify, that there are such Effects, and such Causes, with a frequent Confession of their Ignorance of the true Springs of them: They do not pretend to make *these Words* stand for the *real Causes* of Things, as though they thereby assigned, the true philosophical Solution of these Difficulties; for in this Sense, they will still be *Words without Ideas*, whether in the Mouth of an old Philosopher, or a new one.

the m

them, hath scarce any Ideas at all. Such Sort of Words sometimes have become Matters of immortal Contention, as though the Gospel could not stand without them; and yet the Zealot perhaps knows little more of them than he does of *Shibboleth*, or *Higgaion*, *Selah*, *Judg.* xii. 6. *Psal.* ix. 16.

Yet here I would lay down *this Caution*, that there are several Objects, of which we can never have a clear and distinct Idea, much less an adequate or comprehensive one, and yet we cannot call the Names of these Things *Words without Ideas*; such are the *Infinity* and *Eternity* of God himself, the *Union of our own Soul and Body*, the *Union of the divine and human Natures in Jesus Christ*, the *Operation of the holy Spirit on the Mind of Man*, &c. These ought not to be called *Words without Ideas*, for there is sufficient Evidence for the Reality and Certainty of the Existence of their Objects, tho' there is some Confusion in our clearest Conceptions of them; and our Ideas of them are sufficient to converse about them, so far as we have Need, and to deter-



C.VI.S.3. *The right Use of Reason.* 139

determine so much as is necessary for our own Faith and Practice.

Direct. II. *Do not suppose that the Natures or Essences of Things always differ from one another, as much as their Names do.* There are various Purposes in human Life, for which we put very different Names on the same Thing, or on Things whose Natures are near akin; and thereby oftentimes, by making a new *nominal Species*, we are ready to deceive our selves, with the Idea of another *real Species of Beings*: And those, whose Understandings are led away by the meer Sound of Words, fancy the *Nature* of those *Things* to be very different, whose *Names* are so, and judge of them accordingly.

I may borrow a remarkable Instance, for my Purpose, almost out of every Garden, which contains a Variety of Plants in it. Most or all Plants agree in this, that they have a *Root*, a *Stalk*, *Leaves*, *Buds*, *Blossoms*, and *Seeds*: But the Gardener ranges them under very different Names, as tho' they were really different Kinds of Beings, merely because of the different Use, and Service to  
which

which they are applied by Men: As for Instance, those Plants whose *Roots* are eaten, shall appropriate the Name of *Roots* to themselves, such are *Carrots*, *Turnips*, *Radishes*, &c. If the *Leaves* are of chief Use to us, then we call them *Herbs*; as *Sage*, *Mint*, *Thyme*: If the *Leaves* are eaten raw, they are termed *Sallad*; as *Lettuce*, *Purslain*: If boiled, they become *Pot-herbs*; as *Spinage*, *Coleworts*; and some of those same Plants, which are *Pot-herbs* in one Family, are *Sallad* in another. If the *Buds* are made our Food, they are called *Heads*, or *Tops*; so *Cabbage-Heads*, *Heads of Asparagus*, and *Artichocks*. If the *Blossom* be of most Importance, we call it a *Flower*; such are *Daisies*, *Tulips*, and *Carnations*, which are the meer Blossoms of those Plants. If the *Husk* or *Seeds* are eaten, they are called the *Fruits of the Ground*, as *Pease*, *Beans*, *Strawberries*, &c. If any Part of the Plant, be of known and common Use to us in *Medicine*, we call it a *physical Herb*, as *Carduus*, *Scurvy grass*; but if we count no Part useful, we call it a *Weed*, and throw

C.VI.S.3. *The right Use of Reason.* 141

throw it out of the Garden; and yet perhaps our next Neighbour knows some valuable Property and Use of it, he plants it in his Garden, and gives it the Title of an *Herb*, or a *Flower*. You see here, how small is the real Distinction of these several *Plants*, considered in their general Nature, as the *lesser Vegetables*; yet what very different Ideas we vulgarly form concerning them, and make different *Species* of them, chiefly, because of the different Names given them.

Now when Things are set in this clear Light, it appears how ridiculous it would be for two Persons to contend, whether *Dandelion* be a *Herb*, or a *Weed*; whether it be a *Pot-herb*, or *Sallad*; when by the Custom or Fancy of different Families, this one Plant obtains all these Names, according to the several Uses of it, and the Value that is put upon it.

*Note* here, that I find no Manner of Fault with the Variety of Names, which are given to several Plants, according to the various Uses we make of them. But I would not have our Judgments imposed



imposed upon hereby, to think, that these meer *nominal* Species, viz. *Herbs, Sallad and Weeds*, become three *really* different Species of Beings, on this Account, that they have different Names and Uses. But I proceed to other Instances.

It has been the Custom of Mankind, when they have been angry with any Thing, to add a *new ill Name* to it, that they may convey thereby a hateful Idea of it; though the Nature of the Thing still abides the same. So the Papists call the *Protestants, Hereticks*: A prophane Person calls a *Man of Piety, a Precisian*: And in the Times of the Civil War, in the last Century, the *Royalists* called the *Parliamentarians, Fanaticks, Roundheads, and Sectaries*: And they, in Requital, called the *Royalists, Malignants*: But the Partizans on each side were really neither better nor worse for these Names.

It has been also a frequent Practice, on the other Hand, to put *new favourable Names* upon *ill Ideas*, on purpose to take off the Odium of them. Notwithstanding all these flattering  
 † Names

C.VI.S.3. *The right Use of Reason.* 143

Names and Titles, a Man of profuse Generosity is but a *Spendthrift*; a natural Son is a *Bastard* still; a Gallant is an *Adulterer*, and a Lady of Pleasure is a *Whore*.

Direct. III. *Take Heed of believing the Nature and Essence of two or more Things to be certainly the same, because they may have the same Name given them.* This has been an unhappy and fatal Occasion of a thousand Mistakes in the natural, in the civil, and in the religious Affairs of Life, both amongst the Vulgar and the Learned. I shall give two or three Instances, chiefly in the Matters of *Natural Philosophy*, having hinted several Dangers of this Kind, relating to *Theology* in the foregoing Discourse concerning *Equivocal Words*.

Our elder Philosophers have generally made use of the Word SOUL to signify that Principle whereby a Plant grows, and they called it the *vegetative Soul*: The Principle of the animal Motion of a Brute has been likewise called a *Soul*, and we have been taught to name it the *sensitive Soul*: They have

have also given the Name, *Soul*, to that superior Principle in Man, whereby he thinks, judges, reasons, &c. and though they distinguished this by the honourable Title of the *rational Soul*, yet in common Discourse and Writing we leave out the Words *vegetative*, *sensitive*, and *rational*; and make the Word, *Soul*, serve for all these Principles: Thence we are led early into this Imagination, that *there is a Sort of spiritual Being in Plants, and in Brutes, like that in Men*. Whereas, if we did but abstract, and separate these Things from Words, and compare the Cause of *Growth* in a *Plant*, with the Cause of *Reasoning* in *Man* (without the Word *Soul*) we should never think that these two Principles were, at all, like one another; nor should we perhaps so easily and peremptorily conclude, that *Brutes* need an intelligent Mind to perform their animal Actions.

Another Instance may be the Word *LIFE*, which being attributed to *Plants*, to *Brutes*, and to *Men*, and in each of them ascribed to the *Soul*, has very easily betrayed us, from our Infancy, into



C.VIS.7. *The right Use of Reason.* 145

into this Mistake, that *the Spirit, or Mind, or thinking Principle in Man, is the Spring of vegetative and animal Life to his Body*: Whereas it is evident, that if the Spirit or thinking Principle of Man gave *Life* to his animal Nature, the Way to save Men from dying would not be to use Medicines, but to persuade the Spirit to abide in the Body.

I might derive a third Instance from the Word *HEAT*; which is used to signify the *Sensation we have* when we are near the Fire, as well as the *Cause of that Sensation* which is in the Fire it self; and thence we conclude, from our Infancy, that *there is a Sort of Heat in the Fire resembling our own Sensation, or the Heat which we feel*: Whereas in the Fire there is nothing but little Particles of Matter, of such particular Shapes, Sizes, Situations, and Motions, as are fitted to impress such Motions on our Flesh or Nerves as excite the Sense of *Heat*. Now if this Cause of our Sensation in the Fire had been always called by a distinct Name, perhaps we had not been so rooted in this Mistake,

H

that

that *the Fire is hot with the same Sort of Heat that we feel.* This will appear with more Evidence, when we consider that we are secure from the same Mistake where there have been two different Names allotted to our *Sensation*, and to the *Cause* of it; as, we do not say, *Pain is in the Fire* that burns us, or *in the Knife* that cuts and wounds us; for we call it *burning* in the *Fire*, *cutting* in the *Knife*, and *Pain* only, when it is in *our selves*.

Numerous Instances of this Kind might be derived from the Words *sweet, sour, loud, shrill*, and almost all the *sensible Qualities*, whose real Natures we mistake from our very Infancy, and we are ready to suppose them to be the same in us, and in the Bodies that cause them; partly, because the Words which signify our own Sensations are applied also to signify those unknown Shapes and Motions of the little Corpuscles which excite and cause those Sensations.

Direct. IV. *In Conversation or Reading be diligent to find out the true Sense, or distinct Idea, which the Speaker or Writer affixes to his Words; and*

C.VIS 3. *The right Use of Reason.* 147

*and especially to those Words which are the chief Subject of his Discourse.*

As far as possible take heed, lest you put more or fewer Ideas into one Word, than the Person did when he wrote or spoke; and endeavour that your Ideas of every Word may be the same as his were: Then you will judge better of what he speaks or writes.

It is for want of this that Men quarrel in the Dark; and that there are so many Contentions in the several Sciences, and especially in *Divinity*. Multitudes of them arise from a Mistake of the true Sense, or compleat Meaning, in which Words are used, by the Writer or Speaker; and hereby sometimes *they seem to agree, when they really differ* in their Sentiments; and sometimes *they seem to differ, when they really agree*. Let me give an Instance of both.

When one Man by the Word *Church* shall understand *all that believe in Christ*; and another by the Word *Church* means only the *Church of Rome*; they may both assent to this Proposition, *There is no Salvation out*  
H 2 of



of the Church, and yet theit inward Sentiments may be widely different.

Again, if one Writer shall affirm that *Virtue added to Faith is sufficient to make a Christian*, and another shall as zealously deny this Proposition, they seem to differ widely in Words, and yet perhaps they may both really agree in Sentiment: If by the Word *Virtue*, the Affirmer intends our *whole Duty to God and Man*; and the Denier by the Word *Virtue* means only *Courage*, or at most our *Duty toward our Neighbour*, without including in the Idea of it the *Duty which we owe to God*.

Many such Sort of Contentions as these are, if traced to their Original, will be found to be meer *Logomachys*, or Strifes and Quarrels about Names and Words, and *vain Janglings*, as the Apostle calls them in his first Letter of Advice to *Timothy*.

In order therefore to attain *clear and distinct* Ideas of what we read or hear, we must search the *Sense of Words*; we must consider what is their Original and Derivation in our own or foreign Languages; what is their common  
Sense

C.VI.S. 3. *The right Use of Reason.* 149

Sense amongst Mankind, or in other Authors, especially such as wrote in the same Country, in the same Age, about the same Time, and upon the same Subjects: We must consider in what Sense the same Author uses any particular *Word or Phrase*, and that when he is discoursing on the same Matter, and especially about the same Parts or Paragraphs of his Writing: We must consider, whether the Word be used in a strict and limited, or in a large and general Sense; whether in a literal, in a figurative, or in a prophetick Sense; whether it has any secondary Idea annex to it besides the primary or chief Sense. We must enquire farther, what is the Scope and Design of the Writer; and what is the Connexion of that Sentence with those that go before it, and those which follow it. By these and other Methods we are to search out the *Definition of Names*, i. e. the true Sense and Meaning in which any Author or Speaker uses any Word, which may be the chief Subject of Discourse, or may carry any considerable Importance in it.

Direct. V. *When we communicate our Notions to others, merely with a Design to inform and improve their Knowledge, let us in the Beginning of our Discourse take Care to adjust the Definition of Names, wheresoever there is need of it; that is, to determine plainly what we mean by the chief Words, which are the Subject of our Discourse; and be sure always to keep the same Ideas, whensoever we use the same Words, unless we give due Notice of the Change.* This will have a very large and happy Influence, in securing not only others, but our selves too, from Confusion and Mistake; for even Writers and Speakers themselves, for want of due Watchfulness, are ready to affix *different Ideas to their own Words*, in different Parts of their Discourses, and hereby bring Perplexity into their own Reasonings, and confound their Hearers.

It is by an Observation of this Rule, that *Mathematicians* have so happily secured themselves, and the *Sciences* which they have profess'd, from Wrangling and Controversy; because whensoever in the Progress of their Treatises they



C.VI.S.3. *The right Use of Reason.* 151

they have Occasion to use a new and unknown Word, they always *define* it, and tell in what Sense they shall take it; and in many of their Writings you find a heap of *Definitions* at the very Beginning. Now if the Writers of *natural Philosophy* and *Morality* had used the same Accuracy and Care, they had effectually secluded a Multitude of noisy and fruitless Debates out of their several Provinces: Nor had that sacred Theme of *Divinity* been perplexed with so many intricate Disputes, nor the Church of *Christ* been torn to pieces by so many Sects and Factions, if the Words *Grace, Faith, Righteousness, Repentance, Justification, Worship, Church, Bishop, Presbyter, &c.* had been well defined, and their Significations adjusted, as near as possible, by the Use of those Words in the new Testament; or at least, if every Writer had told us at first in what Sense he would use those Words.

Direct. VI. *In your own Studies, as well as in the Communication of your Thoughts to others, merely for their Information, avoid ambiguous and equi-*

*vocal Terms, as much as possible.* Do not use such Words as have two or three *Definitions of the Name* belonging to them, *i. e.* such Words as have two or three Senses, where there is any Danger of Mistake. Where your chief Business is to inform the Judgment, and to explain a Matter, rather than to persuade or affect, be not fond of expressing your selves in *figurative Language*, when there are any proper Words that signify the same Idea in their *literal Sense*. It is the *Ambiguity of Names*, as we have often said, that brings almost infinite Confusion into our *Conceptions of Things*.

But where there is a Necessity of using an *ambiguous Word*, there let double Care be used in *defining* that Word, and declaring in what Sense you take it. And be sure to suffer no *ambiguous Word* ever to come into your *Definitions*.

Direction VII. *In communicating our Notions use every Word, as near as possible, in the same Sense in which Mankind commonly uses it; or which Writers that have gone before you*

C.VI.S.3. *The right Use of Reason.* 153

*you have usually affixt to it, upon Condition that it is free from Ambiguity.* Though Names are in their Original merely arbitrary, yet we should always keep to the established Meaning of them, unless great Necessity require the Alteration; for when any Word has been used to signify an Idea, that old Idea will recur in the Mind when the Word is heard or read, rather than any new Idea which we may fasten to it. And this is one Reason why the *received Definitions of Names* should be changed as little as possible.

But I add farther, that though a Word entirely new, introduced into a Language, may be affixed to what Idea you please, yet an old Word ought never to be fixt to an unaccustomed Idea, without just and evident Necessity, or without present or previous Notice, lest we introduce thereby a License for all manner of pernicious *Equivocations* and *Falshoods*; as for Instance, when an idle Boy, who has not seen his Book all the Morning, shall tell his Master that *he has learnt his Lesson*, he can never excuse himself by saying,



that by the Word *Lesson* he meant his *Breakfast*, and by the Word *learn* he meant *eating*: surely this would be construed a downright Lye, and his fancied Wit would hardly procure his Pardon.

In using an ambiguous Word, we may chuse what we think the most proper Sense, as I have done p. 135. in naming the *Poles of the Loadstone*, North or South. And when a Word has been used in two or three Senses, and has made a great Inroad for Error upon that account, it is of good Service to drop one or two of those Senses, and leave it only one remaining, and affix the other Senses or Ideas to other Words. So the modern Philosophers, when they treat of the *human Soul*, they call it the *Mind*, or *Mens Humana*, and leave the Word *Anima*, or *Soul*, to signify the *Principle of Life and Motion in meer animal Beings*.

The Poet *Juvenal* has long ago given us a hint of this Accuracy and Distinction, when he says of *Brutes* and *Men*, *Vid. Advertisement*

*Indulgit mundi communis Conditor illis  
Tantum Animas; nobis Animum quoque.*

Sat. xv. v. 134.

And

C.VI.S.3. *The right Use of Reason.* 155

And here I cannot but take Occasion to remark, that it is a considerable Advantage to any Language to have a *variety of new Words* introduced into it, that when in Course of Time *new Objects* and *new Ideas* arise, there may be *new Words* and *Names* assigned to them: And also where one single Name has sustained two or three Ideas in Time past, these new Words may remove the Ambiguity, by being affixt to some of those Ideas. This Practice would by Degrees take away part of the Uncertainty of Language. And for this Reason I cannot but congratulate our *English Tongue*, that it has been abundantly enriched with the Translation of Words from all our neighbour Nations, as well as from antient Languages, and these Words have been as it were enfranchised amongst us; for *French, Latin, Greek, and German* Names will signify *English* Ideas, as well as Words that are antiently and intirely *English*.

It may not be amiss to mention in this Place, that as the Determination of the particular Sense in which any Word is

used is called the *Definition of the Name*, so the Enumeration of the various Senses of any equivocal Word is sometimes called the *Division or Distinction of the Name*; and for this Purpose good Dictionaries are of excellent Use.

This *Distinction of the Name or Word* is greatly necessary in Argumentation or Dispute; when a fallacious Argument is used, he that answers it distinguishes the several Senses of some Word or Phrase in it, and shews in what Sense it is *true* and in what Sense it is as evidently *false*.

#### SECT. IV.

##### *Of the Definition of Things.*

AS there is much Confusion introduced into our Ideas, by the Means of those *Words* to which they are affixed; so the *mingling our Ideas* with each other without Caution, is a farther Occasion whereby they become confused. A *Court-Lady*, born and bred up amongst *Pomp* and *Equipage*,  
and



C.VI.S.4. *The right Use of Reason.* 157

and the vain Notions of *Birth* and *Quality*, constantly joins and mixes all these with the Idea of her self, and she imagines these to be *essential* to her *Nature*, and as it were *necessary* to her *Being*; thence she is tempted to look upon *menial Servants*, and the lowest Rank of Mankind as *another Species of Beings* quite distinct from her self. A *Plough-Boy* that has never travelled beyond his own Village, and has seen nothing but *thatch'd Houses* and his *Parish-Church*, is naturally led to imagine that *Thatch* belongs to the very Nature of a *House*, and that that must be a *Church* which is built of *Stone*, and especially if it has a *Spire* upon it. A *Child* whose *Uncle* has been excessive fond, and his *School Master* very severe, easily believes that *Fondness* always belongs to *Uncles*, and that *Severity* is essential to *Masters* or *Instructors*. He has seen also *Soldiers* with *red Coats*, or *Ministers* with *long black Gowns*, and therefore he persuades himself that these Garbs are essential to the Characters, and that he is not a *Minister* who has not a *long black Gown*, nor can he be a  
*Soldier*

*Soldier* who is not dressed in *red*. It would be well if all such Mistakes ended with Childhood.

It might be also subjoined, that our complex Ideas become confused, not only by *uniting* or *blending together* more *simple* or *single* Ideas than really belong to them, as in the Instances just mentioned: But Obscurity and Confusion sometimes come upon our Ideas also, for want of uniting a sufficient Number of single Ideas to make the complex one: So if I conceive of a *Leopard* only as a *spotted Beast*, this does not distinguish it from a *Tyger* or a *Lynx*, nor from many *Dogs* or *Horses*, which are spotted too; and therefore a *Leopard* must have some more Ideas added to complete and distinguish it.

I grant, that it is a large and free Acquaintance with the World, a watchful Observation and diligent Search into the Nature of Things that must fully correct this kind of Errors: The *Rules* of *Logick* are not sufficient to do it: But yet the *Rules* of *Logick* may instruct us by what means to distinguish one Thing from another, and how

C.VI.S.4. *The right Use of Reason.* 159

how to search and mark out, as far as may be, the Contents and Limits of the Nature of distinct Beings, and thus may give us great Assistance towards the Remedy of these Mistakes.

As the *Definition of Names* frees us from that Confusion which *Words* introduce, so the *Definition of Things* will in some Measure guard us against that Confusion which *mingled Ideas* have introduced: For as a *Definition of the Name* explains what any Word means, so a *Definition of the Thing* explains what is the Nature of that Thing.

In Order to form a *Definition* of any Thing we must put forth these three Acts of the Mind.

1<sup>st</sup>, Compare the Thing to be defined with other Things that are most like to it self, and see wherein its Essence or Nature agrees with them, and that is called the *general Nature* or *Genus* in a Definition: So if you would define what *Wine* is, first compare it with other Things like it self, as *Cyder*, *Perry*, &c. and you will find it agrees essentially with them in this, that it is a *Sort of Juice*.

2<sup>dly</sup>, Consider



2<sup>dly</sup>, Consider the most remarkable and primary Attribute, Property, or Idea wherein this Thing differs from those other Things that are most like it, and that is its *essential* or *specifick* *Difference*: So *Wine* differs from *Cy-der* and *Perry*, and all other *Juices*, in that it is *pressed from a Grape*. This may be called its *special Nature*, which distinguishes it from other *Juices*.

3<sup>dly</sup>, Join the general and special Nature together, or (which is all one) the *Genus* and the *Difference*, and these make up a *Definition*. So the *Juice of a Grape*, or *Juice prest from Grapes* is the *Definition* of *Wine*.

So if I would define what *Winter* is, I consider first wherein it agrees with other Things which are most like it, (*viz.*) *Summer*, *Spring*, *Autumn*, and I find they are all *Seasons of the Year*; therefore a *Season of the Year* is the *Genus*. Then I observe wherein it differs from these, and that is in the *Shortness of the Days*; for it is this which does primarily distinguish it from other *Seasons*; therefore this may be called its *special Nature*, or its *Difference*.

C.VI.S.4. *The right Use of Reason.* 163

*Difference.* Then by joining these together, I make a *Definition.* *Winter is that Season of the Year wherein the Days are shortest.* I confess indeed this is but a ruder Definition of it, for to define it as an accurate Astronomer I must limit the Days, Hours and Minutes.

After the same Manner if we would explain or define what the *Picture of a Man* is, we consider first the *Genus* or *general Nature* of it, which is a *Representation*, and herein it agrees with many other Things, as a *Statue*, a *Shadow*, a *Print*, a *verbal Description* of a Man, &c. Then we consider wherein it differs from these, and we find it differs from a *verbal Description* in that it is a *Representation* to the Eye and not to the Ear: It differs from a *Statue* in that it is a Representation upon a flat Surface, and not in a solid Figure: It differs from a *Shadow* in that it is an abiding Representation and not a fleeting one: It differs from a *Print* or *Draught*, because it represents the Colours by Paint as well as the Shape of the Object by Delineation. Now so many, or rather so few of these Ideas  
put

put together as are just sufficient to distinguish a *Picture* from all other *Representations*, make up its essential Difference, or its *special Nature*, and all these are included in its *being painted on a plain Surface*. Then join this to the *Genus*, which is a *Representation*, and thus you have the compleat *Definition* of the *Picture* of a Man, viz. it is the *Representation of a Man in Paint upon a Surface or a Plane*.

Here it must be *observed*, that when we speak of the *Genus* and *Difference* as composing a *Definition*, it must always be understood that the *nearest Genus* and the *specifick Difference* are required.

The *next general Nature*, or the *nearest Genus* must be used in a *Definition*, because it includes all the rest; as if I would define *Wine*, I must say *Wine is a Juice*, which is the *nearest Genus*; and not say, *Wine is a Liquid*, which is a *remote general Nature*; or *Wine is a Substance*, which is yet more *remote*; for *Juice* includes both *Substance* and *Liquid*. Besides, neither of these two *remote general Natures* would



C.VI.S.4. *The right Use of Reason.* 163

would have any Tendency to make an exact Distinction betwixt *Wine* and a thousand other *Substances*, or other *Liquids* : a remote *Genus* leaves the Thing too much undistinguish'd.

The *specifick Difference* is that primary Attribute which distinguishes each Species from one another, while they stand ranked under the same general Nature or Genus. Tho' *Wine* differs from other Liquids in that it is the *Juice of a certain Fruit*, yet this is but a general or generick Difference, for it does not distinguish *Wine* from *Cyder* or *Perry* ; the *Specifick Difference* of *Wine* therefore is its *Pressure from the Grape*, as *Cyder* is press'd from *Apples*, and *Perry* from *Pears*.

In Definitions also we must use the *primary Attribute* that distinguishes the *Species* or special Nature, and not attempt to define *Wine* by its particular Tastes, or Effects, or other Properties, which are but *secondary or consequential*, when its *Pressure from the Grape* is the most obvious and primary Distinction of it from all other Juices. I confess in some Cases it is not so easily

easily known which is the primary Idea that distinguishes one Thing from another; and therefore some would as soon define *Winter* by the *Coldness of the Season*, as by the *Shortness of the Days*; tho' the *Shortness of the Days* is doubtless the most just, primary and philosophical Difference betwixt that and the other Seasons of the Year, since Winter Days are always *shortest*, but not always the *coldest*: I add also, that the *Shortness of the Days* is one Cause of the *Coldness*, but the *Cold* is no Cause of their *Shortness*.

---

SECT. V.

*Rules of Definition of the Thing.*

THE *special Rules of a good Definition* are these:

Rule I. *A Definition must be universal*, or as some call it, *adequate*; that is, it must agree to all the particular Species or Individuals that are included under the same Idea; so the *Juice of a Grape* agrees to all proper *Wines*,

C.VI.S.5. *The right Use of Reason.* 165

*Wines, whether Red, White, French, Spanish, Florence, &c.*

Rule II. *It must be proper and peculiar to the Thing defined, and agree to that alone*; for it is the very Design of a Definition effectually to distinguish one Thing from all others: So the *Juice of a Grape* agrees to no other Substance, to no other Liquid, to no other Being but *Wine*.

Rule III. *A Definition ought to be clear and plain*; for the Design of it is to lead us into the Knowledge of the Thing defined.

Hence it will follow, that the Words used in a Definition ought not to be *doubtful*, and *equivocal*, and *obscure*, but as plain and easy as the Language will afford: And indeed it is a general Rule concerning the Definition both of *Names* and *Things*, that no Word should be used in either of them which has any Darkness or Difficulty in it, unless it has been before explained or defined.

Hence it will follow also, that there are many Things cannot well be defined either as to the *Name* or the *Thing*,  
unless



unless it be by synonymous Words, or by a Negation of the contrary Idea, &c. for learned Men know not how to make them more evident or more intelligible than the Ideas which every man has gained by the vulgar Methods of teaching. Such are the Ideas of *Extension*, *Duration*, *Thought*, *Consciousness*, and most of our simple Ideas, and particularly sensible Qualities, as *White*, *Blue*, *Red*, *Cold*, *Heat*, *Shrill*, *Bitter*, *Sour*, &c.

We can say of *Duration*, that it is a *Continuance in Being*, or a *not ceasing to be*; we can say of *Consciousness*, that it is *as it were a feeling within our selves*; we may say *Heat* is that which is not *cold*; or *Sour* is that which is *like Vinegar*: Or we may point to the clear Sky, and say, that is *Blue*. These are the vulgar Methods of teaching the *Definitions of Names*, or *Meaning of Words*. But there are some Philosophers whose Attempt to define these Things learnedly have wrapt up their Ideas in greater Darkness, and exposed themselves to Ridicule and Contempt; as when they  
define

C.VI.S. 5. *The right Use of Reason.* 167

define *Heat* they say, it is *Qualitas congregans homogenea & segregans heterogenea*, i. e. a *Quality* gathering together Things of the same Kind, and separating Things of a different Kind. So they define *White*, a *Colour* arising from the *Prevalence* of *Brightness*. But every Child knows *Hot* and *White* better without these Definitions.

There are many other Definitions given by the *Peripatetick* Philosophers, which are very faulty by Reason of their *Obscurity*; as *Motion* is defined by them the *Act of a Being in Power* so far forth as it is in *Power*. *Time* is the *Measure* or *Number of Motion* according to *past*, *present* and *future*. The *Soul* is the *Act of an organical natural Body, having Life in Power*; and several others of the same Stamp.

Rule IV. It is also commonly prescribed amongst the Rules of Definition, that it should be short, so that it must have no *Tautology* in it, nor any Words superfluous. I confess Definitions ought to be express'd in as few Words as is consistent with a clear and just Explanation of the Nature of the Thing defin'd,

fin'd, and a Distinction of it from all other Things beside: But it is of much more Importance, and far better, that a Definition should explain clearly the Subject we treat of, tho' the Words be many, than to leave Obscurities in the Sentence, by confining it within too narrow Limits. So in the Definition which we have given of *Logick*, that it is the *Art of using our Reason well in our Search after Truth and the Communication of it to others*, it has indeed many Words in it, but it could not well be shorter. *Art* is the *Genus* wherein it agrees with *Rhetorick*, *Poesy*, *Arithmetick*, *Wrestling*, *Sailing*, *Building*, &c. for all these are *Arts* also: But the Difference or special Nature of it is drawn from its Object, *Reason*; from the Act, *using it well*, and from its two great Ends or Designs, *viz. the Search of Truth*, and the *Communication of it*: Nor can it be justly described and explained in fewer Ideas.

SECT.



## S E C T. VI.

*Observations concerning the Definition of Things.*

**B**Efore I part with this Subject I must propose several *Observations* which relate to the Definition of Things.

*1<sup>st</sup> Observ.* There is no need that in *Definitions* we should be confined to *one single Attribute or Property*, in order to express the Difference of the Thing defined, for sometimes the essential *Difference* consists in *two or three Ideas or Attributes*. So a *Grocer* is a *Man who buys and sells Sugar and Plums and Spices for Gain*. A *Clock* is an *Engine with Weights and Wheels, that shews the Hour of the Day both by pointing and striking*: and if I were to define a *Repeating Clock* I must add another Property, *viz.* that it also *repeats the Hour*. So that the true and primary essential Difference of some complex Ideas consisting in several distinct Properties, cannot be well express'd without conjunctive Particles of Speech.

I

2<sup>d</sup> Ob-

2<sup>d</sup> *Observ.* There is no need that *Definitions* should always be *positive*, for some Things differ from others meerly by a Defect of what others have; as if a *Chair* be defined a *Seat for a single Person, with a Back belonging to it*, then a *Stool* is a *Seat for a single Person without a Back*; and a *Form* is a *Seat for several Persons without a Back*: These are *negative Differences*. So *Sin* is a *want of Conformity to the Law of God*; *Blindness* is a *want of Sight*. A *Vagabond* is a *Person without a Home*. Some Ideas are negative, and their Definitions ought to be so too.

3<sup>d</sup> *Observ.* Some Things may have two or more *Definitions*, and each of them equally just and good; as a *Mile* is the *Length of eight Furlongs*, or it is the *third part of a League*. *Eternal* is *that which ever was and ever shall be*; or it is *that which had no Beginning and shall have no End*. \* *Man* is

---

\* The common Definition of Man, viz. a *rational Animal* is very faulty, 1. Because the *Animal* is not *rational*;

C.VI.S.6. *The right Use of Reason.* 171

is usually defined a *rational Animal*: But it may be much better to define him a *Spirit united to an Animal of such a Shape*, or an *Animal of such a peculiar Shape united to a Spirit*, or a *Being composed of such an Animal and a Mind*.

4<sup>th</sup> *Observ.* Where the *Essences* of Things are evident, and clearly distinct from each other, there we may be more exact and accurate in the *Definitions* of them: But where their *Essences* approach nearer to each other, the *Definition* is more difficult. A *Bird* may be defined a *feathered Animal with Wings*, a *Ship* may be defined a *large hollow Building made to pass over the Sea with Sails*: But if you ask me to define a *Batt*, which is between a *Bird* and a *Beast*, or to define a *Barge*, or *Hoy*,

---

*rational*; the Rationality of Man arises from the Mind to which the Animal is united. 2. Because if a Spirit should be united to a *Horse* and make it a rational Being, surely this would not be a *Man*: 'Tis evident therefore that the *peculiar Shape* must enter into the Definition of a *Man* to render it just and perfect, and for want of a full Description thereof all our Definitions are defective.



which are between a *Boat* and a *Ship*, it is much harder to define them, or to adjust the Bounds of their Essence. This is very evident in all *monstrous Births* and *irregular Productions of Nature* as well as in many *Works of Art*, which partake so much of *one Species* and so much of *another*, that we cannot tell under which *Species* to rank them, or how to determine their *specific Difference*.

The several *Species* of Beings are seldom precisely limited in the Nature of Things by any certain and unalterable Bounds : The Essences of many Things do not consist *in indivisibili*, or in one evident indivisible Point as some have imagined ; but by various Degrees they approach nearer to, or differ more from others that are of a Kindred Nature. So (as I have hinted before) in the very middle of each of the Arches of a Rainbow the Colours of *green*, *yellow* and *red* are sufficiently distinguished ; but near the Borders of the several Arches they run into one another, so that you hardly know how to limit

C.VIS 6. *The right Use of Reason.* 173

mit the Colours, nor whether to call it *red* or *yellow*, *green* or *blue*.

5<sup>th</sup> *Observ.* As the *highest* or chief *Genus's*, viz. *Being* and *Not-Being*, can never be defined, because there is no *Genus* superior to them; so neither can *singular Ideas*, or *Individuals*, be well defined, because either they have no *essential Differences* from other *Individuals*, or their *Differences* are not known; and therefore *Individuals* are only to be described by their particular *Circumstances*: So King *George* is distinguish'd from all other *Men*, and other *Kings*, by describing him as *the first King of Great Britain of the House of Brunswick*: and *Westminster-Hall* is described by its *Situation* and its *Use*, &c.

That individual *Bodies* can hardly have any *essential Difference*, at least within the *Reach* of our *Knowledge*, may be made thus to appear; *Methuselah*, when he was nine hundred and sixty *Years old*, and perhaps worn out with *Age* and *Weakness*, was the same *Person* as when he was in his full *Vi-*  
*gour of Manhood*, or when he was an

# *Principles of Individuation*

174 LOGICK: Or, Part I.

*Infant* newly born; but how far was his Body the same? who can tell whether there was any Fibre of his Flesh or his Bones that continued the same throughout his whole Life? or who can determine which were those Fibres? The *Ship* in which Sir *Francis Drake* sailed round the World might be new built and refitted so often, that few of the same Timbers remained; and who can say whether it must be called the same Ship, or no? and what is its essential Difference? How shall we define Sir *Francis Drake's Ship*, or make a Definition for *Methuselah*?

To this Head belongs that most difficult Question, *What is the Principle of Individuation?* or, What is it that makes any one Thing the same as it was sometime before? This is too large and laborious an Enquiry to dwell upon it in this Place. Yet I cannot forbear to mention this Hint, *viz.* Since our own Bodies must rise at the last Day for us to receive Rewards or Punishments in them, there may be perhaps some original Fibres of each human Body, some *Stamina Vitæ*, or primeval *Seeds of Life*,



*No Man, no Socinian*  
*can tell*

C.VI.S.6. *The right Use of Reason.* 175 *See*

*Life*, which may remain unchanged *D.*  
through all the Stages of Life, Death *Don.*  
and the Grave; these may become *Wolfe*  
the Springs and Principles of a Resur-  
rection, and sufficient to denominate *and*  
it the *same Body*. But if there be any *D.*  
such constant and vital Atoms which *Abn.*  
distinguish every human Body, they are *Taylor*  
known to God only. *Both in the*

6<sup>th</sup> *Observ.* Where we cannot find *Trinity*  
out the *Essence* or *essential Difference*  
of any *Species* or *Kind* of Beings that  
we would define, we must content our  
selves with a Collection of such *chief*  
*Parts* or *Properties* of it as may best  
explain it, so far as it is known, and  
best distinguish it from other Things:  
So a *Marigold* is a *Flower which hath*  
*so many long yellow Leaves round a*  
*little Knot of Seeds in the midst with*  
*such a peculiar Stalk, &c.* So if we  
would define *Silver*, we say it is a *white*  
*and hard Metal, next in Weight to*  
*Gold*: If we would define an *Elder*  
*Tree*, we might say, it is *one among*  
*the lesser Trees, whose younger Branches*  
*are soft and full of Pith, whose Leaves*  
*are jagged, or indented, and of such a par-*

*ticular Shape, and it bears small black Berries: So we must define Water, Earth, Stone, a Lion, an Eagle, a Serpent, and the greatest Part of natural Beings, by a Collection of those Properties, which according to our Observation distinguish them from all other Things. This is what Mr. Lock calls nominal Essences, and nominal Definitions. And indeed since the essential Differences of the various natural Beings or Bodies round about us arise from a peculiar Shape, Size, Motion and Situation of the small Particles of which they are composed, and since we have no sufficient Method to inform us what these are, we must be contented with such a Sort of Definition of the Bodies they compose.*

Here note that this Sort of *Definition*, which is made up of a meer Collection of the most remarkable Parts or Properties, is called an *imperfect Definition*, or a *Description*; whereas the *Definition* is called *perfect* when it is composed of the essential *Difference* added to the general Nature or *Genus*.

7<sup>th</sup> Observ.

C.VI.S.6. *The right Use of Reason.* 177

7<sup>th</sup> *Observ.* The *perfect Definition of any Being* always includes the *Definition of the Name* whereby it is called, for it informs us of the Sense or Meaning of that Word, and shews us what Idea that Word is affixed to: But the *Definition of the Name* does by no means include a *perfect Definition of the Thing*; for as we have said before, a meer synonymous Word, a Negation of the contrary, or the Mention of any one or two distinguishing Properties of the Thing may be a sufficient *Definition of the Name*. Yet in those Cases where the essential Difference, or Essence of a Thing is unknown, there a *Definition of the Name* by the chief Properties, and a *Description of the Thing* are much the same.

And here I think it necessary to take Notice of one general Sentiment that seems to run through that excellent Performance, Mr. Lock's Essay of the Human Understanding, and that is, "That the Essences of Things are utterly unknown to us, and therefore all our Pretences to distinguish the Essences



“ of Things can reach no farther than  
 “ *meer nominal Essences*, or a Col-  
 “ lection of such Properties as we  
 “ know; to some of which we affix  
 “ particular Names, and others we  
 “ bundle up, several together, under  
 “ one Name: And that all our Attempts  
 “ to rank Beings into different Kinds  
 “ or Species’s can reach no farther than  
 “ to make *meer nominal Species*, and  
 “ therefore our Definitions of Things  
 “ are but *meer nominal Descriptions*,  
 “ or Definitions of the Name.

Now that we may do Justice to this  
*great Author*, we ought to consider that  
 he confines this Sort of Discourse only to  
 the *Essence of simple Ideas*, and to the *Es-*  
*sence of Substances*, as appears evident in  
 the fourth and sixth Chapters of his Third  
 Book: for he allows the *Names of mixed*  
*Modes always to signify the real Essences*  
*of their Species*, Chap. V. and he ac-  
 knowledges *artificial Things to have*  
*distinct Species*; and that in the Di-  
 stinction of their Essences *there is ge-*  
*nerally less Confusion and Uncertainty*  
*than in natural*, Chap. VI. Sect. 40, 41.  
 tho’ it must be confess’d that he scarce  
 makes

C.VI.S.6. *The right Use of Reason.* 179

makes any Distinction between the *Definition of the Name* and the *Definition of the Thing*, as Chap. IV. And sometimes the Current of his Discourse decries the *Knowledge of Essences* in such general Terms as may justly give Occasion to mistake.

It must be granted, that the Essence of most of our *simple Ideas* and the greatest part of particular *natural Substances* are much unknown to us; and therefore the essential Differences of sensible Qualities and of the various Kinds of Bodies, as I have said before) lye beyond the Reach of our Understandings: We know not what makes the primary real inward Distinction between *Red, Green, Sweet, Sour, &c.* between *Wood, Iron, Oil, Stone, Fire, Water, Flesh, Clay*, in their general Natures, nor do we know what are the inward and prime Distinctions between all the particular Kinds or Species in the *Vegetable, Animal, Mineral, Metallick, or liquid World* of Things.

But still there is a very large Field for the Knowledge of the Essences of Things, and for the Use of *perfect De-*

*definitions* amongst our *complex Ideas*, the *modal Appearances and Changes of Nature*, the *Works of Art*, the *Matters of Science*, and all the Affairs of the *civil*, the *moral*, and the *religious Life*: And indeed it is of much more Importance to all Mankind to have a better Acquaintance with the *Works of Art* for their own Livelihood and daily Use, with the *Affairs of Morality* for their Behaviour in this World, and with the *Matters of Religion*, that they may be prepared for the World to come, than to be able to give a perfect Definition of the Works of Nature.

If the particular Essences of Natural Bodies are unknown to us, we may yet be good Philosophers, good Artists, good Neighbours, good Subjects and good Christians without that Knowledge, and we have just Reason to be content.

Now that the Essences of some of the *modal Appearances and Changes in Nature*, as well as *Things of Art*, *Science* and *Morality* are sufficiently known to us to make *perfect Definitions* of them, will appear by the  
Specimen



C.VI.S.6. *The right Use of Reason.* 181

Specimen of a few Definitions of these Things.

*Motion* is a Change of Place. *Swiftness* is the passing over a long Space in a short Time. A *Natural Day* is the Time of one alternate Revolution of Light and Darkness, or, it is the Duration of twenty four Hours. An *Eclipse of the Sun* is a Defect in the Sun's Transmission of Light to us, by the Moon interposing. *Snow* is congealed Vapour. *Hail* is congealed Rain. An *Island* is a Piece of Land rising above the surrounding Water. An *Hill* is an elevated Part of the Earth, and a *Grove* is a Piece of Ground thick set with Trees. An *House* is a Building made to dwell in. A *Cottage* is a mean House in the Country. A *Supper* is that Meal which we make in the Evening. A *Triangle* is a Figure composed of three Sides. A *Gallon* is a Measure containing eight Pints. A *Porter* is a Man who carries Burdens for Hire. A *King* is the chief Ruler in a Kingdom. *Veracity* is the Conformity of our Words to our Thoughts. *Covetousness* is an excessive Love of Money, or other Posses-

Possessions. *Killing* is the taking away the Life of an Animal. *Murder* is the unlawful killing of a Man. *Rhetorick* is the Art of speaking in a manner fit to persuade. *Natural Philosophy* is the Knowledge of the Properties of Bodies and the various Effects of them, or, it is the Knowledge of the various Appearances in Nature and their Causes; and *Logick* is the Art of using our Reason well, &c.

Thus you see the essential Differences of various Beings may be known, and are borrowed from their *Qualities* and *Properties*, their *Causes*, *Effects*, *Objects*, *Adjuncts*, *Ends*, &c. and indeed as infinitely various as the *Essences* of Things are, their *Definitions* must needs have very various Forms.

After all it must be confess'd, that many Logicians and Philosophers in the former Ages have made too great a Bustle about the Exactness of their Definitions of Things, and entered into long fruitless Controversies and very ridiculous Debates in the several Sciences about adjusting the *Logical Formalities* of every Definition; whereas that Sort  
of

C.VI.S.7. *The right Use of Reason.* 183

of Wrangling is now grown very justly contemptible, since it is agreed that true Learning and the Knowledge of Things depends much more upon a large Acquaintance with their various Properties, Causes, Effects, Subjects, Objects, Ends and Designs, than it does upon the formal and scholastick Niceties of *Genus* and *Difference*.

---

SECT. VII.

*Of a compleat Conception of Things.*

HAVING dwelt so long upon the *first Rule* to direct our Conceptions, and given an Account of the *Definition* both of *Names* and *Things* in order to gain *clear and distinct Ideas*, we make haste now to the *second Rule* to guide our Conceptions, and that is, *Conceive of Things compleatly in all their Parts*.

All *Parts* have a Reference to some *Whole*: Now there is an old Distinction which logical Writers make of a *Whole* and its *Parts* into four several  
Kinds,



Kinds, and it may be proper just to mention them here.

1. There is a *metaphysical Whole*, when the Essence of a Thing is said to consist of two *Parts*, the *Genus* and the *Difference*, *i. e.* the general and the special Nature, which being joined together make up a *Definition*. This has been the Subject of the foregoing Sections.

2. There is a *mathematical Whole*, which is better called *integral*, when the several *Parts* which go to make up the Whole are really distinct from one another, and each of them may subsist apart. So the *Head*, the *Limbs*, and the *Trunk* are the integral Parts of an Animal Body; so *Unites* are the integral Parts of any large *Number*; so these Discourses which I have written concerning *Perception*, *Judgment*, *Reasoning* and *Disposition* are the four integral Parts of *Logick*. This Sort of Parts goes to make up the *Compleatness* of any Subject, and this is the chief and most direct Matter of our Discourse in this Section.

3. There

C.VI.S.7. *The right Use of Reason.* 185

3. There is a *physical* or *essential Whole*, which is usually made to signify and include only the two *essential Parts* of Man, *Body* and *Soul*: But I think the Sense of it may better be altered, or at least enlarged, and so include all the essential Modes, Attributes or Properties which are contained in the *Comprehension* of any Idea. This shall be the Subject of Discourse under the *third Rule to direct our Conceptions*.

4. There is a *logical Whole*, which is also called an *universal*; and the *Parts* of it are all the particular Ideas to which this universal Nature extends. So a *Genus* is a *Whole* in respect of the several *Species* which are its *Parts*. So the *Species* is a *Whole*, and all the *Individuals* are the *Parts* of it. This shall be treated of in the *fourth Rule to guide our Conceptions*.

At present we consider an Idea as an *integral Whole*, and our *second Rule* directs us to contemplate it *in all its Parts*: But this can only refer to complex Ideas, for simple Ideas have no Parts.

## SECT. VIII.

*Of Division, and the Rules of it.*

SINCE our Minds are narrow in their Capacity, and cannot survey the several Parts of any complex Being with one single View, as God sees all Things at once, therefore we must as it were take it to Pieces, and consider of the Parts separately, that we may have a more compleat Conception of the Whole. So if I would learn the Nature of a *Watch*, the Workman takes it to Pieces and shews me the *Spring*, the *Wheels*, the *Axles*, the *Pinions*, the *Balance*, the *Dial-Plate*, the *Pointer*, the *Case*, &c. and describes each of these Things to me apart, together with their Figures and their Uses. If I would know what an *Animal* is, the Anatomist considers the *Head*, the *Trunk*, the *Limbs*, the *Bowels* apart from each other, and gives me distinct Lectures upon each of them. So a *Kingdom* is divided into its several Provinces: A *Book* into its several *Chapters*; and any



any *Science* is divided according to the several *Subjects* of which it treats.

This is what we properly call the *Division* of an *Idea*, which is an *Explication of the Whole by its several Parts*, or an *Enumeration of the several Parts that go to compose any Whole Idea*, and to render it *compleat*. And I think when *Man* is divided into *Body* and *Soul*, it properly comes under this Part of the Doctrine of integral *Division*, as well as when the meer *Body* is divided into *Head*, *Trunk* and *Limbs*: This *Division* is sometimes called *Partition*.

When any of the *Parts* of any *Idea* are yet farther divided in order to a clear *Explication of the Whole*, this is called a *Subdivision*, as when a *Year* is divided into *Months*, each *Month* into *Days*, and each *Day* into *Hours*, which may also be farther *subdivided* into *Minutes* and *Seconds*.

'Tis necessary in order to the full *Explication* of any *Being* to consider *each Part* and the *Properties of it*, distinct *by it self*, as well as *in its Relation* to the *Whole*: for there are many *Properties*

ties that belong to the Parts of a Being which cannot properly be ascribed to the Whole, tho' these Properties may fit each Part for its proper Station, and as it stands in that Relation to the Whole complex Being.

*The special Rules of a good Division are these.*

1. Rule. *Each Part singly taken must contain less than the Whole, but all the Parts taken collectively (or together) must contain neither more nor less than the Whole.* Therefore if in discoursing of a *Tree* you divide it into the *Trunk* and *Leaves*, 'tis an imperfect Division, because the *Root* and the *Branches* are needful to make up the Whole. So *Logick* would be ill divided into *Apprehension*, *Judgment*, and *Reasoning*, for *Method* is a considerable Part of the Art which teaches us to use our Reason right, and should by no Means be omitted.

Upon this Account, in every Division wherein we design a perfect Exactness, it is necessary to examine the whole Idea with Diligence, lest we omit any Part of it thro' want of Care; tho'

C.VI.S.8. *The right Use of Reason.* 189

tho' in some Cases it is not possible, and in others it is not necessary that we should descend to the minutest Parts.

2. Rule. *In all Divisions we should first consider the larger and more immediate Parts of the Subject, and not divide it at once into the more minute and remote Parts.* It would by no Means be proper to divide a *Kingdom* first into *Streets*, and *Lanes*, and *Fields*, but it must be first divided into *Provinces* or *Counties*, then those *Counties* may be divided into the *Towns*, *Villages*, *Fields*, &c. and the *Towns* into *Streets* and *Lanes*.

3. Rule. *The several Parts of a Division ought to be opposite, i. e. one Part ought not to contain another.* It would be a ridiculous Division of an *Animal* into *Head*, *Limbs*, *Body* and *Brain*, for the *Brains* are contained in the *Head*.

Yet here it must be noted, that sometimes the Subjects of any Treatise, or the Objects of a particular Science may be properly and necessarily so divided, that the second may include the first, and the third may include the first and second, without offending against this Rule,



Rule, because in the second or following Parts of the Science or Discourse, these Objects are not considered in the same manner as in the first; as for Instance, *Geometry* divides its Objects into *Lines*, *Surfaces* and *Solids*: Now tho' a *Line* be contained in a *Surface* or a *Solid*, yet it is not considered in them separate and alone, or as a *meer Line*, as it is in the first Part of *Geometry*, which treats of *Lines*: So *Logick* is rightly divided into *Conception*, *Judgment*, *Reasoning*, and *Method*; for tho' *Ideas* or *Conceptions* are contained in the following Parts of *Logick*, yet they are not there treated of as *separate Ideas*, which are the proper Subject of the first Part.

4. Rule. *Let not Subdivisions be too numerous without Necessity*: for it is better many Times to distinguish more Parts at once, if the Subject will bear it, than to mince the Discourse by excessive dividing and subdividing. 'Tis preferable therefore in a Treatise of *Geography* to say that in a *City* we will consider its *Walls*, its *Gates*, its *Buildings*, its *Streets* and *Lanes*, than to divide it formally first into the *encompassing* and the *encom-*

C.VI.S.8. *The right Use of Reason.* 191

*encompassed* Parts ; the encompassing Parts are the *Walls* and *Gates* ; the encompassed Part includes the *Ways*, and the *Buildings* ; the *Ways* are the *Streets* and the *Lanes* ; Buildings consist of the *Foundations* and the *Superstructure*, &c.

Too great a Number of Subdivisions has been affected by some Persons in Sermons, Treatises, Instructions, &c. under Pretence of greater Accuracy : But this Sort of Subtilties hath often given greater Confusion to the Understanding, and sometimes more Difficulty to the Memory. In these Cases 'tis only a good Judgment can determine what *Subdivisions* are needful.

5. Rule. *Divide every Subject according to the special Design you have in View.* One Idea or Subject may be divided in very different Manners according to the different Purposes we have in discoursing of it. So if a *Printer* were to consider the several Parts of a *Book*, he must divide it into *Sheets*, the *Sheets* into *Pages*, the *Pages* into *Lines*, and the *Lines* into *Letters*. But a *Grammarians* divides a *Book* into *Periods*, *Sentences* and *Words*, or  
Parts

Parts of Speech, as *Noun, Pronoun, Verb, &c.* A *Logician* considers a *Book* as divided into *Chapters, Sections, Arguments, Propositions, Ideas*; and with the Help of *Ontology* he divides the *Propositions* into *Subject, Object, Property, Relation, Action, Passion, Cause, Effect, &c.* But it would be very ridiculous for a *Logician* to divide a *Book* into *Sheets, Pages and Lines*; or for a *Printer* to divide it into *Nouns and Pronouns*, or into *Propositions, Ideas, Properties or Causes*.

6. Rule. *In all your Divisions observe with greatest Exactness the Nature of Things.* And here I am constrained to make a Subdivision of this Rule into two very necessary Particulars.

(1.) *Let the Parts of your Division be such as are properly distinguished in Nature.* Do not divide asunder those Parts of the Idea which are intimately united in Nature, nor unite those Things into one Part which Nature has evidently disjoined: Thus it would be very improper in treating of an *Animal Body* to divide it into the *superior*



C.VI.S.8. *The right Use of Reason.* 193

*rior* and *inferior Halves*; for it would be hard to say how much belongs by Nature to the *inferior Half*, and how much to the *superior*. Much more improper would it be still to divide the *Animal* into the *right Hand Parts* and *left Hand Parts*, which would bring greater Confusion. This would be as unnatural as a Man who should cleave a *Hazel Nut* in Halves thro' the *Husk*, the *Shell* and the *Kernel* at once, whereas Nature leads plainly to the three fold Distinction of *Husk*, *Shell* and *Kernel*.

(2.) *Do not affect Duplicities nor Triplicities, or any certain Number of Parts in your Division of Things*; for we know of no such certain Number of Parts which *God the Creator* has observed in forming all the Varieties of his Creatures, nor is there any uniform determined Number of Parts in the various Subjects of human *Art or Science*; yet some Persons have disturbed the Order of Nature and abused their Readers by an Affectation of *Dichotomies, Trichotomies, Sevens, Twelves, &c.* Let the *Nature* of the Subject, considered together

K

ther with the *Design* which you have in view, always determine the Number of Parts into which you divide it.

After all, it must be confess'd that an intimate Knowledge of Things and a judicious Observation will assist in the Business of *Division*, as well as of *Definition*, better than too nice and curious an Attention to the meer Formalities of logical Writers, without a real Acquaintance with Things.

#### SECT. IX.

*Of a Comprehensive Conception of Things, and of Abstraction.*

THE *third Rule* to direct our Conception requires us to *conceive of Things comprehensively*. As we must survey an Object in all its *Parts* to obtain a *complete* Idea of it, so we must consider it in all its *Modes, Attributes, Properties and Relations*, in order to obtain a *comprehensive* Conception of it.

The *Comprehension* of an Idea, as it was explained under the *Doctrine of Uni-*

C.VI.S.9. *The right Use of Reason.* 193

Universals, includes only the *essential Modes* or *Attributes* of that Idea; but in this Place the word is taken in a larger Sense, and implies also the various *occasional Properties*, *accidental Modes* and *Relations*.

The Necessity of this Rule is founded upon the same Reason as the former, *viz.* That our Minds are narrow and scanty in their Capacities, and as they are not able to consider all the *Parts* of a complex Idea *at once*, so neither can they *at once* contemplate all the different *Attributes* and *Circumstances* of it: We must therefore consider Things *successively* and *gradually* in their various Appearances and Circumstances; As our natural Eye cannot at once behold the *six Sides* of a *Dye* or *Cube*, nor take Cognisance of all the *Points* that are mark'd on them, and therefore we turn up the Sides successively, and thus survey and number the *Points* that are mark'd on *each Side*.

In order to a *comprehensive View* of any Idea we must first consider whether the Object of it has an *Existence*



as well as an *Essence*; whether it be a *simple* or a *complex* Idea; whether it be a *Substance* or a *Mode*; If it be a *Substance*, then we must enquire what are the *essential Modes* of it, which are necessary to its Nature, and what are those *Properties* or *Accidents* of it, which belong to it occasionally, or as it is placed in some particular Circumstances: We must view it in its *internal* and *absolute* Modes, and observe it in those various *external Relations* in which it stands to other Beings: we must consider it in its *Powers* and *Capacities* either to *do* or *suffer*: We must trace it up to its various *Causes*, whether *supream* or *subordinate*: We must descend to the Variety of its *Effects*, and take notice of the several *Ends* and *Designs* which are to be attained by it: We must conceive of it as it is either an *Object* or a *Subject*; what are the things that are *akin* to it, and what are the *Opposites* or *Contraries* of it; for many things are to be known both by their *contrary* and their *kindred* Ideas.

If

C.VI.S.9. *The right Use of Reason.* 197

If the thing we discourse of be a meer *Mode*, we must enquire whether it belong to *Spirits* or *Bodies*; whether it be a *physical* or *moral* *Mode*: If *moral*, then we must consider its Relation to *God*, to our *selves*, to our *Neighbours*; its reference to *this Life* or the *Life to come*. If it be a *Virtue*, we must seek what are the *Principles* of it, what are the *Rules* of it, what are the *Tendencies* of it, what are the *false Virtues* that counterfeit it, and what are the *real Vices* that oppose it, what are the *Evils* which attend the *Neglect* of it, what are the *Rewards* of the *Practice* of it both *here* and *hereafter*.

If the Subject be *historical* or a *Matter of Fact*, we may then enquire whether the Action was *done at all*; whether it was done *in such a Manner*, or by *such Persons* as is reported; *at what Time* it was done; *in what Place*; by *what Motive*, and for *what Design*; What is the *Evidence* of the *Fact*; *Who are the Witnesses*; what is their *Character* and *Credibility*; what *Signs* there are of such a *Fact*; what *concurrent Circumstances* which may

K 3

either

either support the Truth of it, or render it doubtful.

In order to make due Enquiries into all these and many other Particulars which go towards the *complete* and *comprehensive* Idea of any Being, the Science of *Ontology* is exceeding necessary. This is what was wont to be called the *first Part of Metaphysics* in the *Peripatetick* Schools. It treats of *Being, its most general Nature, and of all its Affections and Relations*. I confess the old *papish Schoolmen* have mingled a Number of useless Subtilties with this Science; they have exhausted their own Spirits, and the Spirits of their Readers in many laborious and intricate Trifles, and some of their Writings have been fruitful of *Names without Ideas*, which hath done much Injury to the sacred Study of Divinity. Upon this Account many of the Moderns have most unjustly abandoned the whole Science at once, and thrown abundance of Contempt and Raillery upon the very Name of *Metaphysics*; but this Contempt and Censure is very unreasonable, for this Science separated from some *Aristotelian* Foole-

ries



C.VI.S.9. *The right Use of Reason.* 199

ries and *scholastic* Subtilties is so necessary to a distinct Conception, solid Judgment, and just Reasoning on many Subjects, that sometimes it is introduced as a *Part of Logick*, and not without Reason. And those who utterly despise and ridicule it, either betray their own Ignorance, or will be supposed to make their Wit and Banter a Refuge and Excuse for their own Laziness. Yet thus much I would add, that the later Writers of *Ontology* are generally the best on this Account, because they have left out much of the antient *Fargon*.

Here let it be noted that it is neither useful, necessary, or possible to run through *all the Modes, Circumstances, and Relations* of every Subject we take in Hand; but in *Ontology* we enumerate a great Variety of them, that so a judicious Mind may choose what are those *Circumstances, Relations and Properties* of any Subject, which are most necessary to the present Design of him that speaks or writes, either to explain, to illustrate, or to prove the Point.

As we arrive at the *compleat* Knowledge of an Idea in all its *Parts*, by

that Act of the Mind which is called *Division*, so we come to a *comprehensive* Conception of a Thing in its several *Properties and Relations*, by that Act of the Mind which is called *Abstraction*; i. e. We consider each single Relation or Property of the Subject alone, and thus we do as it were withdraw and separate it in our Minds both from the Subject it self, as well as from other Properties and Relations, in order to make a fuller Observation of it.

This Act of *Abstraction* is said to be twofold, either *Precisive* or *Negative*.

*Precisive Abstraction* is when we consider those Things apart which cannot really exist apart; as when we consider a *Mode* without considering its *Substance* and *Subject*, or *one essential Mode* without *another*. *Negative Abstraction* is when we consider one Thing separate from another, which may also exist without it; as when we conceive of a *Subject* without conceiving of its *accidental Modes or Relations*; or when we conceive of *one Accident* without thinking of *another*; If I think of *reading*  
or





out the various *Species* or *special Natures* which are contained under it as a *Genus* or *general Nature*. If we would know the Nature of an *Animal* perfectly, we must take Cognisance of *Beasts*, *Birds*, *Fishes* and *Insects*, as well as *Men*, all which are contained under the general Nature and Name of *Animal*.

As an *integral Whole* is distinguished into its several Parts by *Division*, so the Word *Distribution* is most properly used when we distinguish an *universal Whole*, into its several Kinds or Species: And perhaps it had been better, if this Word had been always confined to this Signification, though it must be confest, that we frequently speak of the *Division* of an Idea into its several *Kinds*, as well as into its several *Parts*.

*The Rules of a good Distribution* are much the same with those which we have before applied to *Division*, which may be just repeated again in the briefest Manner, in order to give Examples to them.

I. *Rule*, Each Part *singly* taken must contain less than the Whole, but all the  
Parts

Parts taken *collectively* or *together*, must contain neither more nor less than the Whole; or, as *Logicians* sometimes express it, the *Parts of the Division ought to exhaust the whole Thing which is divided*. So *Medicine* is justly distributed into *Prophylactick*, or the Art of preserving Health; and *Therapeutick*, or the Art of restoring Health; for there is no other Sort of *Medicine* beside these two. But *Men* are not well distributed into *tall* or *short*, for there are some of a *middle Stature*.

II. *Rule*, In all *Distributions* we should first consider the larger and more immediate Kinds or Species or Ranks of Being, and not divide a Thing at once into the more minute and remote. A *Genus* should not at once be divided into *Individuals*, or even into the *lowest Species*, if there be a *Species superior*. Thus it would be very improper to divide *Animal* into *Trout*, *Lobster*, *Eel*, *Dog*, *Bear*, *Eagle*, *Dove*, *Worm* and *Butterfly*, for these are inferior Kinds; whereas *Animal* ought first to be distributed into *Man*, *Beast*, *Bird*, *Fish*, *Insect*: And then *Beast* should be distri-

buted into *Dog, Bear, &c. Bird* into *Eagle, Dove, &c. Fish* into *Trout, Eel, Lobster, &c.*

It is irregular also to joyn any inferior Species in the same Rank or Order with the superior; as if we should distinguish *Animals* into *Birds, Bears and Oysters, &c.* it would be a ridiculous Distribution.

III. *Rule*, The several Parts of a Distribution ought to be opposite; that is, one Species or Class of Beings in the same Rank of Division ought not to contain or include another; so *Men* ought not to be divided into the *Rich, the Poor, the Learned, and the Tall*; for *poor Men* may be both *learned* and *tall*, and so may the *Rich*.

But it will be objected, are not *animated Bodies* rightly distributed into *Vegetative* and *Animal*, or (as they are usually called) *Sensitive*? Now the *Sensitive* contains the *Vegetative* Nature in it, for *Animals* grow as well as *Plants*. I answer that in this and all such Distributions the Word *Vegetative* signifies *meerly Vegetative*; and in this Sense *Vegetative* will be sufficiently



C.VI.S.10. *The right use of Reason.* 205  
ly opposite to *Animal*, for it cannot be  
said of an *Animal* that it contains *meer*  
*Vegetation* in the Idea of it.

IV. Rule, Let not Subdivisions be  
too numerous without Necessity; there-  
fore I think *Quantity* is better distin-  
guished at once into a *Line*, a *Surface*  
and a *Solid*, than to say, as *Ramus* does,  
that *Quantity* is either a *Line*, or a  
*Thing lined*; and a *Thing lined* is ei-  
ther a *Surface* or a *Solid*.

V. Rule, Divide every Subject ac-  
cording to the special Design you have  
in View, so far as is necessary or useful  
to your present Enquiry. Thus a *Poli-  
tician* distributes *Mankind* according to  
their civil Characters, into the *Rulers*  
and the *Ruled*; and a *Physician* divides  
them into the *Sick* or the *Healthy*; but  
a *Divine* distributes them into *Turks*,  
*Heathens*, *Jews* or *Christians*.

VI. Rule, In all your Distributions  
observe the Nature of Things with great  
Exactness; and don't affect any particular  
Form of Distribution, as some Persons  
have done, by dividing every *Genus* into  
two *Species*, or into three *Species*;  
whereas Nature is infinitely various, and  
human

human Affairs and human Sciences have as great a Variety, nor is there any one Form of Distribution that will exactly suit with all Subjects.

*Note*, It is to this Doctrine of *Distribution of a Genus into its several Species*, we must also refer the Distribution of a *Cause* according to its several *Effects*, as some *Medicines* are *heating*, some are *cooling*; or an *Effect* when it is distinguished by its *Causes*, as *Faith* is either *built upon divine Testimony* or *human*. It is to this Head we refer particular *artificial Bodies*, when they are distinguished according to the *Matter* they are made of, as a *Statue* is either of *Brass*, of *Marble*, or *Wood*, &c. and any other *Beings* when they are distinguished according to their *End* and *Design*, as the *Furniture of Body or Mind* is either *for Ornament* or *Use*. To this Head also we refer *Subjects* when they are divided according to their *Modes* or *Accidents*, as *Men* are either *merry*, or *grave*, or *sad*; and *Modes* when they are divided by their *Subjects*, as *Distempers* belong to the *Fluids*, or to the *solid Parts of the Animal*.

It

C.VI.S. 10. *The right use of Reason.* 207

It is also to this Place we reduce the *Proposals of a Difficulty under its various Cases*, whether it be in Speculation or Practice: As to shew the Reason of *the Sun-beams burning Wood, whether it be done by a convex Glass, or a concave*; or to shew the *Construction and Mensuration of Triangles*, whether you have two Angles and a Side given, or two Sides and an Angle, or only three Sides. Here it is necessary to *divide a Difficulty into all its Cases*, in order to gain a perfect Knowledge of the Subject you contemplate.

It might be observed here, that *Logicians* have sometimes given a *Mark* or *Sign* to distinguish when it is an *integral Whole*, that is divided into its *Parts* or *Members*, or when it is a *Genus*, an *universal Whole*, that is distributed into its *Species* and *Individuals*. The Rule they give is this: Whensoever the whole Idea can be directly and properly affirmed of each Part, as a *Bird is an Animal*, a *Fish is an Animal*, *Bucephalus is a Horse*, *Peter is a Man*, then it is a Distribution of a *Genus* into its *Species*, or a *Species* into its *Individuals*:  
But



But when the whole cannot be thus directly affirmed concerning every Part, then it is a Division of an *integral* into its several *Pieces* or *Members*; as we cannot say the *Head*, the *Breast*, the *Hand* or the *Foot* is an *Animal*; but we say, *the Head is a Part of the Animal*, and the *Foot* is another *Part*.

This Rule may hold true generally in corporeal Beings, or perhaps in all Substances: But when we say the *Fear of God is Wisdom*, and so is human *Civility*: *Criticism is true Learning*, and so is *Philosophy*: *To execute a Murderer is Justice*, and to save and defend the *Innocent is Justice too*: In these Cases it is not so easily determined, whether an integral Whole be divided into its Parts, or an universal into its Species: For the *Fear of God* may be call'd either one *Part*, or one *Kind* of *Wisdom*: *Criticism* is one *Part*, or one *Kind* of *Learning*: And the *Execution of a Murderer* may be called a *Species* of *Justice*, as well as a *Part* of it. Nor indeed is it a Matter of great Importance to determine this Controversy.

## S E C T. XI.

*Of an orderly Conception of Things.*

**T**HE *last Rule* to direct our Conceptions, is, that *we should rank and place them in a proper Method and just Order.* This is of necessary Use to prevent Confusion: for as a *Trader* who never places his Goods in his Shop or Warehouse in a regular Order, nor keeps the Accounts of his buying and selling, paying and receiving in a just Method, is in utmost Danger of plunging all his Affairs into Confusion and Ruin; so a *Student* who is in the Search of Truth, or an *Author* or *Teacher* who communicates Knowledge to others, will very much obstruct his Design, and confound his own Mind or the Mind of his Hearers, unless he range his Ideas in just Order.

If we would therefore become successful Learners or Teachers, we must not conceive of Things in a *confused Heap*, but dispose our Ideas in some *certain Method*, which may be most  
easy

easy and useful both for the Understanding and Memory ; and be sure as much as may be, *to follow the Nature of Things*, for which many Rules might be given, *viz.*

1. Conceive always of the *Essentials* of any Subject, before you consider of its *Accidentals*.

2. Survey first the general *Parts and Properties* of any Subject, before you extend your Thoughts to discourse of the particular *Kinds or Species* of it.

3. Contemplate Things first in their own *simple Natures*, and afterward view them in *Composition* with other Things; unless it be your present Purpose to take a *compound Being* to pieces, in order to find out the Nature of it by searching of what *Simples* it is composed.

4. Consider the *absolute Modes or Affections* of any Being as it is in it self, before you proceed to consider it *relatively*, or to survey the various *Relations* in which it stands to other Beings, &c.

But in the Regulation of our Ideas there is seldom an absolute Necessity that



C.VI.S. 12. *The right use of Reason.* 217

that we should place them in this or the other particular Method: It is possible in some Cases that many Methods may be equally good, that is, may equally assist the Understanding and the Memory: To frame a Method exquisitely accurate, according to the strict Nature of Things, and to maintain this Accuracy from the Beginning to the End of a Treatise, is a most rare and difficult Thing, if not impossible. But a larger Account of *Method* would be very improper in this Place, lest we anticipate what belongs to the *fourth Part of Logick*.

---

SECT. XII.

*These five Rules of Conception exemplified.*

**I**T may be useful here to give a Specimen of the *five special Rules to direct our Conceptions*, which have been the chief Subject of this long Chapter, and represent them practically in one View.

Suppose

Suppose the Theme of our Discourse were the *Passions of the Mind*.

1<sup>st</sup>, To gain a *clear and distinct* Idea of *Passion*, we must *define* both the *Name* and the *Thing*.

To begin with the *Definition of the Name*; we are not here to understand the Word *Passion* in its vulgar and most limited Sense, as it signifies merely *Anger or Fury*; nor do we take it in its most extensive philosophical Sense, for the *Sustaining the Action* of an *Agent*; but in the more limited philosophical Sense, *Passions* signify the *various Affections of the Mind*, such as *Admiration, Love, or Hatred*; this is the *Definition of the Name*.

We proceed to the *Definition of the Thing*. *Passion* is defined a *Sensation of some Disturbance in animal Nature, occasioned by the Mind's Perception of some Object*. Here the Genus or general Nature of *Passion* is a *Sensation of some Disturbance in animal Nature*, and herein it agrees with *Hunger, Thirst, Pain, &c.* The *essential Difference* of it is, that this *Disturbance arises from a Perception of the*  
- *Mind*.

C.VI.S. 12. *The right use of Reason.* 21 §

Mind, and hereby it is distinguished from Hunger, Thirst, or Pain.

2<sup>dly</sup>, We must conceive of it *completely*, or survey the several *Parts* that compose it. These are (1.) *The Mind's Perception of some Object.* (2.) *The consequent Ruffle, or Disturbance of the Nerves, and Blood, and animal Spirits.* And (3.) *The Sensation of this inward Disturbance.*

3<sup>dly</sup>, We must consider it *comprehensively* in its various *Properties*. The most essential *Attributes* that make up its Nature have been already mentioned under the foregoing Heads. Some of the most considerable *Properties* that remain are these, *viz.* That *Passion belongs to all Mankind*, in greater or lesser Degrees: *It is not constantly present with us, but upon some certain Occasions:* It is appointed by our Creator for various useful *Ends and Purposes*, *viz.* to give us Vigour in the Pursuit of what is good and agreeable to us, or in the Avoidance of what is hurtful: *It is very proper for our State of Trial in this World:* *It is not utterly to be rooted out of our Nature, but to be moderated*



rated and governed according to Rules of Virtue and Religion, &c.

4<sup>thly</sup>, We must take Cognisance of the various *Kinds* of it, which is called an *extensive Conception* of it. If the Object which the Mind perceives be very *uncommon*, it excites the Passion of *Admiration*. If the Object appear agreeable, it raises *Love*: If the agreeable Object be *absent*, it is *Desire*: If *attainable*, it excites *Hope*: If *unattainable*, *Despair*: If it be *present* and *possess*, it is the Passion of *Joy*: If *lost*, it excites *Sorrow*. If the Object be disagreeable, it causes in general *Hatred* or *Aversion*: If it be *absent* and we are in *Danger* of it, it raises our *Fear*: If it be *present*, it is *Sorrow* and *Sadness*, &c.

5<sup>thly</sup>, All these Things and many more which go to compose a Treatise on this Subject, must be placed in their *proper Order*: A slight Specimen of which is exhibited in this short Account of *Passion*, and which that admirable Author *Descartes* has treated of at large; tho' for want of sufficient Experiments and Observations in natural Philosophy, there

are  
*Descartes* lent Dr. Henry more  
 Dr. more lent Mr. Henry Grove  
 his Scheme on the Passions

C.VI.S.13. *The right use of Reason.* 215  
are some few Mistakes in his Account of  
animal Nature.

---

SECT. XIII.

*An Illustration of these five Rules by  
Similitudes.*

**T**HUS we have brought the first  
and largest Part of *Logick* to a  
Conclusion: And it may not be impro-  
per here to represent its Excellencies  
(so far as we have gone) by general  
Hints of its *chief Design* and Use, as  
well as by a various Comparison of it to  
those Instruments which Mankind have  
invented for their several Conveniencies  
and Improvements.

The *Design of Logick* is not to fur-  
nish us with the perceiving Faculty, but  
only to direct us in the Use of it: It  
doth not give us the Objects of our  
Ideas, but only casts such a Light on  
those Objects which Nature furnishes us  
with, that they may be the more clearly  
and distinctly known: It doth not add  
new Parts or Properties to Things, but  
it

it *discovers* the various Parts, Properties, Relations, and Dependencies of one Thing upon another, and by *ranking all Things* under *general* and *special* Heads, it renders the Nature, or any of the Properties, Powers and Uses of a Thing more easy to be found out, when we seek in what Rank of Beings it lyes, and wherein it agrees with, and wherein it differs from others.

If any *Comparisons* would illustrate this, it may be thus represented.

I. When Logick assists us to attain a *clear and distinct* Conception of the Nature of Things by *Definition*, it is like those *Glasses* whereby we behold such Objects distinctly, as by Reason of their Smallness or their great Distance, appear in Confusion to the naked Eye: So the *Telescope* discovers to us distant Wonders in the Heavens, and shews the *milky Way*, and the *bright cloudy Spots* in a very dark Skie to be a Collection of little Stars, which the Eye unassisted beholds in mingled Confusion. So when Bodies are too small for our Sight to Survey them distinctly, then the *Microscope* is at Hand for our Assistance,



C.VI.S.13. *The right use of Reason.* 217

ance, to shew us all the *Limbs* and *Features of the most minute Animals*, with great Clearness and Distinction.

II. When we are taught by Logick to view a Thing *compleatly* in all its *Parts* by the Help of *Division*, it has the Use of an *anatomical Knife*, which dissects an animal Body, and separates the *Veins, Arteries, Nerves, Muscles, Membranes, &c.* and shews us the several Parts which go to the Composition of a compleat Animal.

III. When Logick instructs us to survey an Object *comprehensively* in all the *Modes, Properties, Relations, Faces, and Appearances* of it, it is of the same use as a *terrestrial Globe*, which turning round on its Axis, represents to us all the variety of *Lands and Seas, Kingdoms and Nations* on the Surface of the Earth in a very short Succession of Time, shews the Situation and various Relation of them to each other, and gives us a comprehensive View of them in Miniature.

L

IV. When

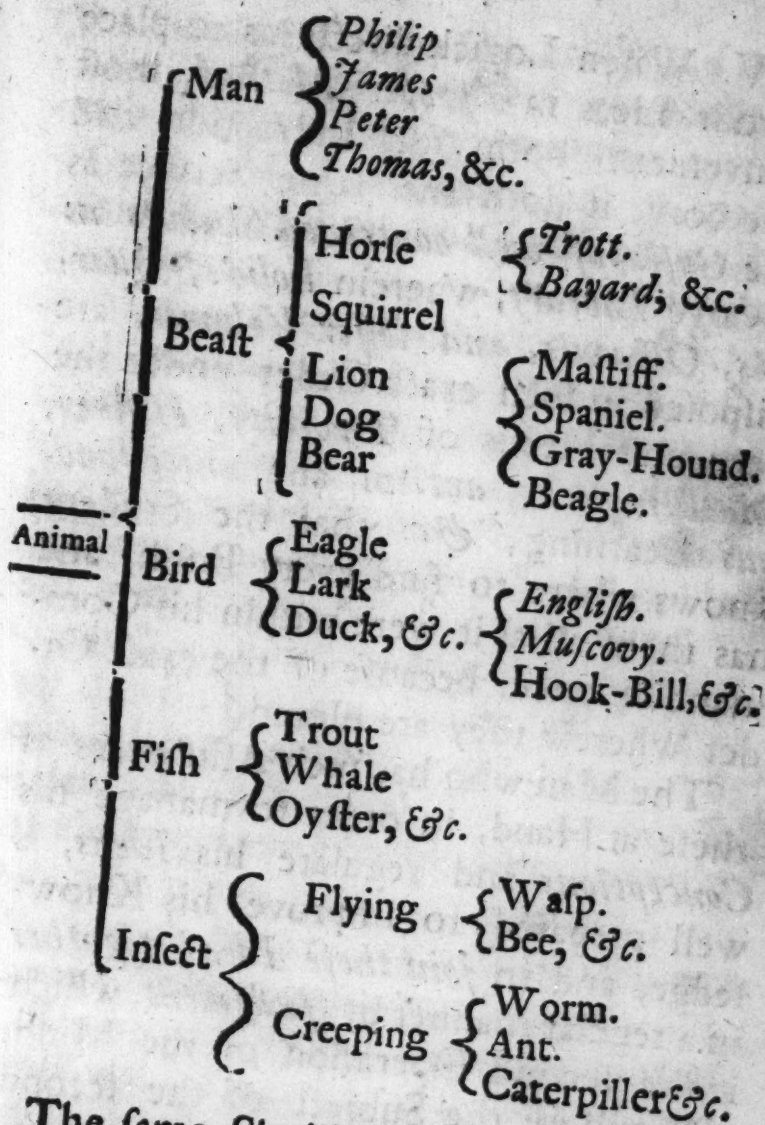
IV. When this Art teaches us to *distribute* any *extensive* Idea into its different *Kinds* or *Species*, it may be compared to the *prismatick Glass*, that receives the Sun-Beams or Rays of Light, which seem to be uniform when falling upon it, but it separates and distributes them into their different Kinds and Colours, and ranks them in their proper Succession.

Or if we descend to *Subdivisions* and subordinate Ranks of Being, then *Distribution* may also be said to form the Resemblance of a *natural Tree*, wherein the *Genus* or general Idea stands for the *Root* or *Stock*, and the several *Kinds* or *Species*, and *Individuals*, are distributed abroad, and represented in their Dependance and Connection, like the several *Boughs*, *Branches*, and *lesser Shoots*. For instance, let *Animal* be the *Root* of a logical Tree, the Resemblance is seen by meer Inspection, though the Root be not placed at the bottom of the Page.

Animal

Anim

Th  
to illu  
of an  
Parts.



The same Similitude will serve also to illustrate the *Division* and *Subdivision* of an *integral Whole*, into its several *Parts*.



V. When Logick directs us to place all our Ideas in a *proper Method*, most convenient both for Instruction and Memory, it doth the same Service as the *Cases of well contrived Shelves in a large Library*, wherein *Folio's, Quarto's, Octavo's, and lesser Volumes*, are disposed in such exact Order under the particular Heads of *Divinity, History, Mathematicks, antient and miscellaneous Learning, &c.* that the Student knows where to find every Book, and has them all as it were within his Command at once, because of the exact Order wherein they are placed.

The Man who has such Assistances as these at Hand, in order to manage his *Conceptions* and regulate his *Ideas*, is well prepared to improve his Knowledge, and to *join these Ideas together* in a regular manner by *Judgment*, which is the second Operation of the Mind, and will be the Subject of the second Part of Logick.

THE

and  
geth



THE  
Second PART  
OF  
LOGICK.



*Of Judgment and Proposition.*



HEN the Mind has got Acquaintance with Things by framing *Ideas* of them, it proceeds to the next Operation, and that is, to compare these *Ideas* together, and to join them by *Affirmation*,

tion, or disjoin them by *Negation*, according as we find them to agree or disagree. This Act of the Mind is called *Judgment*; as when we have by Perception obtained the Ideas of *Plato*, a *Philosopher*, *Man*, *Innocent*, we form these Judgments; *Plato was a Philosopher: no Man is innocent.*

Some Writers have asserted, that *Judgment* consists in a *meer Perception of the Agreement or Disagreement of Ideas*. But I rather think there is an Act of the Will (at least in most Cases) necessary to form a *Judgment*; for though we do perceive, or think we perceive Ideas to agree or disagree, yet we may sometimes *refrain from judging*, or assenting to the Perception, for fear lest the Perception should not be sufficiently clear, and we should be mistaken: And I am well assured at other Times, that there are Multitudes of *Judgments formed*, and a firm Assent given to Ideas joined or disjoined, before there is any clear Perception whether they agree or disagree; and this is the Reason of so many *false Judgments* or Mistakes among Men. Both these Practices



Practices are a Proof that *Judgment* has something of the *Will* in it, and does not meerly consist in *Perception*, since we sometimes judge (though unhappily) without perceiving, and sometimes we perceive without immediate judging.

As an *Idea* is the Result of our *Conception* or *Apprehension*, so a *Proposition* is the Effect of *Judgment*. The foregoing Sentences which are Examples of the Act of Judgment are properly called *Propositions*. *Plato is a Philosopher, &c.*

Here let us consider,

1. *The general Nature of a Proposition, and the Parts of which it is composed.*
2. *The various Divisions or Kinds of Propositions.*
3. *The Springs of false Judgment, or the Doctrine of Prejudices.*
4. *General Directions to assist us in judging aright.*
5. *Special Rules to direct us in judging of particular Objects.*

## CHAP. I.

*Of the Nature of a Proposition,  
and its several Parts.*

*Proposition* is a Sentence wherein two or more *Ideas* or *Terms* are joined by one Affirmation or Negation, as *Plato was a Philosopher: Every Angle is formed by two Lines meeting: No Man living on Earth can be compleatly happy.* When there are never so many *Ideas* or *Terms* in the Sentence, yet if they are joined or disjoined meerly by one single Affirmation or Negation, they are properly called but *one Proposition*, though they may be resolved into several Propositions, which are implied therein, as will appear hereafter.

In describing a *Proposition*, I use the Word *Terms* as well as *Ideas*, because when meer *Ideas* are joined in the Mind without Words, 'tis rather called a *Judgment*; but when clothed with Words, 'tis called a *Proposition*, even though it be

C. I. *The right use of Reason.* 225

be in the Mind only, as well as when it is exprest by speaking or writing.

There are three Things which go to the Nature and Constitution of a Proposition (*viz.*) The *Subject*, the *Predicate*, and the *Copula*.

The *Subject* of a Proposition is that concerning which any thing is affirmed or denied: So *Plato*, *Angle*, *Man living on Earth*, are the Subjects of the foregoing Propositions.

The *Predicate* is that which is affirmed or denied of the Subject; so *Philosopher* is the Predicate of the first Proposition; *formed by two Lines meeting*, is the Predicate of the second; *capable of being compleatly happy*, is the proper Predicate of the third.

The *Subject* and *Predicate* of a Proposition taken together are called the *Matter* of it; for these are the *Materials* of which it is made.

The *Copula* is the *Form* of a Proposition; it represents the Act of the Mind affirming or denying, and it is exprest by the Words, *am*, *art*, *is*, *are*, &c. or, *am not*, *art not*, *is not*, *are not*, &c.



It is not a Thing of Importance enough to create a Dispute, whether the Words *no, none, not, never, &c.* which disjoin the Ideas or Terms in a negative Proposition, shall be called a Part of the *Subject*, of the *Copula*, or of the *Predicate*: Sometimes perhaps they may seem most naturally to be included in one, and sometimes in another of these, though a Proposition is usually denominated *affirmative* or *negative* by its *Copula*, as hereafter.

*Note 1.* Where each of these Parts of a Proposition is not exprest distinctly in so many Words, yet they are all understood and implicitly contained therein; as, *Socrates disputed*, is a compleat Proposition, for it signifies, *Socrates was disputing*. So, *I dye*, signifies, *I am dying*. *I can write*, i. e. *I am able to write*. In *Latin* and *Greek* one single Word is many Times a compleat Proposition.

*Note 2.* These Words, *am, art, is, &c.* when they are used alone without any other Predicate, signify both the *Act of the Mind judging*, which includes the *Copula*, and signify also  
*actual*

*actual Existence*, which is the Predicate of that Proposition. So *Rome* is, signifies *Rome is existent*: *There are some strange Monsters*, that is, *some strange Monsters are existent*. *Carthage is no more*, i. e. *Carthage has no Being*.

*Note 3.* The Subject and Predicate of a Proposition are not always to be known and distinguished by the placing of the Words in the Sentence, but by reflecting duly on the Sense of the Words, and on the Mind and Design of the Speaker or Writer: As if I say, *in Africa there are many Lions*, I mean, *many Lions are existent in Africa*: *Many Lions* is the Subject, and *existent in Africa* is the Predicate. 'Tis proper for a Philosopher to understand *Geometry*; here the Word *Proper* is the Predicate, and all the rest is the Subject, except *Is* the Copula.

*Note 4.* The Subject and Predicate of a Proposition, ought always to be two different *Ideas*, or two different *Terms*; for where both the *Terms* and *Ideas* are the same, 'tis called an *identical Proposition*, which is mere trifling,

and cannot tend to promote Knowledge, such as, *a Rule is a Rule*, or *a good Man is a good Man*.

But there are some Propositions, wherein the *Terms* of the Subject and Predicate seem to be the same, yet the *Ideas* are not the same; nor can these be called *purely identical* or trifling Propositions; such as, *Home is Home*; that is, *Home is a convenient or delightful Place*: *Socrates is Socrates still*; that is, *the Man Socrates is still a Philosopher*: *The Hero was not a Hero*; that is, *the Hero did not shew his Courage*: *What I have written, I have written*; that is, *what I wrote I still approve, and will not alter it*: *What is done, is done*; that is, *it cannot be undone*. It may be easily observed in these Propositions the Term is *equivocal*, for in the *Predicate* it has a different Idea from what it has in the *Subject*.

There are also some Propositions wherein the *Terms* of the Subject and Predicate differ, but the *Ideas* are the same; and these are not *meerly identical* or trifling Propositions. As *impudent is shameless*; *a Billow is a Wave*; or *Fluctus*



C. II. *The right use of Reason.* 229

*Fluctus* (in Latin) is a Wave; a *Globe* is a round Body. In these Propositions either the Words are explained by a Definition of the Name, or the Ideas by a Definition of the Thing, and therefore they are by no Means useless, when formed for this Purpose.



C H A P. II.

*Of the various Kinds of Propositions.*

**P**ropositions may be distributed into various Kinds according to their *Subject*, their *Copula*, their *Predicate*, their *Nature* or *Composition*, their *Sense* and their *Evidence*, which Distributions will be explained in the following Sections.

SECT.

## SECT. I.

*Of universal, particular, indefinite, and singular Propositions.*

**P**ROPOSITIONS may be divided according to their *Subject* into *universal* and *particular*; this is usually called, a Division arising from the *Quantity*.

An *universal Proposition* is when the Subject is taken according to the whole of its Extension; so if the Subject be a *Genus* or general Nature, it includes all its *Species* or Kinds: If the Subject be a *Species*, it includes all its Individuals. This Universality is usually signified by these Words, *all, every, no, none*, or the like; as, *all Men must dye: No Man is Almighty: Every Creature had a beginning.*

A *particular Proposition* is when the Subject is not taken according to its whole Extension; that is, when the Term is limited and restrained to some one or more of those *Species* or *Individuals*, whose general Nature it expresses, but reaches not to all; and this is usually

C. II. S. 1. *The right use of Reason.* 231

usually denoted by the Words, *some, many, a few, there are which, &c.* as *some Birds can sing well: Few Men are truly wise: There are Parrots which will talk a hundred Things.*

Under the general Name of *universal Propositions*, we may justly include those that are *singular*, and for the most part those that are *indefinite* also.

A *singular Proposition* is when the Subject is a singular or individual Term or Idea; as *Descartes was an ingenious Philosopher: Sir Isaac Newton has far exceeded all his Predecessors: The Palace at Hampton-Court is a pleasant Dwelling: This Day is very cold.* The Subject here must be taken according to the whole of its Extension, because being an *individual*, it can extend only to one, and it must therefore be regulated by the Laws of *universal Propositions*.

An *indefinite Proposition*, is when no Note, either of Universality or Particularity is prefixed to a Subject, which is in its own Nature general; as, *a Planet is ever changing its Place: Angels are noble Creatures.* Now this  
fort



sort of Proposition, especially when it describes the Nature of Things, is usually counted *universal* also, and it supposes the Subject to be taken in its whole Extension; for if there were any *Planet* which did not *change its Place*, or any *Angel* that were not a *noble Creature*, these Propositions would not be strictly true.

Yet in order to secure us against Mistakes in judging of *universal*, *particular*, and *indefinite* Propositions, 'tis necessary to make these following Remarks.

### I. Concerning *universal Propositions*.

*Note 1.* Universal Terms may either denote a *metaphysical*, a *physical*, or a *moral* Universality.

A *metaphysical* or *mathematical* *Universality*, is when all the Particulars contained under any general Idea, have the same Predicate belonging to them without any Exception whatsoever; or when the Predicate is so essential to the universal Subject, that it destroys the very Nature of the Subject to be without it; as, *all Circles have a Centre and Circumference: All Spirits*

C. II. S. 1. *The right use of Reason.* 233

*rits in their own Nature are immortal.*

A *physical* or *natural Universality*, is, when according to the Order and common Course of Nature, a Predicate agrees to all the Subjects of that Kind, though there may be some accidental and preternatural Exceptions; as, *all Men use Words to express their Thoughts*, yet *dumb* Persons are excepted, for they cannot speak. *All Beasts have four Feet*, yet there may be some *Monsters* with five; or *maim'd*, who have but three.

A *moral Universality*, is, when the Predicate agrees to the greatest part of the Particulars which are contained under the universal Subject; as, *all Negroes are stupid Creatures: All Men are governed by Affection rather than by Reason: All the old Romans loved their Country: And the Scripture uses this Language, when St. Paul tells us, The Cretes are always Liars.*

Now it is evident, that a special or singular Conclusion cannot be infer'd from a *moral Universality*, nor always and infallibly from a *physical* one, tho' it may be always inferred from a *Universality* which is *metaphysical*, without

put any Danger, or Possibility of Mistake.

Let it be observed also, that usually we make little or no Distinction in common Language, between a Subject that is *physically* or *metaphysically* universal.

*Note 2.* An universal Term is sometimes taken *collectively* for all its particular Ideas united together, and sometimes *distributively*, meaning each of them single and alone.

Instances of a *collective Universal* are such as these: *All these Apples will fill a Busbel: All the Hours of the Night are sufficient for sleep: All the Rules of Grammar overload the Memory.* In these Propositions 'tis evident, that the Predicate belongs not to the *Individuals separately*, but to the *whole collective Idea*; for we cannot affirm the same Predicate if we change the Word *all* into *every*; we cannot say *every Apple will fill a Busbel, &c.* Now such a *collective Idea* when it becomes the Subject of a Proposition, ought to be esteemed as one single Thing, and this renders the Proposition *singular* or *indefinite*, as we shall shew immediately. A



C. II. S. 1. *The right use of Reason.* 235

A *distributive Universal* will allow the Word *all* to be changed into *every*, and by this Means is distinguished from a *collective*.

Instances of a *distributive Universal*, are the most common on every Occasion; as, *all Men are mortal: Every Man is a Sinner, &c.* But in this sort of *Universal* there is a Distinction to be made, which follows in the next Remark.

*Note 3.* When an *universal Term* is taken *distributively*, sometimes it includes *all the Individuals* contained in its inferior Species: as when I say, *every Sickness has a Tendency to Death*; I mean *every individual Sickness*, as well as *every Kind*. But sometimes it includes no more than merely *each Species or Kind*; as when the Evangelist says, *Christ healed every Disease, or every Disease was healed by Christ*; that is, *every Kind of Disease*. The *first* of these, Logicians call the Distribution of an *Universal in singula generum*; the *last* is a Distribution *in genera singulorum*. But either of them  
joined

joined to the Subject render a Proposition *universal*.

*Note 4.* The Universality of a Subject is often restrained by a Part of the Predicate; as when we say, *all Men learn Wisdom by Experience*: The universal Subject, *all Men*, is limited to signify only, *all those Men who learn Wisdom*. The Scripture also uses this sort of Language, when it speaks of *all Men being justified by the Righteousness of one*, Rom. v. 18. that is, *all Men who are justified* obtain it this Way.

Observe here, that not only a *metaphysical* or *natural*, but a *moral* Universality also is oftentimes to be restrained by a part of the Predicate; as when we say, *all the Dutch are good Sea-Men*: *All the Italians are subtle Politicians*; that is, those among the *Dutch*, who are *Sea-Men*, are good *Sea-Men*; and those among the *Italians*, who are *Politicians*, are subtle *Politicians*, *i. e.* they are generally so.

*Note 5.* The Universality of a Term is many times restrained by the particular *Time*, *Place*, *Circumstance*, &c. or the

C. II. S. 1. *The right use of Reason.* 237

the *Design* of the Speaker ; as if we are in the City of *London*, and say, *all the Weavers went to present their Petition*; we mean only *all the Weavers who dwell in the City*. So when it is said in the Gospel, *all Men did marvel*, Mark v. 20. it reaches only to *all those Men who heard of the Miracles of our Saviour*.

Here also it should be observed, that a *moral Universality* is restrained by *Time, Place*, and other *Circumstances* as well as a *natural*; so that by these Means the Word *all* sometimes does not extend to a tenth Part of those who at first might seem to be included in that Word.

One Occasion of these Difficulties and Ambiguities that belong to *universal Propositions*, is the common Humour and Temper of Mankind, who generally have an Inclination to magnify their Ideas, and to talk roundly and *universally* concerning any thing they speak of; which has introduced universal Terms of Speech into Custom and Habit, in all Nations and all Languages, more than Nature or Reason would dictate;



dictate; yet when this Custom is introduced, 'tis not at all improper to use this sort of Language in solemn and sacred Writings, as well as in familiar Discourse.

## II. Remarks concerning indefinite Propositions.

*Note 1.* Propositions carrying in them universal Forms of Expression, may sometimes drop the *Note of Universality*, and become *indefinite*, and yet retain the same universal Sense, whether *metaphysical*, *natural*, or *moral*, whether *collective* or *distributive*.

We may give Instances of each of these.

Metaphysical; as, *a Circle has a Centre and Circumference*. Natural; as, *Beasts have four Feet*. Moral; as, *Negroes are stupid Creatures*. Collective; as, *the Apples will fill a Bushel*. Distributive; as, *Men are mortal*.

There are many Cases wherein a *collective Idea* is exprest in a Proposition by an *indefinite Term*, and that where it describes the *Nature* or *Quality* of the Subject, as well as when it declares  
some

C. II. S. 1. *The right use of Reason.* 239

some *past Matters of Fact*; as, *Fir-Trees set in good Order will give a charming Prospect*; this must signify a *Collection of Fir-Trees*, for one makes no Prospect. In Matters of Fact this is more evident and frequent; as *the Romans overcame the Gauls: The Robbers surrounded the Coach: The wild Geese flew over the Thames in the Form of a Wedge.* All these are collective Subjects.

~~Note 2. We may judge of indefinite Terms, whether they are Distributive or no, in the same manner as we do of Universals. Wheresoever the Word every can be added to the Subject of an indefinite Proposition, it shews it to be a universal Distributive; as, Men are Sinners, may be thus changed, every Man is a Sinner. But where the Word every cannot be added, it cannot be an universal Distributive. Vid. Advertisement~~

Note 3. In indefinite Propositions the Subject is often restrained by the Predicate, or by the special Time, Place, or Circumstances, as well as in Propositions which are expressly universal; as,  
the

*the Chineses are ingenious Silk-Weavers, i. e. those Chineses, which are Silk-Weavers, are ingenious at their Work. The Stars appear to us when the Twilight is gone. This can signify no more than the Stars which are above our Horizon.*

*Note 4.* All these Restrictions tend to reduce some *indefinite* Propositions almost into *particular*, as will appear under the next Remarks.

### III. Remarks concerning particular Propositions.

*Note 1.* A *particular* Proposition may sometimes be exprest *indefinitely*, without any Note of Particularity prefixt to the Subject; as, *in Times of Confusion Laws are not executed: Men of Virtue are disgraced, and Murtherers escape, i. e. some Laws, some Men of Virtue, some Murtherers: Unless we should call this Language, a moral Universality, though I think it can hardly extend so far.*

*Note 2.* The Words *some, a few, &c.* though they generally denote a proper *Parti-*



C.II.S.I. *The right use of Reason.* 241

*Particularity*, yet sometimes they express a *collective Idea*; as, *some of the Enemies beset the General around. A few Greeks would beat a thousand Indians.*

I conclude this *Section* with a few *general Remarks* on this Subject (*viz.*)

*Universal* and *particular Terms* in the plural Number, such as, *all, some, few, many, &c.* when they are taken in their *distributive Sense*, represent *several single Ideas*; and when they are thus affixed to the Subject of a Proposition, render that Proposition *universal* or *particular*.

*Universal* and *particular Terms* in the plural Number taken in their *collective Sense*, represent generally one *collective Idea*; and this appears when the Predicate cannot be affirmed of any single Idea contained in the Subject.

If this one *collective Idea* be thus represented (whether by *universal* or *particular Terms*) in a Proposition which *describes the Nature of a Thing*, it properly makes either a *singular* or an *indefinite Proposition*; for the Words *all, some, a few, &c.* do not then denote the

M

*Quantity*

*Quantity* of the Proposition, but are esteemed meerly as Terms which connect the Individuals together in order to compose *one collective Idea*. Observe these Instances, *all the Sycamores in the Garden would make a large Grove*; i. e. this one Collection of Sycamores, which is a *singular Idea*. *Some of the Sycamores in the Garden would make a fine Grove*: *Sycamores would make a noble Grove*. In these last the Subject is rather *indefinite* than *singular*. But it is very evident, that in each of these Propositions the Predicate can only belong to a *collective Idea*, and therefore the Subject must be esteemed a *collective*.

If this *collective Idea* (whether represented by universal or particular Terms) be used in *describing past Matters of Fact*, then it is generally to be esteemed a *singular Idea*, and renders the Proposition *singular*; as, *all the Soldiers of Alexander made but a little Army*: *A few Macedonians vanquished the large Army of Darius*: *Some Grenadiers in the Camp plundered all the neighbouring Towns*.

Now

C. II. S. I. *The right use of Reason.* 243

Now we have shewn before, that if a Proposition *describing the Nature of Things* has an *indefinite* Subject, it is generally to be esteemed *universal* in its propositional Sense: But if it has a *singular Subject*, in its propositional Sense it is always rankt with *Universals*.

After all, we must be forced to confess, that the Language of Mankind, and the Idioms of Speech are so exceeding various, that it is hard to reduce them to a few Rules; and if we would gain a just and precise Idea of every *universal, particular, and indefinite* Expression, we must not only consider the peculiar Idiom of the Language, but the Time, the Place, the Occasion, the Circumstances of the Matter spoken of, and thus penetrate as far as possible into the Design of the Speaker or Writer.



## S E C T. II.

*Of affirmative and negative Propositions.*

**W**HEN a Proposition is considered with Regard to its *Copula*, it may be divided into *affirmative* and *negative*; for it is the *Copula* joins or disjoins the two Ideas. Others call this a Division of Propositions according to their *Quality*.

An *affirmative Proposition* is when the Idea of the Predicate is supposed to agree to the Idea of the Subject, and is joined to it by the Word *is*, or *are*, which is the *Copula*; as, *all Men are Sinners*. But when the Predicate is not supposed to agree with the Subject, and is disjoined from it by the Particles *is not*, *are not*, &c. the Proposition is *negative*; as, *Man is not innocent*; or, *no Man is innocent*. In an *affirmative Proposition* we assert one Thing to belong to another, and as it were, unite them in Thought and Word: In *negative Propositions* we separate one Thing from

C.II.S.2. *The right use of Reason.* 245

from another, and deny their Agreement.

It may seem something odd, that two Ideas or Terms are said to be *disjoined* as well as *joined* by a *Copula*: But if we can but suppose the negative Particles do really belong to the *Copula* of negative Propositions, it takes away the Harshness of the Expression: and to make it yet softer, we may consider that the Predicate and Subject may be properly said to be joined *in a Form of Words as a Proposition*, by connexive Particles in *Grammar* or *Logick*, though they are disjoined in their Sense and Signification. Every Youth who has learnt his Grammar, knows there are such Words as *disjunctive Conjunctions*.

Several Things are worthy our Notice on this Subject.

1<sup>st</sup> *Note.* As there are some *Terms*, or *Words*, and *Ideas* (as I have shewn before) concerning which it is hard to determine whether they are *negative* or *positive*, so there are some *Propositions* concerning which it may be difficult to say, whether they *affirm* or *deny*; as,

M 3

when

when we say, *Plato was no Fool* : *Cicero was no unskilful Orator* : *Cæsar made no Expedition to Muscovy* : *An Oyster has no part like an Eel* : 'Tis not necessary for a Physician to speak French, and for a Physician to speak French is needless. The Sense of these Propositions is very plain and easy, tho' Logicians might squabble perhaps a whole Day, whether they should rank them under the Names of *negative* or *affirmative*.

2<sup>d</sup> Note. In *Latin* and *English* two Negatives joined in one Sentence make an Affirmative; as when we declare *no Man is not mortal*, 'tis the same as though we said, *Man is mortal*. But in *Greek* and oftentimes in *French* two Negatives make but a stronger Denial.

3<sup>d</sup> Note. If the meer negative Term *Not*, be added to the Copula of an *universal affirmative* Proposition, it reduces it to a *particular Negative*; as, *all Men are not wise*, signifies the same as, *some Men are not wise*.

4<sup>th</sup> Note. In all *affirmative* Propositions, the Predicate is taken in its whole



C. II. S. 2. *The right use of Reason.* 247

whole Comprehension; that is, every essential Part and Attribute of it is affirmed concerning the Subject; as when I say, *a true Christian is an honest Man*, every Thing that belongs to *Honesty* is affirmed concerning a *true Christian*.

5<sup>th</sup> Note. In all *negative* Propositions the Predicate is taken in its whole Extension; that is, every Species and Individual that is contained in the general Idea of the Predicate, is utterly denied concerning the Subject: So in this Proposition, *a Spirit is not an Animal*, we exclude all sorts, and kinds, and particular *Animals* whatsoever from the Idea of a *Spirit*.

From these two last Remarks we may derive this Inference, that we ought to attend to the *intire Comprehension* of our Ideas, and to the *universal Extension* of them, as far as we have proper Capacity for it, before we grow too confident in our affirming or denying any Thing, which may have the least Darkness, Doubt, or Difficulty attending it: 'Tis the want of this Attention that betrays us into many Mistakes.

## SECT. III.

*Of the Opposition and Conversion of Propositions.*

ANY two Ideas being joined or disjoined in various Forms will afford us several Propositions: All these may be distinguished according to their *Quantity* and their *Quality* \* into four, which are markt or denoted by the Letters, A, E, I, O, thus:

A	} denotes a	{	Universal Affirmative.
E			Universal Negative.
I			Particular Affirmative.
O			Particular Negative.

according to these old Latin Rhymes—

*Afferit A, Negat E, verum generaliter  
Ambæ.*

*Afferit I, Negat O, sed particulariter  
Ambo.*

---

\* The Reader should remember here, that a Proposition according to its *Quantity* is called *universal* or *particular*, and according to its *Quality*, 'tis either *affirmative* or *negative*.

This

C.II.S.3. *The right use of Reason.* 249

This may be exemplified by these two Ideas, a *Vine* and a *Tree*.

A *Every Vine is a Tree.*

E *No Vine is a Tree.*

I *Some Vine is a Tree.*

O *Some Vine is not a Tree.*

The Logicians of the Schools have written many large Trifles concerning the *Opposition* and *Conversion* of Propositions. It will be sufficient here to give a few brief Hints of these Things, that the Learner may not be utterly ignorant of them.

Propositions which are made of the same Subject and Predicate are said to be *opposite*, when that which is denied in one is affirmed in the other, either in whole or in part, without any Consideration whether the Propositions be true or no.

If they differ both in Quantity and Quality they are called *Contradictory*, as,

A *Every Vine is a Tree.* These can never

O *Some Vine is not a Tree.* be both true, or both false at the same Time.

M s

If



If two Universals differ in Quality they are *Contraries*, as,

A *Every Vine is a Tree.* } These can never  
E *No Vine is a Tree.* } be both true together, but they may  
be both false.

If two particular Propositions differ in Quality, they are *Subcontraries*, as,

I *Some Vine is a Tree.* } These may be both  
O *Some Vine is not a Tree.* } true together, but  
they can never be  
both false.

Both particular and universal Propositions which agree in Quality but not in Quantity are called *Subaltern*, tho' these are not properly *opposite*, as,

A *Every Vine is a Tree.*

I *Some Vine is a Tree.*

Or thus,

E *No Vine is a Tree.*

O *Some Vine is not a Tree.*

The Canons of *subalternate Propositions* are usually reckoned these three (*viz.*) (1.) If an universal Proposition be true, the particular will be true also, but not on the contrary. And (2.) If a particular Proposition be false, the universal must be false too, but not on the contrary.

C. II. S. 3. *The right use of Reason.* 251

trary. (3.) *Subaltern Propositions*, whether universal or particular, may sometimes be both true, and sometimes both false.

The *Conversion of Propositions* is when the Subject and Predicate change their Places with Preservation of the Truth. This may be done with constant Certainty in all *universal Negatives*, and *particular Affirmatives*; as, *no Spirit is an Animal*, may be converted, *no Animal is a Spirit*; and *some Tree is a Vine*, may be converted, *some Vine is a Tree*. But there is more formal Trifling in this sort of Discourse than there is of solid Improvement, because this sort of *Conversion* arises meerly from the *Form of Words*, as connected in a Proposition, rather than from the Matter.

Yet it may be useful to observe, that there are some Propositions, which by Reason of the *Ideas* or *Matter* of which they are composed may be converted with constant Truth: Such are those Propositions whose Predicate is a nominal or real Definition of the Subject, or the Difference of it, or a Property of the fourth Kind, or a superlative Degree

of any Property, or Quality whatsoever, or in short, wheresoever the Predicate and the Subject have exactly the same Extension or the same Comprehension; as, *every Vine is a Tree bearing Grapes*; and *every Tree bearing Grapes is a Vine*: *Religion is the truest Wisdom*; and *the truest Wisdom is Religion*: *Julius Cæsar was the first Emperor of Rome*; and *the first Emperor of Rome was Julius Cæsar*. These are the Propositions which are properly convertible, and they are called *reciprocal Propositions*.

---

#### SECT. IV.

##### *Of pure and modal Propositions.*

**A**Nother Division of Propositions among the scholastick Writers is into *pure* and *modal*. This may be called (for Distinction-sake) a Division according to the *Predicate*.

When a Proposition meerly expresses that the Predicate is connected with the Subject, 'tis called a *pure Proposition*; as,



C.II.S.4. *The right use of Reason.* 253

as, *every true Christian is an honest Man.* But when it includes also the *Way* and *Manner* wherein the Predicate is connected with the Subject, it is called a *modal Proposition*, as when I say, *'tis necessary that a true Christian should be an honest Man.*

Logical Writers generally make the *Modality* of this Proposition to belong to the *Copula*, because it shews the *Manner* of the Connection between Subject and Predicate. But if the Form of the Sentence as a *logical Proposition* be duly considered, the *Mode* itself is the very *Predicate* of the Proposition, and it must run thus: *That a true Christian should be an honest Man is a necessary Thing*, and then the *primary Proposition* is included in the Subject of the *modal Proposition*.

There are *four Modes* of connecting the Predicate with the Subject, which are usually reckoned up on this Occasion (viz.) *Necessity* and *Contingency* which are two Opposites, *Possibility* and *Impossibility* which also are Opposites; as, *'tis necessary that a Globe should be round: That a Globe be made of Wood*  
or

*or Glass is an unnecessary or contingent Thing: 'Tis impossible that a Globe should be square: 'Tis possible that a Globe may be made of Water.*

With Regard to these *modal Propositions* which the Schools have introduced, I would make these two Remarks.

*Remark 1.* These Propositions in *English* are formed by the Resolution of the Words, *must be, might not be, can be, and cannot be*, into those more explicate Forms of a logical Copula and Predicate, *is necessary, is contingent, is possible, is impossible*: For *'tis necessary that a Globe should be round*, signifies no more than that a *Globe must be round*.

*Remark 2.* Let it be noted, that this quadruple Modality is only an Enumeration of the *natural Modes* or *Manners* wherein the Predicate is connected with the Subject: We might also describe several *moral and civil Modes* of connecting two Ideas together (*viz.*) *Lawfulness and Unlawfulness, Conveniency and Inconveniency, &c.* whence we may form such *modal Propositions* as these. *'Tis unlawful for any Person*

C.II.S.4. *The right use of Reason.* 255  
to kill an innocent Man: 'Tis lawful  
for Christians to eat Flesh in Lent:  
To tell all that we think is inexpedi-  
ent: For a Man to be affable to his  
Neighbour is very convenient, &c.

There are several other *Modes* of  
speaking whereby a Predicate is con-  
nected with a Subject; such as, 'tis cer-  
tain, 'tis doubtful, 'tis probable, 'tis im-  
probable, 'tis agreed, 'tis granted, 'tis  
said by the Ancients, 'tis written, &c.  
all which will form other kinds of *modal*  
*Propositions*.

But whether the *Modality* be *natural*,  
*moral*, &c. yet in all these Propositions  
'tis the *Mode* is the *proper Predicate*,  
and all the rest of the Proposition, ex-  
cept the *Copula* (or Word *is*) belongs to  
the *Subject*; and thus they become *pure*  
*Propositions* of a complex Nature, of  
which we shall treat in the next *Sec-*  
*tion*, so that there is no great Need of  
making *Modals* a distinct sort.

There are many little Subtilties which  
the Schools acquaint us with concern-  
ing the *Conversion*, and *Opposition*, and  
*Equipollence* of these modal Propositions,  
suited to the *Latin Tongue* rather  
than



than the *English*, and fit to pass away the idle Time of a Student, rather than to enrich his Understanding.

---

# SECT. V.

*Of single Propositions, whether simple or complex.*

WHEN we consider the *Nature* of *Propositions*, together with the *Formation* of them and the *Materials* whereof they are made, we divide them into *single* and *compound*.

A *single Proposition* is that which has but one Subject and one Predicate; but if it has more Subjects or more Predicates, it is called a *compound Proposition*, and indeed it contains two or more Propositions in it.

A *single Proposition* (which is also called *categorical*) may be divided again into *simple* and *complex* \*.

---

\* As *simple* Ideas are opposed to *complex*, and *single* Ideas to *compound*, so Propositions are distinguished in the same manner: The *English* Tongue in this Respect having some Advantage above the *learned* Languages, which have no usual Word to distinguish *single* from *simple*.  
A purely

A *purely simple Proposition* is that whose Subject and Predicate are made up of single Terms; as, *Virtue is desirable: Every Penitent is pardoned: No Man is innocent.*

When the Subject, or Predicate, or both, are made up of complex Terms, it is called a *complex Proposition*; as, *every sincere Penitent is pardoned: Virtue is desirable for its own Sake: No Man alive is perfectly innocent.*

If the Term which is added to the Subject of a complex Proposition be either essential or any Way necessary to it, then it is called *explicative*, for it only explains the Subject; as, *every mortal Man is a Son of Adam.* But if the Term added to make up the complex Subject does not necessarily or constantly belong to it, then it is *determinative*, and limits the Subject to a particular part of its Extension; as, *every pious Man shall be happy.* In the first Proposition the Word *mortal* is merely *explicative*: in the second Proposition the Word *pious* is *determinative*.

Here Note, that whatsoever may be affirmed or denied concerning any Subject

ject with an *explicative* Addition, may be also affirmed or denied of that Subject without it; as we may boldly say, *every Man is a Son of Adam*, as well as, *every mortal Man*: But 'tis not so, where the Addition is *determinative*, for we cannot say, *every Man shall be happy*, though every *pious Man* shall be so.

In a complex Proposition the Predicate or Subject are sometimes made complex by the Pronouns, *who, which, whose, to whom, &c.* which make another Proposition; as, *every Man, who is pious, shall be saved: Julius, whose Sirname was Caesar, overcame Pompey: Bodies, which are transparent, have many Pores.* Here the additional Proposition is called an *incident Proposition*. But it is still to be esteemed in this Case meerly as a part of the complex Term; and the Truth or Falshood of the *whole complex Proposition* is not to be judged by the Truth or Falshood of the *incident Proposition*, but by the Connection of the whole Subject with the Predicate. For the incident Proposition may be false, and absurd, or impossible, and



C.II.S.6. *The right use of Reason.* 259

and yet the whole complex Proposition may be true, as, *a Horse*, which has Wings, *might fly over the Thames.*

Beside this *Complexion* which belongs to the *Subject* or *Predicate*, logical Writers use to say, there is a *Complexion* which may fall upon the *Copula* also: But this I have accounted for in the *Section* concerning *modal Propositions*; and indeed it is not of much Importance whether it were placed there or here.

---

SECT. VI.

*Of compound Propositions.*

**A** *Compound Proposition* is made up of two or more Subjects or Predicates, or both; and it contains in it two or more Propositions, which are either *plainly exprest*, or *concealed* and *implied*.

The *first* sort of *compound Propositions* are those wherein the Composition is *exprest* and *evident*, and they are distinguished

stinguished into these six Kinds, (*viz.*) *Copulative, Disjunctive, Conditional, Causal, Relative, and Discretive.*

I. *Copulative Propositions* are those which have more Subjects or Predicates connected by affirmative or negative Conjunctions; as, *Riches and Honour are Temptations to Pride: Cæsar conquered the Gauls and the Britons: Neither Gold nor Jewels will purchase Immortality.* These Propositions are evidently *compounded*, for each of them may be resolved into two Propositions, (*viz.*) *Riches are Temptations to Pride;* and *Honour is a Temptation to Pride;* and so the rest.

The Truth of *copulative Propositions* depends upon the Truth of all the Parts of them; for if *Cæsar* had conquered the *Gauls*, and not the *Britons*, or the *Britons*, and not the *Gauls*, the second copulative Proposition had not been true.

Here Note, those Propositions which cannot be resolved into two or more simple Propositions, are not properly *copulative*, though two or more Ideas be

C.IIS.6. *The right use of Reason.* 261

be connected and coupled by such Conjunctions, either in the Subject or Predicate; as, *two and three make five: Majesty and Meekness don't often meet: The Sun, Moon, and Stars are not all to be seen at once.* Such Propositions are to be esteemed meerly complex, because the Predicate cannot be affirmed of each *single* Subject, but only of all of them together as a *collective* Subject.

II. *Disjunctive Propositions* are when the Parts are disjoined or opposed to one another by disjunctive Particles; as, *it is either Day or Night: The Weather is either shining or rainy: Quantity is either Length, Breadth, or Depth.*

The Truth of *Disjunctives* depends on the necessary and immediate Opposition of the Parts; therefore only the last of these Examples is true; but the two first are not strictly true, because *Twilight* is a Medium between *Day and Night*; and *dry, cloudy Weather* is a Medium between *shining and raining.*

III. Con-



*This is an Hypothesis* III. *Conditional Propositions* are those whose Parts are united by the conditional Particle *if*; as, *if the Sun be fixt, the Earth must move: If there be no Fire, there will be no Smoke.*

*Note,* The first part of these Propositions, or that wherein the Condition is contained, is called the *antecedent*, the other is called the *consequent*.

The Truth of these Propositions depends not at all on the Truth and Falseness of their two Parts, but on the Truth of the *Connection* of them; for each Part of them may be false, and yet the whole Proposition true; as, *if there be no Providence, there will be no future Punishment.*

IV. *Causal Propositions* are where two Propositions are joined by causal Particles; as, *Houses were not built that they might be destroyed: Rehoboam was unhappy because he followed evil Counsel.*

The Truth of a *causal Proposition* arises not from the Truth of the Parts, but from the *causal Influence* that the one

C. II. S. 6. *The right use of Reason.* 263

one Part of it has upon the other; for both Parts may be true, yet the Proposition false, if one Part be not the Cause of the other.

Some Logicians refer *reduplicative Propositions* to this Place, as, *Men, considered as Men, are rational Creatures, i. e. because they are Men.*

V. *Relative Propositions* have their Parts joined by such Particles, as express a Relation or Comparison of one Thing to another; as, *when you are silent I will speak: As much as you are worth, so much you shall be esteemed: As is the Father, so is the Son: Where there is no Tale-Bearer, Contention will cease.*

These are very much akin to *conditional Propositions*, and the Truth of them depends upon the Justness of their *Connection*.

VI. *Discretive Propositions* are such wherein various and seemingly opposite Judgments are made, whose Variety or Distinction is noted by the Particles, *but, tho', yet, &c.* as, *Travellers may change their Climate but not their Temper:*

Job

*Job was patient, though his Grief was great.*

The Truth and Goodness of a *discretive Proposition* depends on the Truth of both Parts, and their Contradistinction to one another; for though both Parts should be true, yet if there be no seeming Opposition between them, it is an useless Assertion, though we cannot call it a false one; as, *Descartes was a Philosopher, yet he was a Frenchman: The Romans were valiant, but they spoke Latin*; both which Propositions are ridiculous, for want of a seeming Opposition between the Parts.

Since we have declared wherein the *Truth and Falshood* of these *compound Propositions* consists, it is proper also to give some Intimations how any of these Propositions when they are false may be *opposed or contradicted*.

All compound Propositions, except *Copulatives* and *Discretives*, are properly denied or contradicted when the Negation affects their conjunctive Particles; as, if the disjunctive Proposition asserts, *'tis either Day or Night*; The Opponent



C.II.S.6. *The right use of Reason.* 265

Opponent says, *'Tis not either Day or Night, or, it is not necessary that it should be either Day or Night;* so the *Hypothetical Proposition* is deny'd by saying, *it does not follow, that the Earth must move if the Sun be fix'd.*

A *Disjunctive Proposition* may be contradicted also by denying all the Parts; as *'tis neither Day nor Night.*

And a *Causal Proposition* may be deny'd or oppos'd *indirectly and improperly*, when either part of the Proposition is deny'd; and it must be false if either Part be false: But the Design of the Proposition being to shew the *causal Connection* of the two Parts, each Part is supposed to be true, and 'tis not *properly* contradicted as a *causal Proposition*, unless one Part of it be deny'd to be the Cause of the other.

As for *Copulatives* and *Discretives*, because their Truth depends more on the Truth of their Parts, therefore these may be oppos'd or deny'd as many Ways, as the Parts of which they are compos'd may be deny'd; so this *Copulative Proposition*, *Riches and Honour are Temptations to Pride*, may be deny'd by saying,

N

ing,

ing, *Riches are not Temptations, tho' Honour may be: or, Honour is not a Temptation, though Riches may be: or, neither Riches nor Honour are Temptations, &c.*

So this *Discretive Proposition*, *Job was patient, though his Grief was great*, is deny'd by saying, *Job was not patient, though his Grief was great: or, Job was patient, but his Grief was not great: or, Job was not patient, nor was his Grief great.*

We proceed now to the *second Sort* of *Compound Propositions*, (*viz.*) such *whose Composition is not expressed, but latent or conceal'd*, yet a small Attention will find two Propositions included in them. Such are these that follow;

1. *Exclusives*; as, *The pious Man alone is happy. 'Tis only Sir Isaac Newton could find out true Philosophy.*

2. *Exceptives*; as, *None of the Antients but Plato well defended the Soul's Immortality. The Protestants worship none but God.*

3. *Comparatives*; as, *Pain is the greatest Affliction. No Turk was fiercer than the Spaniards at Mexico.*

Here

C. II. S. 6. *The right use of Reason.* 267

Here note, that the *Comparative Degree* does not always imply the *Positive*; as if I say, *a Fool is better than a Knave*; this does not affirm that *Folly is good*, but that 'tis *a less Evil than Knavery*.

4. *Inceptives and Desitives*, which relate to the beginning or ending of any thing; as, *the Latin Tongue is not yet forgotten*. *No Man before Orpheus wrote Greek Verse*; *Peter Czar of Muscovy begun to civilize his Nation*.

To these may be added *Continuatives*; as, *Rome remains to this Day*, which includes at least two Propositions, (*viz.*) *Rome was*, and *Rome is*.

Here let other Authors spend Time and Pains in giving the precise Definitions of all these Sorts of Propositions, which may be as well understood by their Names and Examples: Here let them tell what their Truth depends upon, and how they are to be opposed or contradicted; but a moderate Share of common Sense, with a Review of what is said on the former *Compounds*, will suffice for all these Purposes without the Formality of Rules.



## SECT. VII.

*Of true and false Propositions.*

**P**ROPOSITIONS are next to be consider'd according to their *Sense* or *Signification*, and thus they are distributed into *true* and *false*. A *true Proposition* represents Things as they are in themselves; but if Things are represented otherwise than they are in themselves, the Proposition is *false*.

Or we may describe them more particularly thus; a *true Proposition* joins those Ideas and Terms together whose Objects are join'd and agree, or it disjoins those Ideas and Terms, whose Objects disagree or are disjoin'd; as *every Bird has Wings, a Brute is not immortal*.

A *false Proposition* joins those Ideas or Terms whose Objects disagree, or it disjoins those whose Objects agree; as *Birds have no Wings, Brutes are immortal*.

*Note.* 'Tis impossible that the same Proposition should be both true and false at the same Time, in the same Sense, and

C.II.S.7. *The right use of Reason.* 269

and in the same Respect; because a Proposition is but the Representation of the Agreement or Disagreement of Things: Now *it is impossible that the same thing should be and not be, or that the same Things should agree and not agree at the same Time and in the same Respect.* This is a first Principle of Human Knowledge.

Yet some Propositions may seem to contradict one another, though they may be both true, but in different Senses or Respects or Times: as *Man was immortal in Paradise* and *Man was mortal in Paradise.* But these two Propositions must be referred to different Times; as *Man before his Fall* was immortal, but *at the Fall* he became mortal. So we may say now, *Man is mortal*, or *Man is immortal*, if we take these Propositions in different Respects; as *Man is an immortal Creature as to his Soul*, but *mortal as to his Body.* A great Variety of Difficulties and seeming Contradictions both in Holy Scripture and other Writings, may be solved and explain'd in this Manner.

The most important Question on this Subject is this, *What is the Criterion or distinguishing Mark of Truth?* How shall we know when a Proposition is really true or false? There are so many Disguises of Truth in the World, so many false Appearances of Truth, that some Sects have declared there is no Possibility of distinguishing *Truth* from *Falseness*; and therefore they have abandon'd all Pretences to Knowledge, and maintain'd strenuously that *nothing is to be known*.

The first Men of this Humour made themselves famous in *Greece*, by the Name of *Scepticks*; that is *Seekers*: They were also called *Academicks*, borrowing their Name from *Academia*, their School or Place of Study. They taught that *all Things are uncertain*, tho' they allow'd that some are more probable than others. After these arose the Sect of *Pyrrhonicks*, named from *Pyrrho* their Master, who would not allow one Proposition to be more probable than another; but professed that *all Things were equally uncertain*. Now all these Men (as an ingenious Author expresses it)



C. II. S. 7. *The right use of Reason.* 271

were rather to be called a *Sect of Liars* than *Philosophers*, and that censure is just for two Reasons (1.) because they determined concerning every Proposition that *it was uncertain*, and believed that as a certain Truth, while they professed *there was nothing certain*, and that nothing could be determined concerning Truth or Falshood; and thus their very Doctrine gave it self the Lie.

(2.) Because they judged and acted as other Men did in the common Affairs <sup>of Life</sup>; they would neither run into Fire nor Water, though they profess'd Ignorance and Uncertainty, whether the one would burn, or the other drown <sup>them.</sup> *Yair*  
*Confuted*  
*1*  
*Reptation*

There have been some in all Ages, who have too much affected this Humour, who dispute against every thing, under Pretence that *Truth has no certain Mark to distinguish it*. Let us therefore enquire, *what is the general Criterion of Truth?* And in order to this, it is proper to consider what is the Reason why we assent to those Propositions, which contain the most certain and indubitable Truths, such as these,

*the whole is greater than a part ; two and three make five.*

The only Reason why we believe these Propositions to be true, is because the Ideas of the Subjects and Predicates appear with so much Clearness and Strength of Evidence to agree to each other, that the Mind cannot help discerning the Agreement, and cannot really doubt of the Truth of them, but is constrain'd to judge them true. So when we compare the Ideas of a *Circle* and a *Triangle*, or the Ideas of an *Oyster* and a *Butterfly*, we see such an evident Disagreement between them, that we are sure that *a Butterfly is not an Oyster* ; nor is a *Triangle a Circle*. There is nothing but the Evidence of the Agreement or Disagreement between two Ideas, that makes us affirm or deny the one of the other.

Now it will follow from hence, that *a clear and distinct Perception or full Evidence of the Agreement and Disagreement of our Ideas to one another, or to things, is a certain Criterion of Truth* : For since our Minds are of such a Make, that where the Evidence  
is

C. II. S. 7. *The right use of Reason.* 273

is exceeding plain and strong, we cannot withhold our Assent; we should then be necessarily expos'd to believe Falshood, if compleat Evidence should be found in any Propositions that are not true. But surely the God of perfect Wisdom, Truth and Goodness would never oblige his Creatures to be thus deceived; and therefore he would never have constituted us of such a Frame, as would render it naturally impossible to guard against Error.

Another Consequence is naturally derived from the former; and that is, that the only Reason why we fall into a Mistake is because we are impatient to form a Judgment of Things before we have a clear and evident Perception of their Agreement or Disagreement; and if we will make Haste to judge while our Ideas are obscure and confused, we shall plunge our selves into perpetual Errors.



## SECT. VIII.

*Of certain and doubtful Propositions,  
of Knowledge and Opinion.*

SINCE we have found that *Evidence* is the great *Criterion* and the sure Mark of Truth; this leads us directly to consider Propositions according to their *Evidence*; and here we must take Notice both of the *different Degrees* of Evidence, and the *different Kinds* of it.

Propositions according to their *different Degrees of Evidence* are distinguish'd into *certain* and *doubtful* \*.

Where the Evidence of the Agreement or Disagreement of the Ideas is

---

\* It may be objected, that this *Certainty* and *Uncertainty* being only in the Mind, the Division belongs to Propositions rather according to the Degrees of our *Assent*, than the Degrees of *Evidence*. But it may well be answered, that the *Evidence* here intended is that which appears so to the Mind, and not the mere *Evidence in the nature of Things*: Besides (as we shall shew immediately) the *Degree of Assent* ought to be exactly proportionable to the *degree of Evidence*; and therefore the Difference is not great, whether Propositions be call'd *certain* or *uncertain*, according to the Measure of *Evidence*, or of *Assent*.

*Doubting the Nature of it*

C. II. S. 8. *The right use of Reason.* 275

so strong and plain, that we cannot forbid nor delay our Assent; the Proposition is call'd *certain*, as *every Circle hath a Center; the World did not create it self. An Assent to such Propositions is honour'd with the Name of Knowledge.*

But when there is any Obscurity upon the Agreement or Disagreement of the Ideas, so that the Mind does not clearly perceive it, and is not compelled to assent or dissent, then the Proposition, in a proper and philosophical Sense, is called *doubtful or uncertain*; as *the Planets are inhabited; the Souls of Brutes are mere Matter; the World will not stand a thousand Years longer; Dido built the City of Carthage, &c.* Such *uncertain Propositions* are called *Opinions.*

When we consider our selves as *Philosophers or Searchers of Truth*, it would be well if we always suspended a full Judgment or Determination about any thing, and made farther Inquiries, where this plain and perfect Evidence is wanting; but we are so prone of our selves to judge without full Evidence, and in some Cases the Necessity of

N 6

Action

See on *Doubting*

*Dr. Johnson's Dictionary ad Voc.*

Action in the Affairs of Life constrains us to judge and determine upon a tolerable Degree of Evidence, that we vulgarly call those Propositions *certain*, where we have but very little Room or Reason to doubt of them, tho' the Evidence be not compleat and resistless.

*Certainty* according to the Schools is distinguish'd into *Objective* and *Subjective*. *Objective Certainty* is when the Proposition is certainly true in it self; and *Subjective*, when we are certain of the Truth of it. The one is in *Things*, the other is in our *Minds*.

But let it be observed here, that every Proposition in it self is *certainly true* or *certainly false*. For though *Doubtfulness* or *Uncertainty* seems to be a Medium between certain Truth and certain Falshood in our Minds, yet there is no such Medium in Things themselves; no, not even in future Events: for now at this time it is certain in it self, that *Midsummer-Day seven Tears hence will be serene*, or it is certain it *will be cloudy*, though we are uncertain and utterly ignorant what sort of Day it



it will be: This Certainty of distant Futurities is known to God only.

*Uncertain or doubtful Propositions, i. e. Opinions, are distinguish'd into probable or improbable.*

When the Evidence of any Proposition is greater than the Evidence of the contrary, then it is a *probable Opinion*: Where the Evidence and Arguments are stronger on the contrary Side, we call it *improbable*. But while the Arguments on either Side seem to be equally strong, and the Evidence *for* and *against* any Proposition appears equal to the Mind, then in *common Language* we call it a *doubtful Matter*. We also call it a *dubious* or *doubtful Proposition* when there are no Arguments on either Side, as *next Christmas-Day will be a very sharp Frost*. And in general all these Propositions are *doubtful*, wherein we can perceive no sufficient Marks or Evidences of *Truth* or *Falshood*. In such a Case the Mind which is searching for Truth ought to remain in a State of *Doubt* and *Suspence*, until superior Evidence on one Side or the other incline the Balance of the Judgment, and determine

termine the *Probability* or *Certainty* to one Side.

A great many Propositions which we generally believe or disbelieve in Human Affairs or in the Sciences have very various Degrees of Evidence, which yet arise not to compleat *Certainty* either of Truth or Falshood. Thus it comes to pass that there are such various and almost infinite Degrees of *Probability* and *Improbability*. To a *weak Probability* we should give a *weak Assent*; and a *stronger Assent* is due where the *Evidence is greater*, and the Matter more *probable*. If we *proportion our Assent in all Things to the Degree of Evidence*, we do the utmost that Human Nature is capable of in a rational Way to secure it self from Error.

---

#### SECT. IX.

*Of Sense, Consciousness, Intelligence, Reason, Faith and Inspiration.*

AFTER we have considered the *Evidence* of Propositions in the *various Degrees* of it, we come to survey

vey the *several Kinds of Evidence*, or the different Ways whereby Truth is let into the Mind, and which produce accordingly several kinds of Knowledge. We shall distribute them into these six (*viz.*) *Sense, Consciousness, Intelligence, Reason, Faith, and Inspiration*, and then distinguish the Propositions which are derived from them.

I. The *Evidence of Sense* is when we frame a Proposition according to the Dictate of any of our Senses; so we judge that *Grass is green*; that a *Trumpet gives a pleasant Sound*; the *Fire burns Wood*; *Water is soft*; and *Iron is hard*; for we have seen, heard or felt all these. 'Tis upon this *Evidence of Sense* that we know and believe the daily Occurrences in human Life; and almost all the Histories of Mankind that are written by Eye or Ear-Witnesses are built upon this Principle.

Under the Evidence of Sense we don't only include that Knowledge which is derived to us by our outward Senses of *Hearing, Seeing, Feeling, Tasting* and *Smelling*, but that also which is derived  
from



from the inward Sensations and Appetites of *Hunger, Thirst, Ease, Pleasure, Pain, Weariness, Rest, &c.* and all those Things which belong to the Body ; as *Hunger is a painful Appetite, Light is pleasant : Rest is sweet to the weary Limbs.*

Propositions which are built on this Evidence may be named *sensible Propositions*, or the *Dictates of Sense*.

II. As we learn what belongs to the Body by the *Evidence of Sense*, so we learn what belongs to the Soul by an *inward Consciousness*, which may be called a sort of internal Feeling, or spiritual Sensation of what passes in the Mind ; as, *I think before I speak ; I desire large Knowledge ; I suspect my own Practice ; I study'd hard to Day ; my Conscience bears Witness of my Sincerity ; my Soul hates vain Thoughts ; Fear is an uneasy Passion ; long Meditation on one Thing is tiresome.*

Thus it appears that we obtain the Knowledge of a Multitude of *Propositions*, as well as of *single Ideas* by those two Principles of *Sensation* and *Reflection* : One of them is a sort of *Consciousness*

C. II. S. 9. *The right use of Reason.* 281  
*sciousness* of what affects the Body,  
and the other is a *Consciousness* of what  
passes in the Mind.

Propositions which are built on this  
*internal Consciousness*, have yet no par-  
ticular or distinguishing Name assign'd  
to them.

III. *Intelligence* relates chiefly to  
those abstracted Propositions which car-  
ry their own Evidence with them, and  
admit no Doubt about them. Our Per-  
ception of this *Self-Evidence* in any  
Proposition is call'd *Intelligence*. 'Tis  
our Knowledge of those first Principles  
of Truth, which are (as it were) wrought  
into the very Nature and Make of our  
Minds: They are so evident in themselves  
to every Man who attends to them, that  
they need no Proof. 'Tis the Preroga-  
tive and peculiar Excellence of these  
Propositions, that they can scarce ever  
be prov'd or deny'd: They cannot easi-  
ly be *prov'd*, because there is nothing  
supposed to be more clear or certain,  
from which an Argument may be drawn  
to prove them. They cannot well be  
*deny'd*, because their own Evidence is so  
bright and convincing that as soon as  
I the

the Terms are understood, the Mind necessarily assents: Such are these, *Whatsoever acteth hath a Being; Nothing has no Properties; a Part is less than the Whole; Nothing can be the Cause of itself.*

These Propositions are called *Axioms*, or *Maxims*, or *first Principles*; these are the very Foundations of all improved Knowledge and Reasonings, and on this Account these have been thought to be *innate Propositions*, or *Truths* born with us.

Some suppose that a great Part of the Knowledge of Angels and human Souls in the separate State is obtained in this Manner (*viz.*) by such an immediate View of Things in their own Nature, which is called *Intuition*.

IV. *Reasoning* is the next sort of Evidence, and that is when one Truth is inferr'd or drawn from others by natural and just Methods of Argument; as, if there be much Light at Midnight, I infer, *it proceeds from the Moon*, because the Sun is under the Earth. If I see a Cottage in a Forest, I conclude, *some Man has been there and built it.*

Or



Or when I survey the Heavens and Earth, this gives Evidence to my Reason, that *there is a God who made them.*

The Propositions which I believe upon this kind of Evidence, are called *Conclusions*, or *rational Truths*, and the Knowledge that we gain this Way is properly called *Science*.

Yet let it be noted, that the Word *Science* is usually applied to a whole Body of Observations or Propositions which learned Men have formed concerning any Subject of *Speculation*, deriving one Truth from another by a Train of Arguments. If this Knowledge chiefly directs our *Practice*, it is usually called an *Art*: And this is the most remarkable Distinction between an *Art* and a *Science*, (*viz.*) the one refers chiefly to *Practice*, the other to *Speculation*. *Natural Philosophy* or *Physics*, and *Ontology* are *Sciences*; *Logick* and *Rhetorick* are called *Arts*; but *Mathematics* include both *Art* and *Science*; for they have much of *Speculation*, and much of *Practice* in them.

V. When we derive the Evidence of any Proposition from the *Testimony* of others, it is called the *Evidence of Faith*; and this is a large Part of our Knowledge. Ten thousand Things there are which we believe merely upon the Authority or Credit of those who have spoken or written of them. 'Tis by this Evidence that we know *there is such a Country as China*, and *there was such a Man as Cicero who dwelt in Rome*. 'Tis by this that most of the Transactions in human Life are managed: We know our Parents and our Kindred by this Means, we know the Persons and Laws of our present Governors, as well as Things that are at a vast Distance from us in foreign Nations, or in antient Ages.

According as the Persons that inform us of any thing are many or few, are more or less wise, and faithful, and credible, so our *Faith* is more or less firm or wavering, and the *Proposition believed* is either certain or doubtful; but in Matters of *Faith* an exceeding great Probability is called a *Moral Certainty*.

W. N.

Faith

C.II.S.9. *The right use of Reason.* 285

Faith is generally distinguished into *Divine* and *Human*, not with Regard to the *Propositions* that are believed, but with Regard to the *Testimony* upon which we believe them. When God reveals any thing to us, this gives us the Evidence of *Divine Faith*; but what Man only acquaints us with, produces a *human Faith* in us; the one being built upon the Word of Man, arises but to *moral Certainty*; but the other, being founded on the Word of God, arises to an *absolute and infallible Assurance*, so far as we understand the Meaning of his Word.

Propositions which we believe upon the Evidence of *human Testimony* are called *Narratives, Relations, Reports, Historical Observations, &c.* but such as are built on *Divine Testimony* are termed *Matters of Revelation*; and if they are of great Importance in Religion, they are called *Articles of Faith*.

There are some Propositions, or Parts of Knowledge, which are said to be derived from *Observation* and *Experience*, that is, Experience in ourselves, and the Observations we have made on o-  
ther



ther Persons or Things; but these are made up of some of the former Springs of Knowledge joyn'd together (*viz.*) *Sense, Consciousness, Reason, Faith, &c.* and therefore are not reckoned a distinct Kind of Evidence.

VI. *Inspiration* is a sort of Evidence distinct from all the former, and that is, when such an overpowering Impression of any Proposition is made upon the Mind by God himself, that gives a convincing and indubitable Evidence of the Truth and Divinity of it: So were the *Prophets* and the *Apostles* inspired \*.

Sometimes God may have been pleased to make use of the outward Senses, or the inward Workings of the Imagination, of Dreams, Apparitions, Visions and Voices, of Reasoning, or perhaps human Narration, to convey Divine Truths to the Mind of the Prophet; but none of these would be sufficient to deserve the Name of Inspiration, with-

---

\* Note here, I speak chiefly of the highest Kind of Inspiration.

C.II.S.9. *The right use of Reason.* 287  
out a superior divine Light and Power attending them.

This sort of *Evidence* is also very distinct from what we usually call *Divine Faith*; for every common Christian exercises *Divine Faith* when he believes any Proposition which God has revealed in the Bible upon this Account, because *God has said it*, tho' it was by a Train of Reasonings that he was led to believe that *this is the Word of God*: Whereas in the Case of *Inspiration*, the Prophet not only exercises *Divine Faith* in believing what God reveals, but he is under a superior heavenly Impression, Light and Evidence, whereby he is assured that God reveals it.

Tho' Persons might be assured of their own Inspiration by some *peculiar and inexpressible Consciousness* of this Divine Impression and Evidence in their own Spirits, yet it is hard to make out this Inspiration to others, and to convince them of it, except by some antecedent or consequent Prophecies or Miracles, or some publick Appearances more than human.

The

The Propositions which are attained by this sort of Evidence are called *Inspir'd Truths*. This is *Divine Revelation* at first hand, and the Dictates of God in an immediate manner, of which Theological Writers discourse at large; but since it belongs only to a few Favourites of Heaven to be inspir'd, and not the Bulk of Mankind, it is not necessary to speak more of it in a Treatise of Logick, which is designed for the general Improvement of human Reason.

The various Kinds of Evidence upon which we believe any Proposition, afford us these three *Remarks*.

I. *Remark*. The same Proposition may be known to us by different Kinds of Evidence: That *the whole is bigger than a part*, is known by our *Senses*, and 'tis known by the *Self-Evidence of the thing* to our Mind. That *God created the Heavens and the Earth* is known to us by *Reason*, and is known also by *Divine Testimony* or *Faith*.

II<sup>d</sup> *Remark*. Among these various Kinds of Evidence, some are generally stronger than others in their own Nature,



C. II. S. 9. *The right use of Reason.* 289

ture; and give a better Ground for Certainty. *Inward Consciousness* and *Intelligence*, as well as *Divine Faith* and *Inspiration*, usually carry much more Force with them than *Sense* or *Human Faith*, which are often fallible; though there are Instances wherein *Human Faith*, *Sense* and *Reasoning* lay a Foundation also for compleat Assurance, and leave no room for Doubt.

*Reason* in its own Nature would always lead us into the Truth in Matters within its Compass, if it were used aright; or it would require us to suspend our Judgment, where there is want of Evidence. But 'tis our *Sloth*, *Precipitancy*, *Sense*, *Passion*, and many other Things that lead our *Reason* astray in this degenerate and imperfect Estate: Hence it comes to pass that we are guilty of so many Errors in *Reasoning*, especially about Divine Things, because our *Reason* either is busy to enquire, and resolved to determine about Matters that are above our present Reach; or because we mingle many *Prejudices* and secret Influences of *Sense*, *Fancy*, *Passion*, *Inclination*, &c. with our Exercises of

O

*Reason,*

*Reason*, and judge and determine according to these irregular Influences.

*Divine Faith* would never admit of any Controversies or Doubtings, if we were but assured that God had spoken, and that we rightly understood his Meaning.

III<sup>d</sup> Remark. The greatest Evidence and Certainty of any Proposition does not depend upon the *Variety* of the Ways or Kinds of Evidence, whereby it is known, but rather upon the Strength and Degree of Evidence, and the Clearness of that Light in or by which it appears to the Mind. For a Proposition that is known only one Way may be much more certain, and have stronger Evidence than another that is suppos'd to be known many Ways. Therefore these Propositions, *Nothing has no Properties, Nothing can make it self*, which are known only by *Intelligence*, are much surer and truer than this Proposition, *The Rainbow has real and inherent Colours in it*, or than this, *the Sun rolls round the Earth*; though we seem to know both these last by our *Senses*, and by the common *Testimony of our Neigh-*

C. III. *The right use of Reason.* 291

*Neighbours.* So any Proposition that is clearly evident to our own *Consciousness* or *Divine Faith*, is much more certain to us than a thousand others that have only the Evidence of feeble and obscure *Sensations*, of mere *probable Reasonings* and doubtful *Arguments*, or the *Witness* of fallible *Men*, or even though all these should join together.



CHAP. III.

*The Springs of false Judgment,  
or the Doctrine of Prejudices.*

INTRODUCTION.



IN the End of the foregoing Chapter, we have survey'd the several *Sorts of Evidence*, on which we build our Assent to Propositions: these are indeed the general Grounds upon which we form our Judgments concerning Things. What remains in this *Second Part of Logick* is to point out the several *Springs and Causes of our Mistakes* in judging and



to lay down some *Rules* by which we should conduct our selves in passing a Judgment of every thing that is proposed to us.

I confess many Things which will be mentioned in these following Chapters might be as well referred to the *third Part of Logick*, where we shall treat of *Reasoning and Argument*; for most of our *false Judgments* seem to include a secret *bad Reasoning* in them; and while we shew the *Springs of Error*, and the *Rules of true Judgment*, we do at the same time discover which Arguments are fallacious, which Reasonings are weak, and which are just and strong. Yet since this is usually call'd a *judging ill*, or *judging well*, I think we may without any Impropriety treat of it here; and this will lay a surer Foundation for all Sorts of *Ratiocination and Argument*.

Rash Judgments are called *Prejudices*, and so are the Springs of them. This Word in common Life signifies an *ill Opinion which we have conceived of some other Person*, or some *Injury done to him*. But when we use the Word in Matters of Science, it signifies a *Judgment that is*  
3
formed

C. III. *The right use of Reason.* 293  
formed concerning any Person or Thing  
before sufficient Examination: and ge-  
nerally we suppose it to mean a *false*  
*Judgment or Mistake*: At least, 'tis  
an Opinion taken up without solid Rea-  
son for it, or an Assent given to a Pro-  
position before we have just Evidence  
of the Truth of it, tho' the thing it self  
may happen to be true.

Sometimes these rash Judgments are  
called *Prepossessions*, whereby is meant,  
that some particular Opinion has pos-  
sessed the Mind, and engaged the As-  
sent without sufficient Search or Evi-  
dence of the Truth of it.

There is a vast Variety of these  
*Prejudices* and *Prepossessions* which at-  
tend Mankind in every Age and Con-  
dition of Life; they lay the Founda-  
tions of many an Error, and many an un-  
happy Practice, both in the Affairs of  
Religion, and in our civil Concern-  
ments, as well as in Matters of Learn-  
ing. 'Tis necessary for a Man who pur-  
sues Truth to enquire into these *Springs*  
*of Error*, that as far as possible he may  
rid himself of *old Prejudices*, and  
watch hourly against *new ones*.

The Number of them is so great, and they are so interwoven with each other, as well as with the Powers of Human Nature, that it is sometimes hard to distinguish them apart; yet for Method Sake we shall reduce them to these four general Heads, (*viz.*) Prejudices arising from *Things*, or from *Words*, from *ourselves*, or from *other Persons*; and after the Description of each *Prejudice*, we shall propose one or more Ways of curing it.

---

### SECT. I.

#### *Prejudices arising from Things.*

THE first Sort of Prejudices are those which arise from *the Things themselves about which we judge*. But here let it be observed that there is nothing in the *nature of Things* that will necessarily lead us into Error, if we do but use our Reason aright, and withhold our Judgment till there appear sufficient Evidence of Truth. But since we are so unhappily prone to take Advantage of every doubtful Appearance  
and



C. III. S. 1. *The right use of Reason.* 295

and Circumstance of Things to form a wrong Judgment, and plunge our selves into Mistake, therefore 'tis proper to consider what there is in the *Things themselves* that may occasion our Errors.

I. *The Obscurity of some Truths, and the Difficulty of searching them out*, is one Occasion of rash and mistaken Judgment.

Some Truths are *difficult* because they lye remote from the first Principles of Knowledge, and want a long Chain of Argument to come at them: such are many of the deep Things of *Algebra* and *Geometry*, and some of the Theorems and Problems of most Parts of the *Mathematicks*. Many Things also in *natural Philosophy* are dark and intricate upon this Account, because we cannot come at any certain Knowledge of them without the Labour of many and difficult, as well as chargeable Experiments.

There are other Truths which have great *Darkness* upon them, because we have no proper Means or *Mediums* to come at the Knowledge of them. Tho' in our Age we have found out many

of the deep Things of Nature by the Assistance of Glasses and other Instruments; yet we are not hitherto arrived at any sufficient Methods to discover the *Shape* of those little Particles of Matter which distinguish the various *Sapours*, *Odours* and *Colours* of Bodies; nor to find what sort of Atoms compose *Liquids* or *Solids*, and distinguish *Wood*, *Minerals*, *Metals*, *Glass*, *Stone*, &c. There is a *Darkness* also lies upon the Actions of the *intellectual* or *angelical* World; their Manners of Subsistence and Agency, the Power of Spirits to move Bodies, and the Union of our Souls with this animal Body of ours are much unknown to us on this Account.

Now in many of these Cases a great part of Mankind is not content to be entirely ignorant; but they rather choose to form rash and hasty Judgments, to guess at things without just Evidence, to believe something concerning them before they can know them, and thereby they fall into Error.

This sort of *Prejudice*, as well as most others, is cured by *Patience* and *Diligence in Inquiry* and *Reasoning*, and  
a *Suf-*

a *Suspension of Judgment* till we have attain'd some proper *Mediums* of Knowledge, and till we see sufficient Evidence of the Truth.

II. The *Appearance of Things in a Disguise* is another Spring of *Prejudice* or rash Judgment. The Outside of Things which first strikes us is oftentimes different from their inward Nature, and we are tempted to judge suddenly according to outward Appearances. If a *Picture* is daub'd with many bright and glaring Colours, the vulgar Eye admires it as an excellent Piece; whereas the same Person judges very contemptuously of some admirable Design sketch'd out only with a black Pencil on a coarse Paper, though by the Hand of *Raphael*. So the Scholar spies the Name of a new Book in a publick News-Paper, he is charmed with the Title, he purchases, he reads with huge Expectations, and finds it all Trash and Impertinence: This is a Prejudice deriv'd from the *Appearance*; we are too ready to judge that Volume valuable which had so good a Frontispiece. The large Heap of *Encomiums* and swelling

O 5

Words



Words of Assurance that are bestow'd on *Quack Medicines* in publick Advertisements tempt many a Reader to judge them infallible, and to use the Pills or the Plaister with vast Hope and frequent Disappointment.

We are tempted to form our Judgment of *Persons* as well as *Things* by these outward *Appearances*. Where there is *Wealth, Equipage* and *Splendor* we are ready to call that *Man happy*, but we see not the vexing Disquietudes of his Soul; And when we spy a Person in *ragged Garments*, we form a despicable Opinion of him too suddenly, we can hardly think him either *happy* or *wise*, our Judgment is so strangely bias'd by outward and sensible Things. 'Twas through the Power of this Prejudice that the *Jews* rejected our blessed Saviour; they could not suffer themselves to believe that the Man who appeared as the *Son of a Carpenter* was also the *Son of God*. And because *St. Paul* was of a little Stature, a mean Presence, and his Voice contemptible, some of the *Corinthians* were tempted to doubt whether he were inspired or no.

This

C.III.S.1. *The right use of Reason.* 299

This *Prejudice* is cur'd by a longer *Acquaintance with the World*, and a just *Observation that Things are sometimes better and sometimes worse than they appear to be.* We ought therefore to restrain our excessive Forwardness to form our Opinion of Persons or Things before we have Opportunity to search into them more perfectly. Remember that a *grey Beard does not make a Philosopher*; *all is not Gold that glisters*; and a *rough Diamond may be worth an immense Sum.*

III. A Mixture of different Qualities in the same thing is another Temptation to judge amiss. We are ready to be carry'd away by that Quality which strikes the first or the strongest Impressions upon us, and we judge of the whole Object according to that Quality, regardless of all the rest; or sometimes we colour over all the other Qualities with that one Tincture, whether it be bad or good.

When we have just Reason to admire a *Man* for his *Virtues*, we are sometimes inclin'd not only to neglect his *Weaknesses*, but even to put a good Co-

lour upon them, and to think them amiable. When we read a *Book* that has many excellent Truths in it and Divine Sentiments, we are tempted to approve not only that whole Book, but even all the Writings of that Author. When a *Poet*, an *Orator* or a *Painter* has perform'd admirably in several illustrious Pieces, we sometimes also admire his very Errors, we mistake his Blunders for Beauties, and are so ignorantly fond as to copy after them.

'Tis this Prejudice that has render'd so many great Scholars perfect *Bigots*, and inclin'd them to defend *Homer* or *Horace*, *Livy* or *Cicero*, in all their Mistakes, and vindicate all the Follies of their favourite Author. 'Tis this that tempts some great Writers to support the Sayings of almost all the *ancient Fathers of the Church*, and admire them even in their very *Reveries*.

On the other Hand if an Author has profess'd *Heretical* Sentiments in Religion, we throw our Scorn upon every thing he writes, we despise even his *critical* or *mathematical* Learning, and will hardly allow him common Sense.



C. III. S. I. *The right use of Reason.* 301

Sense. If a *Poem* has some Blemishes in it, there is a Set of false Critics who decry it universally, and will allow no Beauties there.

This sort of *Prejudice* is relieved by learning to distinguish things well, and not to *judge in the Lump*. There is scarce any thing in the World of Nature or Art, in the World of Morality or Religion, that is perfectly uniform. There is a *Mixture* of Wisdom and Folly, Vice and Virtue, Good and Evil, both in Men and Things. We should remember that some Persons have *great Wit* and *little Judgment*; others are judicious, but not witty. Some are *good humour'd without Compliment*; others have all the Formalities of Complaisance, but no good Humour. We ought to know that one Man may be *vicious and learned*, while another has *Virtue without Learning*: That many a Man *thinks* admirably *well* who has a *poor Utterance*; while others have a charming Manner of Speech, but their Thoughts are trifling and impertinent. Some are *good Neighbours*, and courteous and charitable toward Men who have *no Piety toward*

toward God; others are truly religious, but of a morose natural Temper. Some *excellent Sayings* are found in very *silly Books*, and some *silly Thoughts* appear in Books of Value. We should neither *praise nor dispraise by wholesale*, but separate the Good from the Evil, and judge of them apart: The Accuracy of a good Judgment consists much in making such Distinctions.

Yet let it be noted too, that in common Discourse we usually denominate Persons and Things according to the major Part of their Character. He is to be called a *wise Man* who has but few Follies: He is a *good Philosopher* who knows much of Nature, and for the most Part reasons well in Matters of human Science: And that *Book* should be esteemed *well written*, which has much more of good Sense in it than it has of Impertinence.

IV. Tho' a Thing be uniform in its own Nature, yet the *different Lights in which it may be placed, and the different Views in which it appears to us*, will be ready to excite in us mistaken Judgments concerning it. Let an erect  
Cone

C.III.S.1. *The right use of Reason.* 303

*Cone* be placed in a horizontal Plane, at a great Distance from the Eye, and it appears a plain *Triangle*; but we shall judge that very *Cone* to be nothing but a *flat Circle*, if its *Base* be obverted towards us. Set a *common round Plate* a little *obliquely* before our Eye, and we shall think it an *oval Figure*; but if the very *Edge* of it be turned toward us, we shall take it for a *strait Line*: So when we view the several Folds of a *changeable Silk*, we pronounce this Part *red*, and that *yellow*, because of its different Position to the Light, tho' the Silk laid smooth in one Light, appears all of one Colour.

When we survey the Miseries of Mankind, and think of the Sorrows of Millions, both on Earth and in Hell, the *Divine Government* has a *terrible Aspect*, and we may be tempted to think hardly even of God himself: But if we view the Profusion of his Bounty and Grace amongst his Creatures on Earth, or the happy Spirits in Heaven, we shall have so *exalted* an *Idea of his Goodness* as to forget his Vengeance. Some Men dwell entirely upon the Promises  
of



of his Gospel, and think him all *Mercy*; Others, under a melancholy Frame, dwell upon his Terrors and his Threatnings, and are overwhelmed with the Thought of his *Severity* and *Vengeance*, as tho' there were no Mercy in him.

The true Method of delivering ourselves from this *Prejudice*, is to compare all the various Appearances of the same thing with one another, and let each of them have its full Weight in the Balance of our Judgment, before we fully determine our Opinion. 'Twas by this Means that the modern Astronomers came to find out that the Planet *Saturn* hath a *flat broad Circle round its Globe*, by observing its different Appearances, as a *narrow*, or a *broader Oval*, or as it sometimes seems to be a *strait Line*, in the different Parts of its twenty nine Years Revolution through the *Ecliptic*. And if we take the same just and religious Survey of the *great and blessed God* in all the Discoveries of his *Vengeance* and his *Mercy*, we shall at last conclude him to be both *just* and *good*.

V. The

C.III. S.1. *The right use of Reason.* 305

V. The *casual Association* of many of our *Ideas* becomes the Spring of another Prejudice or rash Judgment, to which we are sometimes expos'd. If in our younger Years we have taken *Medicines* that have been *nauseous*, when any Medicine whatsoever is afterward propos'd to us under Sickness, we immediately judge it *nauseous*: Our Fancy has so closely joyn'd these *Ideas* together, that we know not how to separate them: Then the Stomach feels the Disgust, and perhaps refuses the only Drug that can preserve Life. So a Child who has been let Blood joins the *Ideas* of *Pain* and the *Surgeon* together, and he hates the Sight of the *Surgeon*, because he thinks of his *Pain*: Or if he has drunk a *bitter Potion*, he conceives a bitter Idea of the *Cup* which held it, and will drink nothing out of that *Cup*.

'Tis for the same Reason that the Bulk of the common People are so superstitiously fond of the *Psalms* translated by *Hopkins* and *Sternhold*, and think them sacred and divine, because they have been now for more than an hundred Years

Years bound up in the same Covers with our Bibles.

The best Relief against this *Prejudice of Association* is to consider, whether there be any natural and necessary Connection between those Ideas which *Fancy, Custom, or Chance* hath thus joyn'd together: And if *Nature* has not joyn'd them, let our Judgment correct the Folly of our *Imagination*, and separate these Ideas again.

---

## SECT. II.

### *Prejudices arising from Words.*

OUR Ideas and Words are so linkt together, that while we judge of *Things* according to *Words*, we are led into several Mistakes. These may be distributed under two general Heads, (*viz.*) Such as arise from *single Words or Phrases*, or such as arise from *Words joyn'd in Speech, and composing a Discourse*.

I. The most eminent and remarkable Errors of the first Kind, are these three,  
(1.) When



C.III.S.2. *The right use of Reason.* 307

(1.) When our Words are *insignificant*, and have no Ideas; as when the mystical Divines talk of the *Prayer of Silence*, the *supernatural and passive Night of the Soul*, the *Vacuity of Powers*, the *Suspension of all Thoughts*: Or (2.) When our Words are *equivocal*, and signify two or more Ideas, as the Words *Law*, *Light*, *Flesh*, *Spirit*, *Righteousness*, and many other Terms in Scripture: Or (3.) When two or three Words are *synonymous*, and signify one Idea, as *Regeneration* and *new Creation* in the new Testament; both which mean only a *Change of Heart from Sin to Holiness*; or as the *Elect* and *Chosen* are two Titles of the same Man.

These kinds of Phrases are the Occasions of various Mistakes; but none so unhappy as those in *Theology*: For both *Words without Ideas*, as well as *synonymous* and *equivocal Words*, have been us'd and abus'd by the Humours, Passions, Interests, or by the real Ignorance and Weakness of Men to beget terrible Contests among Christians.

But

But to relieve us under all those Dangers, and to remove these *sorts of Prejudices* which arise from *single Words* or *Phrases*, I must remit the Reader to *Part I. Chap. 4.* where I have treated about *Words*, and to those *Directions* which I have given concerning the *Definition of Names, Part I. Chap. 6. Sect. 3<sup>d</sup>.*

II. There is another sort of false Judgments or Mistakes which we are expos'd to by *Words*; and that is, when they are *joyn'd in Speech, and compose a Discourse*; and here we are in Danger two Ways.

The one is, when a Man writes good Sense, or speaks much to the Purpose, but he has not a happy and engaging Manner of Expression. Perhaps he uses coarse and vulgar Words, or old, obsolete, and unfashionable Language, or Terms and Phrases that are foreign, latiniz'd, scholastick, very uncommon and hard to be understood: And this is still worse, if his Sentences are long and intricate, or the Sound of them harsh and grating to the Ear. All these indeed are *Defects in Style*, and lead  
some

some nice and unthinking Hearers or Readers into an ill Opinion of all that such a Person speaks or writes. Many an excellent Discourse of our Forefathers has had abundance of Contempt cast upon it by our modern Pretenders to Sense, for want of their distinguishing between the *Language* and the *Ideas*.

On the other Hand, when a *Man of Eloquence* speaks or writes upon any Subject, we are too ready to run into his Sentiments, being sweetly and insensibly drawn by the Smoothness of his Harangue, and the pathetic Power of his Language. *Rhetorick* will varnish every *Error* that it shall appear in the Dress of *Truth*, and put such Ornaments upon *Vice* as to make it look like *Virtue*: It is an Art of wondrous and extensive Influence; it often conceals, obscures or overwhelms the Truth, and places sometimes a gross Falshood in a most alluring Light. The Decency of Action, the Musick of the Voice, the Harmony of the Periods, the Beauty of the Stile, and all the engaging Airs of the Speaker, have often charm'd the  
Hearers



Hearers into Error, and persuaded them to approve whatsoever is proposed in so agreeable a Manner. A large Assembly stands expos'd at once to the Power of these Prejudices, and imbibes them all. So *Cicero* and *Demosthenes* made the *Romans* and the *Athenians* believe almost whatsoever they pleased.

The best Defence against both these Dangers is to learn the Skill (as much as possible) of *separating our Thoughts and Ideas from Words and Phrases*, to judge of things in their own Natures, and in their natural or just Relation to one another, abstracted from the Use of Language, and to maintain a steady and obstinate Resolution to hearken to nothing but Truth, in whatsoever Style or Dress it appears.

Then we shall hear a Sermon of pious and just Sentiments with Esteem and Reverence, tho' the Preacher has but an unpolish'd Style, and many Defects in the Manner of his Delivery. Then we shall neglect and disregard all the flattering Insinuations whereby the *Ora-tor* would make Way for his own Sentiments to take Possession of our Souls,

if

C.III. S.3. *The right use of Reason.* 311

if he has not solid and instructive Sense equal to his Language. *Oratory* is a happy Talent when it is rightly imploy'd to excite the Passions to the Practice of Virtue and Piety; but to speak properly, this *Art* has nothing to do in the *Search after Truth*.

---

S E C T. III.

*Prejudices arising from ourselves.*

**N**EITHER *Words* nor *Things* would so often lead us astray from Truth, if we had not within ourselves such Springs of Error as these that follow.

I. Many Errors are derived from our *Weakness of Reason*, and *Incapacity to judge of Things in our infant State*. These are called the *Prejudices of Infancy*. We frame early Mistakes about the common Objects which surround us, and the common Affairs of Life: We fancy *the Nurse is our best Friend*, because Children receive from their Nurses their Food and other Conveniencies

\*

of

of Life. We judge that *Books are very unpleasant Things*, because perhaps we have been driven to them by the Scourge. We judge also that the *Skie touches the distant Hills*, because we cannot inform ourselves better in Childhood. We believe the *Stars are not risen till the Sun is set*, because we never see them by Day. But some of these Errors may seem to be derived from the next Spring.

The Way to cure the *Prejudices of Infancy* is to distinguish, as far as we can, which are those Opinions which we fram'd in perfect Childhood, to remember that at that Time our Reason was incapable of forming a right Judgment, and to bring these Propositions again to be examined at the Bar of maturer Reason.

II. *Our Senses* give us many a false Information of Things, and tempt us to judge amiss. This is called the *Prejudice of Sense*, as when we suppose the *Sun and Moon to be flat Bodies*, and to be but *a few Inches broad*, because they appear so to the Eye. Sense inclines us to judge that *Air has no Weight*, because



C.III.S.3. *The right use of Reason.* 313

because we don't feel it press heavy upon us; And we judge also by our Senses that *Cold* and *Heat*, *Sweet* and *Sour*, *Red* and *Blue*, &c. are such real Properties in the Objects themselves, and exactly like those Sensations which they excite in us.

*Note*, Those Mistakes of this Sort which all Mankind drop and lose in their advancing Age are call'd meer *Prejudices of Infancy*, but those which abide with the vulgar Part of the World, and generally with all Men, till Learning and Philosophy cure them, more properly retain the Name of *Prejudices of Sense*.

These *Prejudices* are to be removed several Ways. (1.) By the Assistance of one Sense we cure the Mistakes of another, as when a *Stick thrust into the Water seems crooked*, we are prevented from judging it to be really so in it self, for when we take it out of the *Water*, both our Sight and our Feeling agree and determine it to be strait. (2.) The Exercise of our Reason and an Application to Mathematical and Philosophical Studies cures many other *Prejudices of Sense*, both with Relation to the

P

*heavenly*

*heavenly* and *earthly* Bodies. (3.) We should remember that our Senses have often deceived us in various Instances, that they give but a confus'd and imperfect Representation of things in many Cases, that they often represent falsely those very Objects to which they seem to be suited, such as the *Shape, Motion, Size* and *Situation* of gross Bodies, if they are but placed at a Distance from us; And as for the minute Particles of which Bodies are composed, our Senses cannot distinguish them. (4.) We should remember also that one prime and original Design of our *Senses* is to inform us what various Relations the Bodies that are round about us bear to our own animal Body, and to give us Notice what is pleasant and useful, or what is painful and injurious to us; but they are not sufficient of themselves to lead us into a Philosophical Acquaintance with the inward Nature of Things. It must be confess'd it is by the Assistance of the *Eye* and the *Ear* especially (which are call'd the *Senses of Discipline*) that our Minds are furnish'd with various Parts of Knowledge, by reading, hearing and observing

C. III. S. 3. *The right use of Reason.* 315

serving things Divine and Humane; yet *Reason* ought always to accompany the Exercise of our *Senses* whenever we would form a just Judgment of Things proposed to our Enquiry.

Here it is proper to observe also, that as the *Weakness of Reason* in our *Infancy*, and the *Dictates of our Senses* sometimes in *advancing Years*, lead the wiser part of Mankind astray from Truth; so the meaner Parts of our Species, Persons whose Genius is very low, whose Judgment is always weak, who are ever indulging the *Dictates of Sense and Humour*, are but Children of a larger Size: they stand expos'd to everlasting Mistakes in Life, and live and die in the midst of *Prejudices*.

III. *Imagination* is another fruitful Spring of *false Judgments*. Our *Imagination* is nothing else but the various Appearances of our sensible Ideas in the Brain, where the Soul frequently works in uniting, disjoining, multiplying, magnifying, diminishing and altering the several Shapes, Colours, Sounds, Motions, Words and Things that have been communicated to us by the out-



ward Organs of Sense. 'Tis no Wonder therefore if *Fancy* lead us into many Mistakes, for 'tis but *Sense at second Hand*. Whatever is strongly imprest upon the *Imagination* some Persons believe to be true. Some will choose a particular *Number in a Lottery*, or lay a large Wager on a *single Chance of a Dye*, and doubt not of Success, because their *Fancy* feels so powerful an Impression, and assures them it will be prosperous. A thousand *pretended Prophecies* and *Inspirations*, and all the *Freaks of Enthusiasm* have been derived from this Spring. *Dreams* are nothing else but the Deceptions of *Fancy*: a *Delirium* is but a short Wildness of the *Imagination*; and a settled Irregularity of *Fancy* is *Distraction* and *Madness*.

One way to gain a Victory over this unruly Faculty, is to set a Watch upon it perpetually, and to bridle it in all its Extravagances; never to believe any thing merely because *Fancy* dictates it, any more than I would believe a *Midnight Dream*, nor to trust *Fancy* any farther than it is attended with *severe Reason*. 'Tis a very useful and entertaining

C. III.S. 3. *The right use of Reason.* 317

aining Power of Human Nature in Matters of *Illustration, Persuasion, Oratory, Poesy, Wit, Conversation, &c.* but in the calm Enquiry after Truth and final Judgment of Things, *Fancy* should retire, and stand aside.

Another Method of Deliverance from these *Prejudices of Fancy*, is to compare the *Ideas* that arise in our *Imaginations* with the *real Nature of Things*, as often as we have Occasion to judge concerning them; and let calm and sedate *Reason* govern and determine our Opinions, though *Fancy* should shew never so great a Reluctance. *Fancy* is the inferior Faculty, and it ought to obey.

IV. The *various Passions or Affections of the Mind* are numerous and endless Springs of *Prejudice*. They disguise every Object they converse with, and put their own Colours upon it, and thus lead the Judgment astray from Truth. 'Tis *Love* that makes the Mother think her own Child the fairest, and will sometimes persuade us that a *Blemish is a Beauty*. *Hope* and *Desire* make an Hour of Delay seem as long as two or three

P 3

Hours;

Hours; *Hope* inclines us to think there is nothing too difficult to be attempted; *Despair* tells us that a brave Attempt is mere Rashness, and that every Difficulty is unsurmountable. *Fear* makes us imagine that a Bush shaken with the Wind has some savage Beast in it, and multiplies the Dangers that attend our Path: But still there is a more unhappy Effect of *Fear* when it keeps Millions of Souls in Slavery to the Errors of an established Religion: What could persuade the wise Men and Philosophers of a *Po-pish* Country to believe the gross Absurdities of the *Roman Church*, but the *Fear of Torture or Death*, the *Galleys* or the *Inquisition*? *Sorrow and Melancholy* tempt us to think our Circumstances much more dismal than they are, that we may have some Excuse for Mourning: and *Envy* represents the Condition of our Neighbour better than it is, that there might be some Pretence for her own Vexation and Uneasiness. *Anger and Wrath and Revenge* and all those hateful Passions excite in us far worse Ideas of Men than they deserve, and persuade us to believe all that is  
ill



C. III. S. 3. *The right use of Reason.* 319

ill of them. A Detail of the evil Influence of the *Affections of the Mind* upon our Judgment would make a large Volume.

The Cure of these *Prejudices* is attain'd by a constant Jealousy of our selves, and Watchfulness over our *Passions*, that they may never interpose when we are called to pass a Judgment of any thing: And when our *Affections* are warmly engaged, let us abstain from judging. It would be also of great Use to us to form our deliberate Judgments of Persons and Things in the calmest and serenest Hours of Life, when the *Passions of Nature* are all silent, and the Mind enjoys its most perfect Composure: And these Judgments so formed should be treasur'd up in the Mind, that we might have Recourse to them in Hours of Need.

V. The *Fondness we have for SELF*, and the *Relation which other Persons and Things have to our Selves*, furnish us with another long Rank of *Prejudices*. This indeed might be reduced to the *Passion of Self-Love*, but 'tis so copious an Head that I chose to name

it as a distinct Spring of false Judgments. We are generally ready to fancy every thing of *our own* has something peculiarly valuable in it, when indeed there is no other Reason, but because it is *our own*. Were we born amongst the Gardens of *Italy*, the Rocks of *Switzerland*, or the *Ice* and *Snows* of *Russia* and *Sweden*, still we should imagine peculiar Excellencies in our Native Land. We conceive a good Idea of the *Town* and *Village* where we first breathed, and think the better of a Man for being born near us. We entertain the best Opinion of the Persons of *our own Party*, and easily believe evil Reports of Persons of a *different Sect or Faction*. Our *own Sex*, *our Kindred*, *our Houses*, and *our very Names* seem to have something good and desirable in them. We are ready to mingle all these with *our selves*, and cannot bear to have others think meanly of them.

So good an Opinion have we of *our own Sentiments and Practices*, that it is very difficult to believe what a Re-prover says of our Conduct; and we are as ready to assent to all the Language  
of

C.III.S.3. *The right use of Reason.* 321  
of Flattery. We set up *our own Opinions* in Religion and Philosophy as the Tests of *Orthodoxy* and *Truth*; and we are prone to judge every Practice of other Men either a *Duty* or a *Crime* which we think would be a *Crime* or a *Duty to us*, though their Circumstances are vastly different from our own. This Humour prevails sometimes to such a Degree that we would make *our own Taste* and *Inclination* the Standard by which to judge of every Dish of Meat that is set upon the Table, every Book in a Library, every Employment, Study and Business of Life, as well as every Recreation.

'Tis from this evil Principle of *setting up self for a Model what other Men ought to be*, that the *Antichristian Spirit of Imposition* and *Persecution* had its Original: though there is no more Reason for it than there was for the Practice of that Tyrant, who having a Bed fit for his own Size, was reported to stretch Men of low Stature upon the Rack, till they were drawn out to the Length of his Bed; and some add also that he



cut off the Legs of any whom he found too long for it.

'Tis also from a Principle near akin to this that we pervert and strain the Writings of any venerable Authors, and especially the sacred Books of Scripture to make them speak *our own Sense*. Thro' the Influence which *our own Schemes* or *Hypotheses* have upon the Mind, we sometimes become so sharp-sighted as to find these Schemes in those Places of Scripture where the Holy Writers never thought of them, nor the holy Spirit intended them. At other times this *Prejudice* brings such a Dimness upon the Sight, that we cannot read any thing that opposes our own Scheme, though it be written as with Sunbeams, and in the plainest Language: and perhaps we are in Danger in such a Case of *winking* a little against the Light.

We ought to bring our Minds free, unbiass'd and teachable to learn our Religion from the Word of God; but we have generally form'd all the lesser as well as the greater Points of our Religion beforehand, and then we read the Prophets

C.III.S. 3. *The right use of Reason.* 323

phets and Apostles only to persuade them to confirm our own Opinions. Were it not for this Influence of *Self*, and a Bigotry to our own Tenets, we could hardly imagin that so many strange, absurd, inconsistent, wicked, mischievous, and bloody Principles should pretend to support and defend themselves by the *Gospel of Christ*.

Every learned *Critick* has *his own Hypothesis*; and if the *common Text* be not favourable to his Opinion, a *various Lektion* shall be made authentick. The Text must be suppos'd to be *defective or redundant*, and the Sense of it shall be *literal or metaphorical*, according as it best supports his own Scheme. Whole Chapters or Books shall be *added or left out* of the sacred Canon, or be turn'd into *Parables* by this Influence. *Luther* knew not well how to reconcile the Epistle of *St. James* to the Doctrine of *Justification by Faith alone*, and so he could not allow it to be Divine. The *Papists* bring all the *Apocrypha* into their Bible, and stamp Divinity upon it, for they can fancy Purgatory is there and find Prayers for the Dead. But they leave

out the *Second Commandment*, because it forbids the *Worship of Images*. Others suppose the *Mosaick History of the Creation and the Fall of Man* to be Oriental Ornaments, or a mere *Allegory*, because the literal Sense of those three Chapters of *Genesis* don't agree with their Theories. Even an honest plain-hearted and unlearned *Christian* is ready to find something in every Chapter of the Bible, to countenance his own private Sentiments; but he loves those Chapters best which speak his own Opinions plainest: This is a *Prejudice* that sticks very close to our Natures; the *Scholar* is infested with it daily, and the *Mechanick* is not free.

*Self* has yet a further and pernicious Influence upon our Understandings, and is an unhappy Guide in the Search after Truth. When *our own Inclination*, or *our Ease*, *our Honour* or *our Profit* tempts us to the Practice of any thing of suspected Lawfulness, how do we strain our Thoughts to find Arguments for it, and persuade our selves to judge 'tis lawful? We colour over Iniquity and sinful Compliance with the Names of *Ver-*  
*tue*



C.III.S.3. *The right use of Reason.* 325  
*true and Innocence, or at least of Constraint and Necessity.* All the different and opposite Sentiments and Practices of Mankind are too much influenced by this mean Bribery, and give too just Occasion for satyrical Writers to say that *Self-Interest governs all Mankind.*

When the *Judge* had awarded due Damages to a Person into whose Field a Neighbour's Oxen had broke, 'tis reported that he reversed his own Sentence, when he heard that the Oxen which had done this Mischief were *his own*. Whether this be a *History* or a *Parable*, 'tis still a just Representation of the wretched Influence of *Self* to corrupt the Judgment.

One way to amend this *Prejudice* is to thrust *Self* so far out of the Question that it may have no manner of Influence whensoever we are call'd to judge and consider the naked Nature, Truth and Justice of Things. In Matters of Equity between Man and Man our Saviour has taught us an effectual Means of guarding against this Prejudice, and that is to put *my Neighbour* in the Place of *my Self*, and *my Self* in the Place of *my Neighbour*

*Neighbour* rather than be bribed by this corrupt Principle of *Self-Love* to do Injury to our Neighbours. Thence arises that Golden Rule of *dealing with others as we would have others deal with us*.

In the Judgment of *Truth and Falsehood, Right and Wrong, Good and Evil*, we ought to consider that every Man has a SELF as well as we; and that the Tastes, Passions, Inclinations and Interests of different Men are very different and often contrary, and that they dictate contrary Things: Unless therefore all manner of different and contrary Propositions could be true at once, *Self* can never be a just Test or Standard of *Truth and Falshood, Good and Evil*.

VI. The *Tempers, Humours, and peculiar Turns of the Mind*, whether they be natural or acquir'd, have a great Influence upon our Judgment, and become the Occasion of many *Mistakes*. Let us survey a few of them.

(1.) Some Persons are of an *easy and credulous Temper*, while others are perpetually discovering a *Spirit of Contradiction*. The

C .III. S. 3. *The right use of Reason.* 327

The *credulous Man* is ready to receive every thing for Truth, that has but a Shadow of Evidence ; every new Book that he reads, and every ingenious Man with whom he converses, has Power enough to draw him into the Sentiments of the Speaker or Writer. He has so much Complaisance in him, or Weakness of Soul, that he is ready to resign his own Opinion to the first Objection which he hears, and to receive any Sentiments of another that are asserted with a positive Air and much Assurance. Thus he is under a kind of Necessity, through the Indulgence of this credulous Humour, either to be often changing his Opinions, or to believe Inconsistencies.

The *Man of Contradiction* is of a contrary Humour, for he stands ready to oppose every thing that is said : he gives a slight Attention to the Reasons of other Men, from an inward scornful Presumption that they have no Strength in them. When he reads or hears a Discourse different from his own Sentiments, he does not give himself leave to consider whether that Discourse may be true ; but imployes all his Powers immediately



mediately to confute it. Your *great Disputers* and your *Men of Controversy* are in continual Danger of this sort of Prejudice: they contend often for Victory, and will maintain whatsoever they have asserted, while Truth is lost in the Noise and Tumult of reciprocal Contradictions; and it frequently happens that a *Debate about Opinions* is turned into a *mutual Reproach of Persons*.

The *Prejudices of Credulity* may in some Measure be cur'd by learning to set a high Value on Truth, and by taking more Pains to attain it; remembering that Truth oftentimes lies dark and deep, and requires us to dig for it as for hid Treasure; and that Falshood often puts on a fair Disguise, and therefore we should not yield up our Judgment to every plausible Appearance. 'Tis no part of *Civility* or *good Breeding* to part with Truth, but to maintain it with *Decency* or *Candor*.

*A Spirit of Contradiction* is so pedantick and hateful that a Man should take much Pains with himself to watch against every Instance of it: He should  
learn

C.III. S.3. *The right use of Reason.* 329

learn so much *good Humour* at least as never to oppose any thing without just and solid Reason for it: He should abate some Degrees of *Pride* and *Moroseness* which are never failing Ingredients in this sort of Temper; and should seek after so much *Honesty* and *Conscience* as never to contend for Conquest or Triumph; but to review his own Reasons and to read the Arguments of his Opponents (if possible) with an equal Indifference, and be glad to spy Truth and to submit to it, tho' it appear on the opposite Side.

(2.) There is another *Pair of Prejudices* deriv'd from *two Tempers* of Mind near akin to those I have just mention'd, and these are the *dogmatical* and the *sceptical Humour*.

By what means soever the *Dogmatist* came by his Opinions, whether by his Senses, or by his Fancy, his Education, or his own Reading, yet he believes them all with the same Assurance that he does a *Mathematical Truth*; he has scarce any mere *Probabilities* that belong to him; every thing with him is *certain* and *infallible*; every Punctilio in Religion

gion is an Article of his Faith, and he answers all manner of Objections, by a sovereign Contempt.

Persons of this Temper are seldom to be convinced of any Mistake: A full Assurance of their own Notions makes all the Difficulties of their own Side vanish so entirely, that they think every Point of their Belief is written as with Sun-beams, and wonder any one should find a Difficulty in it. They are amazed that learned Men should make a Controversy of what is to them so perspicuous and indubitable. The lowest Rank of People both in learned and in vulgar Life is very subject to this Obstinacy.

*Scepticism* is a contrary Prejudice. The *Dogmatist* is sure of every thing, and the *Sceptick* believes nothing. Perhaps he has found himself often mistaken in Matters of which he thought himself well assured in his younger Days, and therefore he is afraid to give Assent to any thing again. He sees so much Shew of Reason for every Opinion, and so many Objections also arising against every Doctrine, that he is ready to throw off the Belief of every thing: he renounces  
at



C. III. S. 3. *The right use of Reason.* 331

at once the Pursuit of Truth, and contents himself to say, *There is nothing certain.* 'Tis well if through the Influence of such a Temper he does not cast away his Religion as well as his Philosophy, and abandon himself to a profane Course of Life, regardless of Hell and Heaven.

Both these *Prejudices* last mention'd, though they are so opposite to each other, yet they arise from the same Spring, and that is, *Impatience of Study, and Want of diligent Attention in the Search of Truth.* The *Dogmatist* is in haste to believe something, he can't keep himself long enough in Suspence till some bright and convincing Evidence appear on one Side; but throws himself casually into the Sentiments of one Party or another, and then he will hear no Argument to the contrary. The *Sceptick* will not take Pains to search things to the Bottom, but when he sees Difficulties on both Sides resolves to believe neither of them. *Humility of Soul, Patience in Study, Diligence in Enquiry, with an honest Zeal for Truth,* would  
go

go a great Way towards the Cure of both these Follies.

(3.) Another sort of *Temper* that is very injurious to a right Judgment of things is an *inconstant, fickle, changeable Spirit*, and a *very uneven Temper of Mind*. When such Persons are in one Humour, they pass a Judgment of Things agreeable to it; when their Humour changes, they reverse their first Judgment, and imbrace a new Opinion. They have no *Steadiness of Soul*; they want *Firmness of Mind* sufficient to establish themselves in any Truth, and are ready to change it for the next alluring Falshood that is agreeable to their Change of Humour. This *Fickleness* is sometimes so mingled with their very Constitution by Nature or by Distemper of Body, that a *cloudy Day* and a *lowering Skie* shall strongly incline them to form an Opinion both of themselves and of Persons and Things round about them quite different from what they believe when the *Sun shines* and the *Heavens are serene*.

This

This is too true I find

C.III.S.3. *The right use of Reason.* 333

This sort of People ought to judge of Things and Persons in their most sedate, peaceful and composed Hours of Life, and reserve these Judgments for their Conduct at more unhappy Seasons.

(4.) Some Persons have a *violent and turgid Manner both of Talking and Thinking*; Whatsoever they judge of, 'tis always with a Tincture of this Vanity. They are always in Extremes, and pronounce concerning every thing in the Superlative. If they think a Man to be learned, *he is the chief Scholar of the Age*; if another has low Parts, *he is the greatest Blockhead in Nature*: If they approve any Book on Divine Subjects, *'tis the best Book in the World next to the Bible*: if they speak of a Storm of Rain or Hail, *'tis the most terrible Storm that fell since the Creation*, and a cold Winter Day is *the coldest that ever was known*.

But the Men of this swelling Language ought to remember that Nature has ten thousand *moderate* Things in it, and does not always deal in *Extremes* as they do.



(5.) I think it may be call'd another sort of *Prejudices deriv'd from Humour*, when some Men believe a *Doctrine merely because 'tis antient* and has been long believ'd; Others are so fond of *Novelty* that nothing prevails upon their Assent so much as *new Thoughts and new Notions*. Again, there are some who set a high Esteem upon every thing that is *foreign*, and *far-fetch'd*; therefore *China Pictures* are admir'd, how awkward soever; Others value Things the more for being of our own *native Growth, Invention, or Manufacture*, and these as much despise *foreign Things*.

Some *Men of Letters and Theology* will not believe a Proposition even concerning a sublime Subject, till every thing mysterious, deep, and difficult is cut off from it, tho' the Scripture asserts it never so plainly: Others are so fond of a *Mystery* and Things *incomprehensible*, that they would scarce believe the Doctrine of the *Trinity* if it could be explain'd; they encline to that foolish Rant of one of the Antients, *Credo quia impossibile est*; I believe it because 'tis impossible.

\*

To

C.III.S. 3. *The right use of Reason.* 335

To cure these Mistakes, remember that neither *antique* or *novel*, *foreign* or *native*, *mysterious* or *plain* are certain Characters either of Truth or Falshood.

I might mention various other *Humours of Men* that excite in them various *Prejudices*, and lead them into rash and mistaken Judgments; but these are sufficient for a Specimen.

VII. There are several other *Weaknesses* which belong to Human Nature, whereby we are led into *Mistakes*, and indeed are render'd almost incapable of passing a solid Judgment in Matters of great Depth and Difficulty. Some have a *native Obscurity of Perception*, (or shall I call it a Want of *natural Sagacity*?) whereby they are hinder'd from attaining clear and distinct Ideas. Their Thoughts always seem to have something confus'd and cloudy in them, and therefore they judge in the dark. Some have a *Defect in Memory*, and then they are not capable of comparing their present Ideas with a great Variety of others, in order to secure themselves from Inconsistency in Judgment. Others may have  
a Me-

a Memory large enough, yet they are subject to the same Errors from a *Narrowness of Soul*, and such a *Fixation and Confinement of Thought to a few Objects*, that they scarce ever take a Survey of Things wide enough to judge wisely and well, and to secure themselves from all Inconsistencies.

Though these are *natural Defects and Weaknesses*, yet they may in some measure be reliev'd by Labour, Diligence and a due Attention to proper Rules.

But among all the *Causes of false Judgment which are within our selves*, I ought by no means to leave out that *universal and original Spring of Error*, which we are inform'd of by the Word of God, and that is *the Sin and Defection of our first Parents*, whereby all our best natural Powers both of Mind and Body are impaired, and render'd very much inferior to what they were in a State of Innocence. Our Understanding is darken'd, our Memory contracted, our corrupt Humours and Passions are grown predominant, our Reason infeeble, and various Disorders attend our Constitution and animal Nature,



C.III.S.3. *The right use of Reason.* 337

ture, whereby the Mind is strangely impos'd upon in its Judgment of Things. Nor is there any perfect Relief to be expected on Earth. There is no hope of ever recovering from these Maladies, but by a *sincere Return to God* in the Ways of his own Appointment, whereby we shall be kept safe from all dangerous and pernicious Errors in the Matters of Religion; and tho' *Imperfections and Errors* will hang about us in the present Life as the Effects of our *original Apostacy* from God, yet we may hope for a full Deliverance from them when we arrive at Heaven.

---

SECT. IV.

*Prejudices arising from other Persons.*

**W**ERE it not for the *Springs of Prejudice, that are lurking in ourselves*, we should not be subject to so many Mistakes from the *Influence of others*: But since our Nature is so susceptible of Errors on all Sides, 'tis fit we should have Hints and Notices given

Q

ven us, how far *other Persons* may have Power over us and become the Causes of our false Judgments. This might all be cast into one Heap, for they are all near akin, and mingle with each other: But for Distinction sake let them be called the *Prejudices of Education*, of *Custom*, of *Authority*, and such as arise from the *Manner of Proposal*.

I. Those with whom *our Education* is entrusted, may lay the *first Foundation of many Mistakes* in our younger Years. How many Fooleries and Errors are instill'd into us by our Nurses, our Fellow-Children, by Servants or unskilful Teachers, which are not only maintain'd thro' the following Parts of Life, but sometimes have a very unhappy Influence upon us! We are taught that *There are Goblins and Bugbears in the Dark*; our young Minds are croud-ed with the *terrible Ideas of Ghosts appearing upon every Occasion*, or with the pleasanter Tales of *Fairies dancing at Midnight*. We learn to *prophecy sometimes*, to *foretel Futurities by good or evil Omens*, and to *presage approaching Death* in a Family by *Ravens* and  
little

C.III. S. 4. *The right use of Reason.* 339

*little Worms*, which we therefore call a *Death Watch*. We are taught to know before-hand, for a Twelve-month together, *which Days of the Week will be fair or foul*, which will be *lucky or unlucky*; nor is there any Thing so silly, but may be impos'd upon our Understandings in that early part of Life; and these ridiculous Stories abide with us too long, and too far influence the weaker Part of Mankind.

We chuse our *particular Sect and Party in the Civil, the Religious and the Learned Life*, by the Influence of *Education*. In the Colleges of Learning, some are for the *Nominals*, and some for the *Realists* in the Science of Metaphysicks, because their Tutors were devoted to these Parties. The *Old Philosophy* and the *New* have gained thousands of Partizans the same Way: And every *Religion* has its *Infant Votaries*, who are born, live and die in the same Faith without Examination of any Article. The *Turks* are taught early to believe in *Mahomet*; the *Jews* in *Moses*; the *Heathens* worship a *Multitude of Gods* under the Force of their *Educa-*  
Q 2 *tion.*



*tion.* And 'twould be well if there were not Millions of *Christians*, who have little more to say for their Religion, than that they were born and bred up in it. The greatest Part of the *Christian World* can hardly give any Reason why they believe the *Bible to be the Word of God*, but because they have always believ'd it, and they were taught so from their Infancy: As *Jews* and *Turks*, and *American Heathens* believe the most monstrous and incredible Stories, because they have been train'd up amongst them as Articles of Faith; so the *Papists* believe their *Transubstantiation*, and make no Difficulty of assenting to Impossibilities, since 'tis the current Doctrine of their Catechisms. By the same Means the several Sects and Parties in *Christianity* believe all the *strained Interpretations of Scripture* by which they have been taught to support their own Tenets: They find nothing difficult in all the *absurd Glosses* and *far-fetcht Senses* that are sometimes put upon the Words of the Sacred Writers, because their Ears have been always accustom'd to these Glosses; and therefore they sit so smooth

C. III.S.4. *The right use of Reason.* 349

smooth and easy upon their Understandings, that they know not how to admit the most natural and easy Interpretation in Opposition to them.

In the same Manner we are nurs'd up in many silly and gross Mistakes about *Domestick* Affairs as well as in Matters of *Political* Concernment. 'Tis upon the same Ground that Children are train'd up to be *Whigs* and *Tories* betimes; and every one learns the distinguishing Terms of his own Party, as the *Papists* learn to say their Prayers in *Latin*, without any Meaning, Reason, or Devotion.

This sort of *Prejudice* must be cur'd by calling all the Principles of our younger Years to the Bar of more mature Reason, that we may judge of the Things of *Nature* and *Political Affairs* by juster Rules of Philosophy and Observation: And even the *Matters of Religion* must be first enquir'd into by *Reason* and *Conscience*, and when these have led us to believe *Scripture to be the Word of God*, then that becomes our Sovereign Guide, and Reason and Conscience must submit to receive its Dictates.

II. The next *Prejudice* which I shall mention is, that which arises from the *Custom or Fashion of those amongst whom we live*. Suppose we have freed our selves from the younger *Prejudices of our Education*, yet we are in Danger of having our Mind turned aside from Truth by the Influence of *general Custom*.

Our Opinion of *Meats and Drinks*, of *Garments and Forms of Salutation* are influenc'd much more by *Custom* than by the Eye, the Ear, or the Taste. Custom prevails even over *Sense* itself, and therefore no Wonder if it prevail over *Reason* too. What is it but *Custom* that renders many of the *Mixtures of Food and Sauces* elegant in *Britain*, which would be awkward and nauseous to the Inhabitants of *China*, and indeed were nauseous to us when we first tasted them? What but *Custom* could make those *Salutations* polite in *Muscovy*, which are ridiculous in *France* or *England*? We call our selves indeed the *Politer Nations*, but it is we who judge thus of our selves; and that fancy'd *Politeness* is oftentimes more owing to *Custom* than *Reason*.



C. III. S. 4. *The right use of Reason.* 343

*Reason.* Why are the Forms of our *present Garments* counted beautiful, and those *Fashions* of our Ancestors the Matter of Scoff and Contempt, which in their Day were all decent and genteel? It is *Custom* that forms our Opinion of *Dress*, and reconciles us by Degrees to those Habits which at first seem'd very odd and monstrous. It must be granted there are some Garments and Habits which have a *natural* Congruity or Incongruity, Modesty or Immodesty, Decency or Indecency, Gaudery or Gravity; tho' for the most part there is but little of Reason in these Affairs: But what little there is of *Reason* or *Natural Decency*, *Custom* triumphs over it all. It is almost impossible to persuade a gay Lady that any Thing can be *decent* which is out of *Fashion*: And it were well if *Fashion* stretch'd its Powers no farther than the Business of Drapery and the Fair Sex.

The Methods of our Education are govern'd by *Custom*. 'Tis *Custom*, and not Reason that sends every Boy to learn the *Roman* Poets, and begin a little acquaintance with *Greek*, before he is bound an

Apprentice to a Soapboiler or a Leather-feller. 'Tis Custom alone that teaches us *Latin* by the Rules of a *Latin Grammar*; a tedious and absurd Method! And what is it but Custom that has for past Centuries confined the brightest Genius's even of high Rank in the Female World to the only Business of the Needle, and secluded them most unmercifully from the Pleasures of Knowledge, and the Divine Improvements of Reason? But we begin to break all these Chains, and Reason begins to dictate the Education of Youth. May the growing Age be learned and wise!

'Tis by the *Prejudice* arising from our own *Custom*, that we judge of all other *civil* and *religious Forms* and *Practices*. The Rites and Ceremonies of *War* and *Peace* in other Nations, the Forms of *Weddings* and *Funerals*, the several Ranks of *Magistracy*, the *Trades* and *Employments* of both Sexes, the *publick* and the *domestick Affairs of Life*, and almost every thing of *foreign Customs* is judg'd irregular. 'Tis all imagin'd to be *unreasonable* or *unnatural*, by those who have no other Rule to judge of *Nature*

C.III.S.4. *The right use of Reason.* 345

ture and Reason, but the Customs of their own Country, or the little Town where they dwell. *Custom* is call'd a *second Nature*, but we often mistake it for *Nature it self*.

Besides all this, there is a Fashion in *Opinions*, there is a Fashion in *Writing* and *Printing*, in *Style* and *Language*. In our Day 'tis the Vogue of the Nation, that *Parliaments may settle the Succession of the Crown*, and that a *People can make a King*; in the last Age this was a Doctrine akin to Treason. *Citations from the Latin Poets* were an Embellishment of Style in the last Century, and whole Pages in that Day were cover'd with them; 'tis now forbidden by Custom, and expos'd by the Name of *Pedantry*; whereas in Truth both these are Extremes. Sometimes our printed Books shall abound in *Capitals*, and sometimes reject them all. Now we deal much in *Essays*, and most unreasonably despise *systematic Learning*, whereas our Fathers had a just Value for Regularity and *Systems*; then *Folio's* and *Quarto's* were the fashionable Sizes, as Volumes in *Octavo* are

Q: 5

now.



now. We are ever ready to run into Extremes, and yet *Custom* still persuades us that *Reason* and *Nature* are on our Side.

This Business of the *Fashion* has a most powerful Influence on our Judgments; for it imployes those two strong Engines of *Fear* and *Shame* to operate upon our Understandings with unhappy Success. We are asham'd to believe or profess an unfashionable Opinion in Philosophy, and a cowardly Soul dares not so much as indulge a Thought contrary to the *establisht* or *fashionable Faith*, nor act in Opposition to *Custom*, tho' it be according to the Dictates of *Reason*.

I confess, there is a Respect due to Mankind which should incline even the wisest of Men to follow the *innocent Customs* of their Country in outward Practices of the Civil Life, and in some Measure to submit to Fashion in *all indifferent Affairs*, where *Reason* and *Scripture* make no Remonstrances against it. But the Judgments of the Mind ought to be for ever free, and not bias'd by the *Customs* and *Fashions* of any Age or Nation whatsoever.

To deliver our Understandings from this Danger and Slavery, we should consider these three Things.

1. That the greatest Part of the *Civil Customs* of any particular Nation or Age, spring from *Humour* rather than *Reason*. Sometimes the Humour of the Prince prevails, and sometimes the Humour of the People. It is either the *Great* or the *Many* who dictate the Fashion, and these have not always the highest Reason on their Side.

2. Consider also, that the *Customs* of the same Nation in different Ages, the *Customs* of different Nations in the same Age, and the *Customs* of different Towns and Villages in the same Nation, are very various and contrary to each other. The *fashionable* Learning, Language, Sentiments and Rules of Politeness differ greatly in *different Countries* and *Ages* of Mankind; but *Truth* and *Reason* are of a more uniform and steady Nature, and don't change with the Fashion. Upon this Account, to cure the *Prepossessions* which arise from *Custom*, 'tis of excellent Use to travel, and see the Customs of various Countries, and

to read the Travels of other Men, and the History of past Ages, that every Thing may not seem strange and uncouth which is not practised within the Limits of our own Parish, or in the narrow Space of our own Life-time.

3. Consider yet again, how often we our selves have chang'd our own Opinions concerning the Decency, Propriety, or Congruity of several *Modes* or *Practices* in the World, especially if we have lived to the Age of Thirty or Forty. *Custom* or *Fashion*, even in all its Changes, has been ready to have some Degree of Ascendency over our Understanding, and what at one time seem'd *decent*, appears *obsolete* and *disagreeable* afterward, when the Fashion changes. Let us learn therefore to abstract as much as possible from *Custom* and *Fashion*, when we would pass a Judgment concerning the real Value and intrinsic Nature of Things.

III. *The Authority of Men is the Spring of another Rank of Prejudices.*

Among these the *Authority* of our *Forefathers* and *antient Authors* is most remarkable. We pay Deference  
to



C. III. S. 4. *The right use of Reason.* 349

to the Opinions of others, merely because they lived a thousand Years before us; and even the Trifles and Impertinences that have a Mark of *Antiquity* upon them, are revered for this Reason, because they came from the *Antients*. It is granted, that the *Antients* had many wise and great Men among them, and some of their Writings, which Time hath deliver'd down to us, are truly valuable: But those Writers lived rather in the Infant-State of the World; and the *Philosophers* as well as the *Polite Authors* of our Age, are properly the *Elders*, who have seen the Mistakes of the *younger Ages* of Mankind, and corrected them by Observation and Experience.

Some borrow all their Religion from the *Fathers of the Christian Church*, or from their *Synods* or *Councils*; but he that will read Monsieur *Daillé* on the *Use of the Fathers*, will find many Reasons why they are by no means fit to dictate our Faith, since we have the Gospel of *Christ*, and the Writings of the Apostles and Prophets in our own Hands.

Some

Some Persons believe every thing that their *Kindred*, their *Parents*, and their *Tutors* believe. The Veneration and the Love which they have for their *Ancestors*, inclines them to swallow down all their *Opinions* at once, without examining what Truth or Falshood there is in them. Men take up their Principles by Inheritance, and defend them as they would their Estates, because they are born Heirs to them. I freely grant, that *Parents* are appointed by God and Nature to teach us all the Sentiments and Practices of our younger Years; and happy are those whose Parents lead them into the Paths of Wisdom and Truth! I grant further, that when Persons come to Years of Discretion, and judge for themselves, they ought to examine the *Opinions of their Parents* with the greatest Modesty, and with a humble Deference to their superior Character; they ought in Matters perfectly dubious to give the Preference to their Parents Advice, and always to pay them the first Respect, nor ever depart from their *Opinions* and Practice, till Reason and Conscience make it necessary. But  
after

C.III. S. 4. *The right use of Reason.* 351

after all, 'tis possible that *Parents* may be mistaken, and therefore *Reason* and *Scripture* ought to be our final Rules of Determination in Matters that relate to this World, and that which is to come.

Sometimes a *favourite Author*, or a *Writer of great Name*, drags a thousand Followers after him into his own Mistakes, merely by the Authority of his Name and Character. The Sentiments of *Aristotle* were imbib'd and maintain'd by all the Schools in *Europe* for several Centuries; and a Citation from his Writings was thought a sufficient Proof of any Proposition. The great *Descartes* had also too many implicit Believers in the last Age, tho' he himself, in his Philosophy, disclaims all such Influence over the Minds of his Readers. *Calvin* and *Luther*, in the Days of Reformation from *Popery*, were learned and pious Men, and there have been a Succession of their Disciples even to this Day, who pay too much Reverence to the Words of their Masters. There are others who renounce their Authority, but give themselves up in too servile a Manner to the Opinion  
and



and Authority of other Masters, and follow as bad or worse Guides in Religion.

If only *learned*, and *wise*, and *good* Men had Influence on the Sentiments of others, it would be at least a more excusable sort of Prejudice, and there would be some Colour and Shadow of Reason for it: But that *Riches*, *Honours*, and *outward Splendor* should set up Persons for Dictators to all the rest of Mankind; this is a most shameful Invasion of the Right of our Understandings on the one hand, and as shameful a Slavery of the Soul on the other. The *poor Man* or the *Labourer* believes such a Principle in *Politicks*, or in *Morality*, and judges concerning the *Rights of the King and the People*, just as his *wealthy Neighbour* does. Half the *Parish* follows the Opinion of the *Esquire*, and the *Tenants* of a Manor fall into the Sentiments of their *Lord*, especially if he lives amongst them.

As for Principles of *Religion*, we frequently find how they are taken up and forsaken, chang'd and resum'd by the Influence of *Princes*. In all Nations

C.III. S.4. *The right use of Reason.* 353

tions the *Priests* have much Power also in dictating the Religion of *People*, but the *Princes* dictate to them: And where there is great Pomp and Grandeur attending the Priesthood in any Religion whatsoever, with so much the more Reverence and stronger Faith do the People believe whatever they teach them: Yet 'tis too often evident that *Riches*, and *Dominions*, and *high Titles* in *Church or State* have no manner of Pretence to Truth and Certainty, Wisdom and Goodness above the Rest of Mortals, because these Superiorities in this World are not always confer'd according to Merit.

I confess, where a Man of *Wisdom* and *Years*, of *Observation* and *Experience*, gives us his Opinion and Advice in Matters of the *Civil* or the *Moral Life*, Reason tells us we should pay great Attention to him, it is probable he may be in the Right. Where a Man of *long Exercise* in *Piety* speaks of *practical Religion*, there is a due Deference to be paid to his Sentiments: And the same we may say concerning an *ingenious Man long versed in any Art or Science*,  
he

he may justly expect due Regard when he speaks of his own Affairs and proper Business. But in *other things*, each of these may be ignorant enough notwithstanding all their Piety, and Years, and particular Skill: Nor even in their *own proper Province* are they to be believed in every thing without Reserve, and without Examination.

To free our selves from these *Prejudices*, 'tis sufficient to remember that there is no Rank nor Character among Mankind, which has any just Pretence to sway the Judgments of other Men by their Authority: For there have been Persons of the same Rank and Character who have maintain'd different and contrary Sentiments; but all these can never be true, and therefore the mere Name or Reputation that any of them possesses is not a sufficient Evidence of Truth.

Shall we believe the *Antients in Philosophy*? But some of the Antients were *Stoicks*, some *Peripateticks*, some *Platonicks*, and some *Epicureans*, some *Cynics* and some *Sceptics*? Shall we judge of Matters of the *Christian Faith* by



C. III. S. 4. *The right use of Reason.* 355

by the *Fathers* or *Primitive Writers* for three or four hundred Years after *Christ*? But they often contradicted one another, and themselves too; and what is worse, they sometimes contradicted the Scripture it self. Now among all these different and contrary Sentiments in *Philosophy* and *Religion*, which of the Antients must we believe, for we cannot believe them all?

*Again*, To believe in all Things as our Predecessors did, is the ready way to keep Mankind in an everlasting State of Infancy, and to lay an eternal Bar against all the Improvements of our Reason and our Happiness. Had the present Age of Philosophers satisfy'd themselves with the *substantial Forms*, and *occult Qualities* of *Aristotle*, with the *solid Spheres*, *Excentricks* and *Epicycles* of *Ptolomy*, and the ancient Astronomers; then, the great Lord *Bacon*, *Copernicus*, and *Descartes*, with the greater Sir *Isaac Newton*, Mr. *Locke*, and Mr. *Boyle*, had risen in our World in vain. We must have blunder'd on still in successive Generations amongst Absurdities and thick Darkness, and a hundred

hundred useful Inventions, for the Happiness of Human Life had never been known.

Thus 'tis in Matters of *Philosophy* and *Science*. But, you will say, *Shall not our own Ancestors determine our Judgment in Matters of Civil or Religious Concernment?* If they must, then the Child of a *Heathen* must believe that *Heathenism* is Truth; the Son of a *Papist* must assent to all the Absurdities of *Popery*; the Posterity of the *Jews* and *Socinians* must for ever be *Socinians* and *Jews*; and a Man, whose Father was of *Republican* Principles, must make a Succession of *Republicans* in his Family to the End of the World. If we ought always to believe whatsoever our *Parents*, or our *Priests*, or our *Princes* believe, the Inhabitants of *China* ought to worship their own Idols, and the Savages of *Africa* ought to believe all the Nonsense, and practise the Idolatry of their *Negro Fathers* and *Kings*. The *British* Nation, when it was *Heathen*, could never have become *Christian*; and when it was a Slave to *Rome*, it could never have been reform'd.

Besides,

C.III.S.4. *The right use of Reason.* 357

Besides, let us consider that the great God, our common Maker, has never given one Man's Understanding a legal and rightful Sovereignty to determine Truth for others, after they are past the State of Childhood or Minority. No single Person, how learned and wise, and great soever, or whatsoever *Natural*, or *Civil*, or *Ecclesiastical* Relation he may have to us, can claim this Dominion over our Faith. St. *Paul* the Apostle in his private Capacity would not do it; nor hath an inspir'd Man any such Authority, until he make his Divine Commission appear. Our Saviour himself tells the *Jews*, that *if he had not done such wondrous Works among them, they had not sinned* in disbelieving his Doctrines, and refusing him for the *Messiah*. No Bishop or Presbyter, no Synod or Council, no Church or Assembly of Men, (since the Days of Inspiration) hath Power derived to them from God to make Creeds or Articles of Faith for us, and impose them upon our Understandings. We must all act according to the best of our own Light, and the Judgment of our own Consciences, using the  
the



the best Advantages which Providence hath given us, with an honest and impartial Diligence to enquire and search out the Truth: For every one of us must give an Account of himself to God. To believe as the Church, or the Court believes, is but a sorry and a dangerous Faith: This Principle would make more Heathens than Christians, and more Papists than Protestants; and perhaps lead more Souls to Hell than to Heaven; for our Saviour himself has plainly told us, that if the *Blind* will be led by the *Blind*, they must both fall into the Ditch.

Tho' there be so much danger of Error arising from the three *Prejudices* last mentioned, yet before I dismiss this Head, I think it proper to take notice, that as *Education*, *Custom* and *Authority* are no sure *Evidences of Truth*, so neither are they certain *Marks of Falseness*; for Reason and Scripture may join to dictate the same Things which our Parents, our Nurses, our Tutors, our Friends, and our Country believe and profess. Yet there appears sometimes in our Age a *Pride* and *Petulance*

lancy in Youth, zealous to cast off the Sentiments of their *Fathers* and *Teachers* on Purpose to shew that they carry none of the *Prejudices of Education* and *Authority* about them. They indulge all manner of licentious Opinions and Practices, from a vain Pretence of asserting their Liberty. But alas, this is but changing one *Prejudice* for another; and sometimes it happens by this means, that they make a Sacrifice both of Truth and Virtue to the vile *Prejudices* of their *Pride* and *Sensuality*.

IV. There is another Tribe of *Prejudices* which are near akin to those of *Authority*, and that is when we receive a Doctrine because of the *Manner in which it is propos'd to us by others*. I have already mentioned the powerful Influence that *Oratory* and *fine Words* have to insinuate a false Opinion; and sometimes Truth is refused, and suffers Contempt in the Lips of a wise Man, for want of the Charms of Language: But there are several other *Manners of Proposal* whereby mistaken Sentiments are powerfully convey'd into the Mind.

Some

Some Persons are easily persuaded to believe what another dictates with a *positive Air* and a *great Degree of Assurance*: They feel the over-bearing Force of a confident Dictator, especially if he be of superior Rank or Character to themselves.

Some are quickly convinced of the Truth of any Doctrine, when he that proposes it puts on all the *Airs of Piety*, and makes *solemn Appeals to Heaven*, and *Protestations of the Truth* of it: The pious Mind of a weaker Christian is ready to receive any thing that is pronounced with such an awful Solemnity.

It is a *Prejudice* near akin to this, when a humble Soul is frightened into any particular Sentiments of Religion, because a Man of great Name or Character pronounces *Heresy* upon the contrary Sentiments, casts the Disbeliever out of the Church, and forbids him the Gates of Heaven.

Others are allured into particular Opinions by *gentler Practices* on the Understanding: Not only the softer Tempers of Mankind, but even hardy  
and



C.III.S.4. *The right use of Reason.* 361

and rugged Souls are sometimes led away Captives to Error by the *soft Airs of Address*, and the *sweet and engaging Methods of Persuasion and Kindness*.

I grant, where Natural or Reveal'd Religion plainly dictate to us the infinite and everlasting Importance of any sacred Doctrine, it cannot be improper to use any of these Methods to persuade Men to receive the Truth, after we have given sufficient Reason and Argument to convince their Understandings. Yet all these Methods consider'd in themselves, have been often us'd to convey Falshood into the Soul as well as Truth; and if we build our Faith merely upon these Foundations, without Regard to the Evidence of Truth and the Strength of Argument, our Belief is but the *Effect of Prejudice*: For neither the *positive*, the *awful* or *solemn*, the *terrible*, or the *gentle* Methods of Address carry any certain Evidence with them that Truth lies on that Side.

There is another *Manner of proposing* our own Opinion, or rather *opposing* the Opinions of others, which demands a

R

mention

mention here, and that is when Persons make a *Jest* serve instead of an *Argument*; when they refute, what they call *Error*, by a *Turn of Wit*, and answer every Objection against their own Sentiments, by casting a *Sneer* upon the Objector. These *Scoffers* practise with Success upon weak and cowardly Spirits: Such as have not been well establish'd in Religion or Morality, have been laught out of the best Principles by a *confident Buffoon*; they have yielded up their Opinions to a *Witty Banter*, and sold their Faith and Religion for a *Jest*.

There is no Way to cure these Evils in such a degenerate World as we live in, but by learning to distinguish well between the *Substance of any Doctrine*, and the *Manner of Address* either in proposing, attacking, or defending it; and then by setting a just and severe Guard of Reason and Conscience over all the Exercises of our Judgment, resolving to yield to nothing but the convincing Evidence of Truth, religiously obeying the Light of *Reason* in Matters of *pure Reason*, and the Dictates of  
Reve-

C.III. S. 4. *The right use of Reason.* 363

*Revelation in Things that relate to our Faith.*

Thus we have taken a brief Survey of some of the *Infinite Varieties of Prejudice* that attend Mankind on every Side in the present State, and the *Dangers of Error* or of *Rash Judgment*, we are perpetually expos'd to in this Life: This Chapter shall conclude with one *Remark*, and one Piece of *Advice*.

The *Remark* is this. The same Opinion, whether *false* or *true*, may be dictated by many *Prejudices* at the same time; for, as I hinted before, *Prejudice* may happen to dictate Truth sometimes as well as Error. Where two or more *Prejudices* oppose one another, as it often happens, the stronger prevails and gains the Assent: But how seldom does *Reason* interpose with sufficient Power to get the Ascendant of them all as it ought to do!

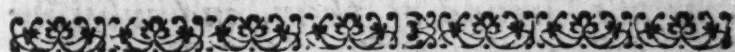
The *Advice* follows, (*viz.*) Since we find such a swarm of *Prejudices* attending us both within and without; since we feel the Weakness of our Reason, the Frailty of our Natures, and our In-



sufficiency to guard our selves from Error upon this Account, 'tis not at all unbecoming the Character of a *Logician* or a *Philosopher* (together with the Advices already given) to direct every Person in his *Search after Truth* to make his daily Addresses to Heaven, and implore the *God of Truth* to lead him into all Truth, and to ask *Wisdom of him who giveth liberally* to them that ask it, and upbraideth us not with our own Follies.

Such a devout Practice will be an excellent Preparative for the best Improvement of all the *Directions* and *Rules* proposed in the two following Chapters.





C H A P. IV.

*General Directions to assist us in  
judging aright.*



THE chief Design of the Art of *Logick* is to assist us in forming a true Judgment of Things; a few proper *Observations* for this End have been dropt occasionally in some of the foregoing Chapters: Yet 'tis necessary to mention them again in this Place, that we may have a more compleat and simultaneous View of the *general Directions*, which are necessary in order to judge aright. A multitude of Advices may be framed for this Purpose; the chief of them may, for Order sake, be reduced to the following Heads.

I. *Direct.* When we consider ourselves as *Philosophers*, or *Searchers after Truth*, we should *examine all our*

R 3

old

*old Opinions afresh, and enquire what was the Ground of them, and whether our Assent were built on just Evidence; and then we should cast off all those Judgments which were formed heretofore without due Examination: A Man in pursuit of Knowledge should throw off all those Prejudices which he had imbib'd in Times past, and guard against all the Springs of Error mention'd in the preceding Chapter, with utmost Watchfulness for Time to come.*

*Observe here, that this Rule of casting away all our former prejudicate Opinions and Sentiments, is not propos'd to any of us consider'd as Men of Business or Religion, as Friends or Neighbours, as Fathers or Sons, as Magistrates, Subjects or Christians; but merely as Philosophers and Searchers after Truth: And tho' it may be well presum'd that many of our Judgments, both true and false, together with the Practices built thereon in the Natural, the Civil and the Religious Life were form'd without sufficient Evidence; yet an universal Rejection of all these might destroy at once our present Sense and Prac-*

tice



C. IV. *The right use of Reason.* 367

tice of Duty with Regard to *God*, our *Selves*, and our *Fellow-Creatures*. Mankind would be hereby thrown into such a State of *Doubting* and *Indifference*, that it would be too long e're they recover'd any Principles of *Virtue* or *Religion* by a Train of Reasonings.

*Besides*, the common Affairs of Human Life often demand a much speedier Determination, and we must many times act upon present Probabilities: The Bulk of Mankind have not Time and Leisure, and Advantages sufficient to begin all their Knowledge anew, and to build up every single Opinion and Practice afresh upon the justest Grounds of Evidence.

Yet let it be *observ'd* also, that so far as any Person is capable of forming and correcting his Notions and his Rules of Conduct in the Natural, Civil and Religious Life by the strict Rules of *Logick*, and so far as he hath Time and Capacity to review his old Opinions, to re-examine all those which are any way doubtful, and to determine nothing without just Evidence, he is likely to become so much the wiser, and the

happier Man, and (if Divine Grace assist him) so much the better Christian. And tho' this cannot be done all at once, yet it may be done by prudent Steps and Degrees, till our whole Set of Opinions and Principles be in time corrected and reform'd, or at least establish'd upon juster Foundations.

*II. Direct. Endeavour that all your Ideas of those Objects concerning which you pass any Judgment, be Clear and Distinct, Compleat, Comprehensive, Extensive and Orderly, as far as you have Occasion to judge concerning them.* This is the Substance of the last Chapter of the first Part of *Logick*. The Rules which direct our Conceptions, must be review'd, if we would form our Judgments aright. But if we will make haste to judge at all Adventures, while our Ideas are *dark and confus'd*, and *very imperfect*, we shall be in Danger of running into many Mistakes. This is like a Person who would pretend to give the Sum total of a large Account in *Arithmetick*, without surveying all the Particulars; or as a *Painter* who professes to draw a fair and distinct

C.IV. *The right use of Reason.* 369

distinct Landskip in the Twilight, when he can hardly distinguish a House from a Tree.

Observe here, that this *Direction* does not require us to gain clear, distinct, compleat Ideas of Things, in all their Parts, Powers, and Qualities in an *absolute Sense*, for this belongs to God alone, and is impossible for us to attain: But 'tis exprest in a *relative or limited Sense*; that is, our Ideas should be clear, distinct and comprehensive, &c. at least so far as we have Occasion at that time to judge concerning them. We may form many true and certain Judgments concerning God, Angels, Animals, Men, Heaven, Hell, &c. by those partial and very imperfect Conceptions of them to which we have attain'd, if we judge no farther concerning them than our Conceptions reach.

We may have a clear and distinct Idea of the *Existence* of many Things in Nature, and affirm that *they do exist*, tho' our Ideas of their *intimate Essences and Causes*, their *Relations and Manners of Action* are very confus'd and obscure. We may judge well concern-



ing *several Properties* of any Being, tho' *other Properties* are unknown, for perhaps we know not all the *Properties* of any Being whatsoever.

Sometimes we have clear Ideas of the *absolute Properties* of an Object; and we may judge of them with Certainty, while the *relative Properties* are very obscure and unknown to us. So we may have a clear and just Idea of the *Area of a Parallelogram* without knowing what Relation it bears to the *Area of a Triangle* or a *Polygon*. I know the length of the *Diameter of a Circle*, without knowing what Proportion it has to the *Circumference*.

There are other Things whose *external relative Properties* with respect to each other, or whose *Relations to us* we know better than their own *inward and absolute Properties*, or their essential distinguishing Attributes. We perceive clearly, that *Fire will warm or burn us*, and *will evaporate Water*; and that *Water will allay our Thirst*, or *quench the Fire*, tho' we know not the inward distinguishing Particles or prime essential Properties of *Fire* or *Water*.

We

C. IV. *The right use of Reason.* 371

We may know the *King*, and *Lord Chancellor*, and affirm many Things of them in their *legal Characters*, tho' we can have but a confus'd Idea of their *Persons* or *natural Features*, if we have never seen their Faces. So the Scripture has reveal'd God himself to us, as our *Creator*, *Preserver*, *Redeemer*, and *Sanctifier*, and as the *Object of our Worship* in clearer Ideas than it has reveal'd many other abstruse Questions which may be rais'd about his own *Divine Essence*, or *Substance*, his *Immensity* or *Omnipresence*.

This therefore is the *general Observation* in order to guide our Judgments, that we should not allow our selves to form a Judgment concerning Things farther than our clear and distinct Ideas reach, and then we are not in danger of Error.

But there is one considerable *Objection* against this Rule which is necessary to be answer'd; and there is one *just and reasonable Exception*, which is as needful to be mention'd.

The *Objection* is this: May we not judge safely concerning some *total or*

*compleat Ideas*, when we have a clear Perception only of some *Parts or Properties of them*? May we not affirm, that *All that is in God is Eternal*, or that *all his unknown Attributes are infinite*, tho' we have so very imperfect an Idea of *God, Eternity and Infinity*? Again, May we not safely judge of *particular Objects* whose Idea is obscure by a clear Idea of the *General*? May I not affirm, that *Every unknown Species of Animals has inward Springs of Motion*, because I have a clear Idea that these belong to an *Animal in general*?

*Answer.* All those suppos'd *unknown Parts, Properties or Species* are clearly and distinctly perceived to be connected with, or contain'd in the *known Parts, Properties or General Ideas*, which we suppose to be clear and distinct as far as we judge of them: And as we have no *particular Idea* of those *unknown Divine Attributes*, or *unknown Species of Animals*; so there is nothing *particular* affirm'd concerning them beyond what belongs to the *general Idea* of *Divine Attributes* or *Animals*,



C.IV. *The right use of Reason.* 373

nimals, with which I clearly and distinctly perceive them to be connected.

It may be illustrated in this Manner. Suppose a *long Chain* lies before me, whose *nearest Links* I see are Iron Rings, and I see them fasten'd to a Post, but the most *distant Links* lie beyond the reach of my Sight, so that I know not whether they are Oval or Round, Brass or Iron: Now I may boldly affirm the *whole length of this Chain is fasten'd to a Post*, for I have a clear Idea that the nearest Links are thus fastened, and a clear Idea that the distant Links are connected with the nearest.

Or thus; If two known Ideas, A and B are evidently join'd, or agree, and if C unknown be included in A, and also D unknown be included in B, then I may affirm that C and D are join'd and agree; for I have a clear Perception of the Union of the two known Ideas A and B; and also a clear Perception of the Connexion of the unknown Ideas with the known. So that *clear and distinct Ideas* must still abide as a general necessary Qualification in order to form right Judgments: and indeed,

deed, 'tis upon this Foot that all *Ratiocination* is built, and the *Conclusions* are thus formed, which deduce Things unknown, from Things known.

Yet it must be granted there is one just *Exception* to this *general Rule of Judgment* as built on clear and distinct Ideas, and it is this;

*Exception.* In *Matters of Human or Divine Testimony*, there is not always a *Necessity of clear and distinct Ideas of the Things which are believ'd*. Though the Evidence of Propositions, which are *intirely form'd by our selves*, depends on the Clearness and Distinctness of those Ideas of which they are compos'd, and on our own clear Perception of their Agreement or Disagreement, yet we may justly assent to Propositions *form'd by others*, when we have neither a clear Conception in our selves of the two Ideas, nor how they agree or disagree; provided always that we have a clear and sufficient Evidence of the Credibility of the Persons who inform us.

Thus when we read in Scripture the great Doctrines of the *Deity of Christ*,

of

CIV. *The right use of Reason.* 375

of the Union of his Divine and Human Natures, of the Divine Agency of the Blessed Spirit, that the Son is the Brightness of his Father's Glory, that all Things were created by him, and for him, that the Son shall give up his Kingdom to the Father, and that God shall be all in all, we may safely believe them: For tho' our Ideas of these Objects themselves are not sufficiently clear, distinct and perfect for our own Minds to form such Judgments concerning them, yet we have a clear and distinct Perception of God's revealing them, or that they are contain'd in Scripture; and this is sufficient Evidence to determine our Assent.

The same Thing holds true in some Measure, where *credible Human Testimony* assures us of some Propositions, while we have no sufficient Ideas of the Subject and Predicate of them to determine our Assent. So when an honest and learned Mathematician assures a Plowman that the *three Angles of a Triangle are equal to two right Angles*, or that the *Square of the Hypotenuse of a Right angled Triangle is equal to*  
the



*the Sum of the Squares of the two Sides*; the Plowman, who has but confus'd Ideas of these Things, may firmly and safely believe these Propositions upon the same Ground, because he has Evidence of the Skill and Faithfulness of his Informer.

III. *Direction.* When you have obtain'd as clear and comprehensive Ideas as is needful, both of the Subject and Predicate of a Proposition, then *compare those Ideas of the Subject and Predicate together with utmost Attention, and observe how far they agree, and wherein they differ*: Whether the Proposition may be affirmed *Absolutely* or *Relatively*, whether in *Whole* or in *Part*, whether *Universally* or *Particularly*, and then under *what particular Limitations*. Turn these Ideas about in your Mind, and take a View of them on all Sides, just as a *Mason* would do to see whether two hewn Stones exactly suit each other in every Part, and are fit to be join'd in erecting a carved or fluted Pillar.

Compare the *whole Subject* with the *whole Predicate* in their several Parts:  
Take

C. IV. *The right use of Reason.* 377

Take heed in this Matter that you neither add to, or diminish the Ideas contain'd in the Subject or in the Predicate; for such an Inadvertence or Mistake will expose you to great Error in Judgment.

IV. Direct. *Search for Evidence of Truth with Diligence and Honesty, and be heartily ready to receive Evidence, whether for the Agreement or Disagreement of Ideas.*

*Search with Diligence*; spare no Labour in searching for the Truth in due Proportion to the Importance of the Proposition. Read the best Authors who have writ on that Subject; consult your wise and learned Friends in Conversation; and be not unwilling to borrow Hints toward your Improvement, from the meanest Person, nor to receive any Glimpse of Light from the most Unlearned. *Diligence* and *Humility* is the Way to thrive in the Riches of the Understanding, as well as in Gold or Silver. Search carefully for the Evidence of Truth, and *dig for Wisdom as for hid Treasure.*

*Search*

*Search with a steady Honesty of Soul,* and a sincere Impartiality to find the Truth. Watch against every Temptation that might bribe your Judgment, or warp it aside from Truth. Do not indulge your self to *wish any Proposition were true or false.* A Wish often perverts the Judgment, and tempts the Mind strangely to believe upon slight Evidence whatsoever we wish to be true, or to renounce whatsoever we wish to be false.

V. *Direct.* Since the Evidence of the Agreement or Disagreement of two Ideas is the Ground of our Assent to any Proposition, or the great *Criterion* of Truth; therefore *we should suspend our Judgment, and neither affirm or deny till this Evidence appear.*

This *Direction* is different from the *Second*; for tho' the *Evidence of the Agreement or Disagreement of two Ideas* most times depends on the *Clearness and Distinctness of the Ideas themselves*, yet it does not always arise thence. *Testimony* may be a sufficient Evidence of the Agreement or Disagreement of two obscure Ideas, as we have



C. IV. *The right use of Reason.* 379

have seen just before in the *Exception* under the *second Direction*. Therefore, tho' we are not universally, and in all Cases bound to suspend our Judgment *till our Ideas of the Objects themselves are clear and distinct*, yet we must always suspend our Judgment, and withhold our Assent to, or Denial of any Proposition, *till some just Evidence appear of its Truth or Falshood*. It is an Impatience of Doubt and Suspence, a Rashness and Precipitance of Judgment, and Hastiness to believe something on one Side or t'other, that plunges us into many Errors.

This *Direction* to delay and suspend our Assent, is more particularly necessary to be observed when such Propositions offer themselves to us as are supported by *Education, Authority, Custom, Inclination, Interest*, or other powerful Prejudices; for our Judgment is led away insensibly to believe all that they dictate; and where Prejudices and Dangers of Error are multiply'd, we should set the stricter Guard upon our Assent.

Yet remember the *Caution* or Limitation here which I gave under the *first*  
Di-

*Direction*, (*viz.*) that this is not to be too strictly apply'd to Matters of *daily Practice*, either in Human Life or Religion; but when we consider our selves as *Philosophers* or *Searchers after Truth*, we should always with-hold our Assent where there is not just Evidence: And as far and as fast as we can in a due Consistence with our daily necessary Duties, we should also reform and adjust all our Principles and Practices both in Religion and the Civil Life by these Rules.

VI. *Direct.* We must judge of every Proposition by those proper and peculiar Mediums or Means whereby the Evidence of it is to be obtain'd, whether it be, *Sense, Consciousness, Intelligence, Reason, or Testimony*. All our Faculties and Powers are to be imploy'd in judging of their proper Objects.

If we judge of *Sounds, Colors, Odors, Savors, the Smoothness, Roughness, Softness or Hardness of Bodies*, it must be done by the use of our *Senses*: But then we must take Heed that our Senses are well disposed, as shall be shewn afterward.

And

C. IV. *The right use of Reason.* 381

And since our *Senses* in their various Exercises are in some Cases liable to be deceiv'd, and more especially when by our Eyes or Ears we judge of the *Figure, Quantity, Distance, and Position* of Objects that are *afar off*, we ought to call our *Reason* in to the Assistance of our Senses, and correct the Errors of *one Sense* by the help of *another*.

'Tis by the Powers of *Sense and Reason* join'd together that we must judge philosophically of the *inward Nature*, the *secret Properties and Powers*, the *Causes and Effects*, the *Relations and Proportions* of a thousand corporeal Objects which surround us on Earth, or are placed at a Distance in the Heavens. If a Man on the one Hand confines himself only to *sensible Experiments*, and does not exercise *Reason* upon them, he may surprize himself and others with strange Appearances, and learn to entertain the World with Sights and Shews, but will never become a Philosopher: And on the other Hand, if a Man imprison himself in his Closet, and imploy the most exqui-



site Powers of *Reason* to find out the Nature of Things in the corporeal World, without the Use of his *Senses*, and the Practice of *Experiments*, he will frame to himself a Scheme of *Chimeras* instead of true Philosophy. Hence came the Invention of *substantial Forms* and *Qualities*, of *Materia Prima* and *Privation*, with all the insignificant Names used by the *Peripatetick* Writers; and 'twas for want of more Experiments that the Great *Descartes* fail'd in several Parts of his philosophical Writings.

In the *abstracted* and *speculative* Parts of the *Mathematicks*, which treat of *Quantity* and *Number*, the Faculty of *Reason* must be chiefly imploy'd to perceive the *Relation of various Quantities*, and draw certain and useful *Conclusions*; but it wants the Assistance of *Sense* also to be acquainted with *Lines*, *Angles* and *Figures*. And in *practical Mathematicks* our *Senses* have still greater Employment.

If we would judge of the *pure Properties and Actions of the Mind*, of the *Nature of Spirits*, their various  
Percep-

C. IV. *The right use of Reason.* 333

*Perceptions and Powers*, we must not enquire of our Eyes and our Ears, nor the Images or Shapes laid up in the Brain, but we must have recourse to our own *Consciousness* of what passes within our own Minds.

If we are to pass a Judgment upon any thing that relates to *Spirits in a State of Union with Animal Nature*, and the mixt Properties of *Sensation, Fancy, Appetite, Passion, Pleasure and Pain*, which arise thence, we must consult our own *Sensations* and the other Powers which we find in our selves consider'd as *Men or Creatures made up of a Mind and an Animal*; and by just *Reasonings* deduce proper Consequences, and improve our Knowledge in these Subjects.

If we have Occasion to judge concerning *Matters done in past Ages*, or in *distant Countries*, and where we our selves cannot be present, the Powers of *Sense and Reason* (for the most part) are not sufficient to inform us, and we must therefore have recourse to the *Testimony* of others; and this is either *Divine* or *Human*.

In

In Matters of *mere Human Prudence*, we shall find the greatest Advantage by making wise *Observations* on our own *Conduct*, and the *Conduct* of others, and a *Survey of the Events* attending such *Conduct*. *Experience* in this Case is equal to a *natural Sagacity*, or rather superior. A *Treasure of Observations and Experiences* collected by wise Men, is of admirable Service here. And perhaps there is nothing in the World of this kind equal to the sacred *Book of Proverbs*, even if we look on it as a mere Human Writing.

In Questions of *Natural Religion* we must exercise the Faculty of *Reason* which God has given us; and since he has been pleas'd to afford us *his Word*, we should confirm and improve or correct our Reasonings on this Subject by the Divine Assistance of the Bible.

In Matters of *Reveal'd Religion*, that is, *Christianity, Judaism, &c.* which we could never have known by the Light of Nature, the *Word of God* is our only Foundation and chief Light; tho' here our *Reason* must be us'd both to find out the true Meaning of God  
in



C. IV. *The right use of Reason.* 385

in his Word, and to derive just Inferences from what God has written, as well as to judge of the Credentials whereby *Divine Testimony* is distinguish'd from mere *Human Testimony*, or from *Imposture*.

As *Divine Revelation* can never contradict *Right Reason*, (for they are two great Lights given us by our Creator for our Conduct) so *Reason* ought by no Means to assume to itself a Power to contradict *Divine Revelation*.

Tho' *Revelation* be not contrary to *Reason*, yet there are four Cases wherein Matters of *Revelation* may be said to rise above, or go beyond our *Reason*.

1. When *Revelation* asserts two Things or Ideas to be joyned, whose Connexion or Agreement is not discoverable by Reason; as when Scripture informs us that *The Dead shall rise*, that *The Earth shall be burnt up*, and the *Man Christ Jesus shall return from Heaven*, none of these Things could ever be found out or prov'd by Reason.

2. When *Revelation* affirms any Proposition, while Reason has no clear and distinct Ideas of the Subject, or of the Predicate; as God created all Things

by Jesus Christ: By the Urim and Thummim God gave forth Divine Oracles. The Predicate of each of these Propositions is to us an obscure Idea.

3. *When Revelation, in plain and express Language, declares some Doctrine which our Reason at present knows not certainly how to reconcile to some of its own Principles; as, that the Child Jesus is the mighty God, Esa. ix. 6.* which carries a seeming Opposition to the Unity and Spirituality of the Godhead, which are Principles of Reason.

4. *When two Propositions or Doctrines are asserted by Divine Revelation, which our Reason at present knows not well how to reconcile with one another; as, The Father is the only true God, John xvii. 3. and yet Christ is over all God blessed for ever, Rom. ix. 5.*

Now Divine Revelation having declared these Propositions, Reason is bound to receive them, because it cannot prove them to be utterly inconsistent or impossible, tho' the Ideas of them may be obscure, tho' we ourselves see not the rational Connexion of them, and tho' we know not certainly how to reconcile

C. IV. *The right use of Reason.* 387

cile them. In these Cases *Reason* must submit to *Faith*; we are bound to believe what God asserts, and wait till he shall clear up that which seems dark and difficult, and till the *Mysteries of Faith* shall be further explained to us either in this World or in the World to come\*.

VII<sup>th</sup> *Direction.* 'Tis very useful to have some general Principles of Truth settled in the Mind, whose Evidence is great and obvious, that they may be always ready at Hand to assist us in judging of the great Variety of Things which occur. These may be called *first Notions*, or *Fundamental Principles*; for though many of them are deduced from each other, yet most or all of them may be called *Principles* when compared with a thousand other Judgments which we form under the Regulation and Influence of these primary Propositions.

Every Art and Science, as well as the Affairs of civil Life and Religion, have peculiar Principles of this kind belong-

---

\* See something more on this Subject, Chap. V. Sect. 6.



ing to them. There are *Metaphysical, Physical, Mathematical, Political, Oeconomical, Medicinal, Theological, Moral* and *Prudential* Principles of Judgment. It would be too tedious to give a Specimen of them all in this Place. Those which are of the most universal Use to us both as *Men* and as *Christians*, may be found in the following Chapter among the *Rules of Judgment about particular Objects*.

VIII<sup>th</sup> *Direction*. Let the *Degrees of your Assent to every Proposition bear an exact Proportion to the different Degrees of Evidence*. Remember this is one of the greatest Principles of Wisdom that Man can arrive at in this World, and the best human Security against dangerous Mistakes in Speculation or Practice.

In the Nature of Things of which our Knowledge is made up there is infinite Variety in their Degrees of Evidence. And as God hath given our Minds a Power to suspend their Assent till the Evidence be plain, so we have a Power to receive Things which are proposed to us with a stronger or weaker Belief in  
infinite

C. IV. *The right use of Reason.* 389

infinite Variety of Degrees proportionable to their Evidence. I believe that *the Planets are inhabited*, and I believe that *the Earth rolls amongst them yearly round the Sun*; but I don't believe both these Propositions with an equal Firmness of Assent, because the Arguments for the Latter are drawn from *Mathematical Observations*; but the Arguments for the Former are but *probable Conjectures* and *moral Reasonings*. Yet neither do I believe either of these Propositions so firmly, as I do that *the Earth is about twenty four thousand Miles round*, because the *Mathematical* Proof of this is much easier, plainer and stronger. And yet further, when I say that *the Earth was created by the Power of God*, I have still a more infallible Assurance of this than of all the Rest, because *Reason* and *Scripture* joyn to assure me of it.

IX<sup>th</sup> *Direction.* *Keep your Mind always open to receive Truth, and never set Limits to your own Improvements.* Be ready always to hear what may be objected even against your Favourite Opinions, and those which have had long-

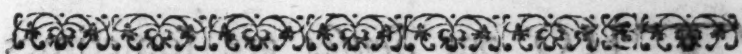
est Possession of your Assent. And if there should be any new and uncontrollable Evidence brought against these old or beloved Sentiments, don't wink your Eyes fast against the Light, but part with any Thing for the Sake of Truth: Remember when you overcome an Error you gain Truth; the Victory is on your Side, and the Advantage is all your own.

I confess those *grand Principles of Belief and Practice* which universally influence our Conduct both with Regard to this Life and the Life to come, should be supposed to be well settled in the first Years of our Studies, such as, *the Existence and Providence of God, the Truth of Christianity, the Authority of Scripture, the great Rules of Morality, &c.* We should avoid a light fluttering Genius, ever ready to change our Foundations, and to be *carried about with every Wind of Doctrine*. To guard against which Inconvenience, we should labour with earnest Diligence and fervent Prayer, that our most fundamental and important Points of Belief and Practice may be establish'd upon just  
Grounds



C. V. *The right use of Reason.* 391

Grounds of *Reason* and *Scripture* when we come to Years of Discretion, and fit to judge for ourselves in such important Points. Yet since it is possible that the Folly or Prejudices of younger Years may have establish'd Persons in some mistaken Sentiments, even in very important Matters, we should always hold ourselves ready to receive any new Advantage toward the Correction or Improvement even of our *Establish'd Principles*, as well as *Opinions* of lesser Moment.



C H A P. V.

*Special Rules to direct us in judging of particular Objects.*



WOULD be endless to run through all those particular Objects concerning which we have Occasion to pass a Judgment at one Time or another. Things of the most frequent Occurrence, of the widest Extent, and of the greatest Im-

portance, are the Objects and Exercises of *Sense*, of *Reason* and *Speculation*, the Matters of *Morality*, *Religion* and *Prudence*, of *human* and *divine Testimony*, together with the *Essays of Reasoning upon Things past and future*. Special Rules relating to all these will be the Subject of the following Sections.

---

## S E C T. I.

*Principles and Rules of Judgment concerning the Objects of Sense.*

**T**H O' our *Senses* are sometimes liable to be deceived, yet when they are rightly *disposed*, and fitly exercised about their *proper Objects*, with the just Assistance of *Reason*, they give us sufficient Evidence of Truth.

This may be prov'd by an Argument drawn from the *Wisdom*, *Goodness*, and *Faithfulness of God our Creator*. 'Twas he gave us our *Senses*, and he would not make us of such a Constitution as to be liable to perpetual Deception and unavoidable Error in using these Faculties of *Sense* in the best Manner we are capable

pable of, about these **very** Things which are the proper Objects of them.

This may be proved also by the *ill Consequences that would follow from the Supposition of the contrary*. If we could have no Certainty of the Dictates of our Senses, we could never be sure of any of the common Affairs and Occurrences of Life. Men could not transact any of their *civil* or *moral* Concerns with any Certainty or Justice; nor indeed could we eat or drink, walk or move with Safety. Our *Senses* direct us in all these.

Again, the *Matters of Religion* depend in some Measure, upon the Certainty of the *Dictates of Sense*; for *Faith comes by Hearing*; and 'tis to our Senses that God appeals in *working Miracles* to prove his own Revelation. Now if when our Eyes and Ears, and other Organs of Sense are rightly dispos'd and exercis'd about their proper Objects, they were always liable to be deceived, there could be no Knowledge of the Gospel, no Proof of divine Revelation by Visions, Voices, or Miracles.

Our Senses will discover Things near us and round about us, which are ne-



cessary for our present State with sufficient Exactness, and Things distant also, so far as they relate to our necessary Use of them,

Nor is there need of any more accurate *Rules* for the Use of our Senses in the Judgment of all the *common Affairs of Life*, or even of *miraculous and divine Operations*, than the vulgar Part of Mankind are sufficiently acquainted with by Nature, and by their own daily Observations.

But if we would express these *Rules* in a more exact Manner, *how to judge by the Dictates of our Senses*, they should be represented thus;

1. We must take Care that the *Organs of our Sense* be rightly disposed, and not under the Power of any Distemper or considerable Decay; as for Instance, that our *Eyes* are not tinctured with the *Jaundice*, when we would judge of *Colours*, lest we pronounce them all yellow: That our *Hands* are not burning in a *Fever*, nor benum'd with *Frost* or the *Palsy*, when we would judge of the *Heat* or *Coldness* of any Object: That our *Palate* be not vitiated by any *Disease*, or by some other *improper Taste*, when we would judge of the true *Taste* of any Solid or Liquid. This Direction relates to *all our Senses*, but the following Rules chiefly refer to our *Sight*.

2. We must observe whether the *Object* be at a proper Distance, for if it be too near or too far off, our *Eyes* will not sufficiently distinguish many Things which are properly the Objects of *Sight*; and therefore  
(if

**C.V.S. I. *The right use of Reason.* 395**

(if possible) we must make nearer Approaches to the Object, or remove farther from it, till we have obtained that due Distance which gives us the clearest Perception.

3. We must not employ our Sight to take a full Survey at once of *Objects that are too large for it*, but we must view them by Parts, and then judge of the Whole: Nor must our Senses judge of *Objects too small*; for some Things which appear thro' Glasses to be really and distinctly existent, are either utterly invisible, or greatly confus'd when we would judge of them by the naked Eye.

4. We must place *ourselves* in such a *Position toward the Object*, or place the *Object* in such a *Position toward our Eye*, as may give us the clearest Representation of it; for a different Position greatly alters the Appearance of the Shape of Bodies.

5. We must consider what the *Medium* is by which *Objects are represented* to our Senses; whether it be thinner or thicker; whether it be Air, or Vapor, or Water, or Glass, &c. whether it be duly inlightned or dusky; whether it reflect, or refract, or only transmit the Appearance of the Object; and whether it be tinctur'd with any particular Colour; whether it be moving or at Rest.

6. We must sometimes use *other Helps* to assist our Senses; and if we make use of *Glasses*, we must make all just Allowances for the Thickness or Thinness of them, for the Clearness or Dulness, for the Smoothness or Roughness, for the Plainness, the Convexity or Concavity of them, and for the Distance at which these Glasses are placed from the Eye, or from the Object, (or from one another, if there be two or more Glasses used) and all this according to the Rules of Art. The same sort of Caution should be used also in *Mediums* which assist the Hearing, such as *Speaking Trumpets*, *Hearing Trumpets*, &c.

7. If the Object may be proposed to *more Senses than one*, let us call in the Assistance of some other Senses to examine it, and this will increase the Evidence of

what one Sense dictates. *Ex. gr.* Our *Ear* may assist our *Eye* in judging of the Distance of Bodies, which are both visible and sonorous, as an *exploded Canon*, or a *Cloud charg'd with Thunder*. Our *Feeling* may assist our *Sight* in judging of the Kind, the Shape, Situation or Distance of Bodies that are near at Hand, as whether a *Garment* be *Silk* or *Stuff*, &c. So if I both *see*, *bear*, and *embrace my Friend*, I am sure he is present.

8. We should also make *several Trials*, at some distant Times, and in different Circumstances, comparing former Experiments with later, and our own Observations with those of other Persons.

'Tis by such Methods as these that *modern Philosophy* has been so greatly improved by the use of *sensible Experiments*.

## SECT. II.

### *Principles and Rules of Judgment in Matters of Reason and Speculation.*

**T**IS by *Reason* we judge both in Matters of *Speculation* and *Practice*; there are peculiar *Rules* which relate to Things *practical*, whether they be Matters of *Religion*, *Morality* or *Prudence*, yet many Things in this Section may be apply'd to *practical Enquiries*, and Matters of *Faith*, tho' it chiefly relates to *Knowledge* or *Speculations* of Reason.

I. What-



C.V.S.2. *The right use of Reason.* 397

1. Whatsoever Ideas we can joyn together without Inconsistency, are to be counted *possible*, because Almighty Power can make whatsoever we can conceive.

2. From the mere *Possibility* of a Thing we cannot infer its *actual Existence*; nor from the *Non-Existence* of it can we infer its *Impossibility*.

3. Whatsoever is evidently contained in the Idea of any thing, may be affirmed of that thing with Certainty. *Reason* is contained in the Idea of a *Man*; and *Existence* is contained in the Idea of *God*; and therefore we may affirm *God exists*, and *Man is reasonable*.

4. 'Tis impossible that the same Thing should be, and not be at the same Time, and in the same Respect. Thence it follows, that *two contradictory Ideas cannot be joyned in the same Part of the same Subject, at the same Time, and in the same Respects*: Or, that *two contradictory Propositions can never be both true*.

5. The more we converse with any *Subject in its various Properties*, the better Knowledge of it we are likely to attain; and by frequent and repeated Enquiries and Experiments, Reasonings and Conversations about it, we confirm our true Judgments of that Thing, and correct our former Mistakes.

6. Yet after our utmost Enquiries, we can never be assur'd by Reason, that we know *all the Powers and Properties* of any *finite Being*.

7. If *finite Beings* are not adequately known by us, much less are Things *infinite*: For it is of the Nature of a *finite Mind* not to be able to comprehend what is *infinite*.

8. We may judge and argue very justly and certainly concerning *Infinities*, in some Parts of them, or so far as our Ideas reach, tho' the *Infinity* of them hath something incomprehensible in it. And this is built on the *general Rule* following (*viz.*)

9. Whatsoever is sufficiently clear and evident, ought not to be deny'd, tho' there are other things belonging to the same Subject which cannot be comprehended. I may affirm many Things with Certainty concerning

cerning *human Souls, their Union with Bodies, concerning the Divisibility of Matter, and the Attributes of God, tho' many other Things relating to them are all Darkeness to us.*

10. If an Opinion propos'd has either *no Arguments, or equal Arguments* for and against it, we must remain in perfect Suspense about it, till convincing Evidence appear on one Side.

11. Where present Necessity of Action does not constrain us to determine, we should not immediately yield up our Assent to mere *probable Arguments*, without a due Reserve, if we have any reasonable Hope of attaining greater Light and Evidence on one Side or the other: For when the Balance of the Judgment once resigns its *Equilibrium or Neutrality* to a mere probable Argument, it is too ready to settle itself on that Side, so that the Mind will not easily change that Judgment, tho' bright and strong Evidence appear afterwards on the other Side.

12. Of two Opinions if one has *unanswerable Difficulties* attending it, we must not reject it immediately, till we examine whether the contrary Opinion has not *Difficulties as unanswerable.*

13. If each Opinion has *Objections* against it which we cannot answer, or reconcile, we should rather embrace that which has the *least Difficulties* in it, and which has the *best Arguments* to support it: And let our Assent bear Proportion to the superior Evidence.

14. If any Doctrine hath very strong and *sufficient Light and Evidence* to command our Assent, we should not reject it because there is an *Objection or two* against it which we are not able to answer; for upon this Foot a common Christian would be baffled out of every *Article of his Faith*, and must renounce even the *Dictates of his Reason and his Senses*; and the most learned Man perhaps would hold but very few of them fast; for some Objections which attend the sacred Doctrines of the *Eternity and the Omnipresence of God*, and the philosophical

## C.V.S.2. *The right use of Reason.* 399

Iosophical Doctrines of *Light, Atoms, Space, Motion, &c.* are hardly solvable to this Day.

15. Where two *Extremes* are proposed either in Matters of Speculation or Practice, and neither of them has *certain and convincing Evidence*, it is generally safest to take the *middle Way*. *Moderation* is more likely to come near the Truth than *doubtful Extremes*. This is an excellent Rule to judge of the *Characters* and *Value* of the greatest Part of *Persons* and *Things*; for Nature seldom deals in *Superlatives*. 'Tis a good Rule also by which to form our Judgment in many *speculative Controversies*; a *reconciling Medium* in such Cases does often best secure Truth as well as Peace.

16. When two different Propositions have each a *very strong and cogent Evidence*, and do not plainly appear inconsistent, we may believe both of them, tho' we cannot at present see the Way to reconcile them. *Reason*, as well as our own *Consciousness*, assures us that the *Will of Man* is free, and that *Multitudes of human Actions* are in that *Respect* contingent; and yet *Reason* and *Scripture* assure us that *God foreknows them all*, and this implies a *necessary Futurity*. Now tho' learned Men have not to this Day hit on any clear and happy Method to reconcile these Propositions, yet since we do not see a *plain Inconsistency* in them, we justly believe them both, because their *Evidence* is great.

17. Let us not therefore too suddenly determine in difficult Matters that two Things are *utterly inconsistent*: For there are many Propositions which may appear *inconsistent* at first, and yet afterwards we find their *Consistency*, and the Way of reconciling them may be made plain and easy: As also, there are other Propositions which may appear *consistent* at first, but after due Examination we find their *Inconsistency*.

18. For the same Reason we should not call those Difficulties *utterly insolvable*, or those Objections *unanswerable*, which we are not presently able to answer: Time and Diligence may give further Light.

19. In short, if we will secure ourselves from Error, we should not be too frequent or hasty in asserting



ing the certain *Consistency* or *Inconsistency*, the absolute *Unrversality*, *Necessity*, or *Impossibility* of Things; where there is not the brightest Evidence. He is but a young and raw Philosopher, who when he sees two particular Ideas *evidently agree*, immediately asserts them to agree *universally*, to agree *necessarily*, and that it is *impossible it should be otherwise*: Or when he sees *evidently* two particular Ideas *disagree*, he presently asserts their *natural Inconsistency*, their *utter Impossibility* of Agreement, and calls every thing contrary to his Opinion *Absurdity* and *Nonsense*. A true Philosopher will affirm or deny with much Caution and Modesty, unless he has thoroughly examined and found the Evidence of every Part of his Assertion exceeding plain.

20. Let us have a Care of building our Assurance of any *important* Point of Doctrine upon *one single Argument*, if there are more to be obtained. We should not slight and reject all other Arguments which support the same Doctrine, lest if our *favourite Argument* should be refuted, and fail us, we should be tempted to abandon that *important* Principle of Truth. I think this was a very culpable Practice in *Descartes*, and some of his Followers, who when he had found out the Argument for the *Existence of God*, derived from the *Idea of a most perfect and self-existent Being*, he seemed to despise, cancel, and abandon all other Arguments against *Atheism*.

21. If we happen to have our *chief Arguments* for any Opinion refuted, we should not immediately give up the *Opinion* itself; for perhaps it may be a Truth still, and we may find it to be justly supported by other Arguments, which we might once think weaker, or perhaps by new Arguments which we knew not before.

22. We ought to esteem that to be *sufficient Evidence of a Proposition*, where both the *Kind and the Force* of the Arguments or Proofs are as great as the Nature of the Thing admits, and as the *Necessity* or *Exigence* of the Case requires. So if we have a *credible and certain Testimony* that *Christ rose from the Dead*, 'tis enough; we  
are

C.V.S.3. *The right use of Reason.* 401

are not to expect *mathematical* or *ocular Demonstrations* for it, at least in our Day.

23. Tho' we should seek what Proofs may be attained of any Proposition, and we should receive any Number of Arguments which are just and evident for the Confirmation of the same Truth, yet we must not judge of the Truth of any Proposition by the *Number of Arguments* which are brought to support it, but by the *Strength and Weight of them*: A Building will stand firmer and longer on four large Pillars of Marble, than on ten of Sand, or Earth, or Timber.

24. Yet where certain Evidence is not to be found or expected, a considerable *Number of probable Arguments* carry great Weight with them even in Matters of Speculation. That is a *probable Hypothesis* in *Philosophy* or in *Theology*, which goes farthest toward the Solution of many difficult Questions arising on any Subject.

---

SECT. III.

*Principles and Rules of Judgment in  
Matters of Morality and Religion.*

HERE it may be proper in the first Place to mention a few Definitions of Words or Terms.

By Matters of *Morality and Religion*, I mean those things which relate to our Duty to God, our Selves, or our Fellow-Creatures.

*Moral*

*Moral Good*, or *Vertue*, or *Holiness*, is an Action or Temper conformable to the Rule of our Duty. *Moral Evil*, or *Vice*, or *Sin*, is an Action or Temper unconformable to the Rule of our Duty, or a Neglect to fulfil it.

Note the Words *Vice* or *Vertue* imply the Relation of our Actions to Men and this World: *Sin* and *Holiness* rather imply their Relation to God and the other World.

*Natural Good* is that which gives us Pleasure or Satisfaction. *Natural Evil* is that which gives us Pain or Grief.

*Happiness* consists in the Attainment of the highest and most lasting Natural Good. *Misery* consists in suffering the highest and most lasting natural Evil; that is in short, *Heaven* or *Hell*.

I proceed now to lay down some *Principles and Rules of Judgment in Matters of Morality and Religion*.

1. The Will of our Maker, whether discovered by Reason or Revelation, carries the highest Authority with it, and is therefore the *highest Rule of Duty* to intelligent Creatures; a Conformity or Non-Conformity to it, determines their Actions to be *morally good* or *evil*.

2. Whatsoever is really an *immediate Duty* toward our selves or toward our Fellow-Creatures, is *more remotely* a Duty to God; and therefore in the Practice of  
it



### C.V.S.3. *The right use of Reason.* 403

it we should have an Eye to the *Will* of God as our *Rule*, and to his *Glory* as our *End*.

3. Our wise and gracious Creator has closely united *our Duty* and *our Happiness* together; and has connected *Sin*, or *Vice*, and *Punishment*; that is, he has ordained that the *highest natural Good and Evil* should have a close Connexion with *moral Good and Evil*, and that both in the Nature of Things, and by his own positive Appointment.

4. Conscience should seek all due Information in order to determine what is *Duty*, and what is *Sin*, because *Happiness* and *Misery* depend upon it.

5. On this Account our Inclination to *present temporal Good*, and our Aversion to *present temporal Evil*, must be wisely overbalanced by the Consideration of *future and eternal Good or Evil*, that is, *Happiness* or *Misery*. And for this Reason we should not omit a Duty, or commit a Sin, to gain any temporal Good, or to avoid any temporal Evil.

6. Though our *natural Reason* in a *State of Innocence* might be sufficient to find out those Duties which were necessary for an innocent Creature, in order to *abide* in the Favour of his Maker, yet in a *fallen State* our *natural Reason* is by no means sufficient to find out all that is necessary to *restore* a sinful Creature to the divine Favour.

7. Therefore God hath condescended in various Ages of Mankind to reveal to sinful Men what he requires of them in order to their *Restoration*, and has appointed in his Word some peculiar Matters of Faith and Practice, in order to their Salvation. This is called *revealed Religion*, as the Things knowable concerning God, and our Duty by the Light of Nature are called *natural Religion*.

8. There are also many Parts of *Morality*, and *natural Religion*, or many natural Duties relating to God, to our selves, and to our Neighbours, which would be exceeding difficult and tedious for the Bulk of Mankind to find out and determine by *natural Reason*; therefore it has pleased God in this sacred Book of *Divine Revelation*.

*lation* to express the most necessary Duties of this kind in a very plain and easy Manner, and made them intelligible to Souls of the lowest Capacity; or they may be very easily derived thence by the Use of Reason.

9. As there are some Duties much more *necessary*, and more *important* than others are, so every Duty requires our Application to understand and practise it in Proportion to its *Necessity* and *Importance*.

10. Where two Duties seem to stand in Opposition to each other, and we cannot practise both, the *less* must give Way to the *greater*, and the Omission of the *less* is not sinful. So *ceremonial Laws* give Way to *moral*: God will have Mercy and not Sacrifice.

11. In Duties of *natural Religion*, we may judge of the different Degrees of their Necessity and Importance by *Reason*, according to their greater or more apparent Tendency to the Honour of God and the Good of Men: But in Matters of *reveal'd Religion*, 'tis only *divine Revelation* can certainly inform us what is most necessary and most important; yet we may be assisted also in that Search by the Exercises of Reason.

12. In Actions wherein there may be *some Scruple* about the *Duty* or *Lawfulness* of them, we should choose always the *safest Side*, and abstain as far as we can from the Practice of Things whose Lawfulness we suspect.

13. Points of the *greatest Importance* in human Life, or in Religion, are generally the *most evident*, both in the Nature of Things, and in the Word of God; and where Points of Faith or Practice are *exceeding difficult* to find out, they cannot be *exceeding important*. This Proposition may be proved by the Goodness and Faithfulness of God, as well as by Experience and Observation.

14. In some of the outward Practices and Forms of Religion, as well as human Affairs, there is frequently a *present Necessity of speedy Action* one Way or another: In such a Case, having surveyed Arguments on both Sides, as far as our Time and Circumstances admit, we must guide our Practice by *those Reasons which appear*  
most

#### C.V.S.4 *The right use of Reason.* 405

*most probable*, and seem at that Time to *overbalance* the rest; yet always reserving Room to admit further Light and Evidence, when such Occurrences return again. 'Tis a *Preponderation of circumstantial Arguments* that must determine our Actions in a thousand Occurrences.

15. We may also determine upon *probable Arguments* where the Matter is of *small Consequence*, and would not answer the Trouble of seeking after *Certainty*. Life and Time are more precious than to have a large Share of them laid out in scrupulous Enquiries, whether *smoaking Tobacco*, or *wearing a Periwig* be lawful or no.

16. In Affairs of *greater Importance*, and which may have a long and lasting, and extensive Influence on our future Conduct or Happiness, we should not take up with *Probabilities*, if *Certainty* may be attained. Where there is any Doubt on the Mind, in such Cases we should call in the Assistance of all manner of Circumstances, Reasons, Motives, Consequences on all Sides: We must wait longer, and with earnest Request seek human and divine Advice before we fully determine our Judgment and our Practice, according to the old Roman Sentence, *Quod statuendum est semel, deliberandum est diu.*

---

#### S E C T. IV.

##### *Principles and Rules of Judgment in Matters of human Prudence.*

THE great Design of *Prudence*, as distinct from *Morality* and *Religion*, is to determine and manage every Affair with Decency, and to the best Advantage.

That



That is *decent*, which is agreeable to our State, Condition, or Circumstances, whether it be in Behaviour, Discourse, or Action,

That is *advantageous*, which attains the most and best Purposes, and avoids the most and greatest Inconveniencies.

As there is infinite Variety in the *Circumstances of Persons, Things, Actions, Times and Places*, so we must be furnish'd with such *general Rules* as are accommodable to all this Variety by a wise Judgment and Discretion: For what is an Act of *consummate Prudence* in some *Times, Places and Circumstances*, would be *consummate Folly* in others. Now these *Rules* may be ranged in the following Manner.

1. Our Regard to Persons or Things should be governed by the *Degree of Concernment* we have with them, the *Relation* we have to them, or the *Expectation* we have from them. These should be the Measures by which we should proportion our Diligence and Application in any thing that relates to them.

2. We should always consider whether the Thing we pursue be *attainable*; whether it be *worthy our Pursuit*; whether it be *worthy the Degree of Pursuit*; whether it be *worthy of the Means* used in order to attain it. This Rule is necessary both in Matters of *Knowledge*, and Matters of *Practice*.

3. When the *Advantages and Disadvantages, Conveniencies and Inconveniencies* of any Action are balanc'd together,

#### C.V.S.4. *The right use of Reason.* 407

ther, we must finally determine on that Side which has the superior Weight ; and the sooner in things which are necessarily and speedily to be done or determined.

4. If *Advantages* and *Disadvantages* in their own Nature are equal, then those which are most *certain* or *likely as to the Event*, should turn the Scale of our Judgment, and determine our Practice.

5. Where the *Improbabilities* of Success or Advantage are greater than the *Probabilities*, it is not Prudence to act or venture. 'Tis proper to enquire whether this be not the Case in almost all *Lotteries* ; for they that hold Stakes will certainly secure Part to themselves ; and only the Remainder being divided into Prizes must render the *Improbability of Gain* to each Adventurer greater than the *Probability*.

6. We should not despise or neglect any *real Advantage*, and abandon the Pursuit of it, though we cannot attain all the Advantages that we desire. This would be to act like *Children*, who are fond of something which strikes their Fancy most, and sullen and regardless of every thing else, if they are not humour'd in that Fancy.

7. Tho' a *general Knowledge* of Things be useful in Science and in human Life, yet we should content ourselves with a more superficial Knowledge of those things which have the least Relation to our chief End and Design.

8. This Rule holds good also in *Matters of Business* and *Practice*, as well as in *Matters of Knowledge* ; and therefore we should not grasp at every thing, lest in the End we attain nothing. Persons that either by an Inconstancy of Temper, or by a vain Ambition, will pursue every Sort of Art and Science, Study and Business, seldom grow excellent in any one of them : And *Projectors* who form twenty Schemes, seldom use sufficient Application to finish one of them, or make it turn to good Account.

9. Take Heed of delaying and trifling amongst the *Means* instead of reaching at the *End*. Take heed of wasting a Life in mere *speculative Studies*, which is called

led to *Action* and *Employment*: Dwell not too long in *philosophical, mathematical, or grammatical* Parts of Learning, when your chief Delign is *Law, Physick, or Divinity*. Don't spend the Day in gathering Flowers by the Way Side, lest Night come upon you before you arrive at your Journey's End, and then you will not reach it.

10. Where the *Case and Circumstances of wise and good Men* resemble *our own Case and Circumstances*, we may borrow a great deal of Instruction toward our prudent Conduct from their *Example*, as well as in all Cases we may learn much from their *Conversation and Advice*.

11. After all other *Rules* remember this, that *mere Speculation* in Matters of *human Prudence* can never be a perfect Director without *Experience and Observation*. We may be content therefore in our younger Years to commit some unavoidable Mistakes in Point of Prudence, and we shall see Mistakes enough in the Conduct of others, both which ought to be treasur'd up amongst our useful *Observations*, in order to teach us better Judgment for Time to come. Sometimes the *Mistakes, Imprudences and Follies* which ourselves or others have been guilty of, give us brighter and more effectual Lessons of *Prudence*, than the wisest *Counsels*, and the fairest *Examples* could ever have done.

## SECT. V.

### *Principles and Rules of Judgment in Matters of human Testimony.*

THE Evidence of *human Testimony* is not so proper to lead us into the Knowledge of the *Essence* and  
*inward*



*inward Nature* of Things, as to acquaint us with the *Existence* of Things, and to inform us of *Matters of Fact* both past and present. And tho' there be a great deal of Fallibility in the Testimony of Men, yet there are some Things we may be almost as certain of, as that *the Sun shines*, or that *five Twenties make a Hundred*. Who is there at *London* that knows any thing of the World, but believes there is such a City as *Paris* in *France*; that *the Pope dwells at Rome*, that *Julius Cesar was an Emperor*, or that *Luther had a great Hand in the Reformation*?

If we observe the following Rules, we may arrive at such a *Certainty* in many Things of human Testimony, as that 'tis *morally* impossible we should be deceived, *i. e.* we may obtain a *moral Certainty*.

1. Let us consider whether the Thing reported be in itself *possible*; if not, it can never be *credible*, who-soever relates it.

2. Consider farther whether it be *probable*, whether there are any *concurring Circumstances* to prove it, beside the mere Testimony of the Person that relates it. I confess if these last Conditions are wanting, the thing may be true, but then it ought to have the stronger Testimony to support it.

3. Consider whether the Person who relates it be *capable of knowing the Truth*: Whether he be a *skilful* Judge in such Matters, if it be a *Business of Art*, or a *nice Appearance in Nature*, or some *curious Experiment in Philosophy*. But if it be a mere *Occurrence in Life*, a *plain, sensible Matter of Fact*, 'tis enough to enquire whether he who relates it were an *Eye or Ear-Witness*, or whether he himself had it only by *Hear-say*, or can trace it up to the *Original*.

4. Consider whether the Narrator be *honest* and *faithful*, as well as *skilful*: Whether he hath *no Bias* upon his Mind, *no peculiar Gain or Profit* by believing or reporting it, *no Interest or Principle* which might warp his own Belief aside from Truth, or which might tempt him to prevaricate, to speak falsely, or to give a Representation a little different from the naked Truth of Things. In short, whether there be no *Occasion of Suspicion* concerning his Report.

5. Consider whether *several Persons agree together in the Report of this Matter*; and if so, then whether these Persons who joyn'd together in their Testimony, might not be suppos'd to *combine together in a Falshood*. Whether they are Persons of *sufficient Skill, Probity and Credit*. It might be also enquired whether they are of different Nations, Sects, Parties, Opinions, or Interests. For the more divided they are in all these, the more likely is their Report to be true, if they agree together in their Account of the same Thing; and especially if they persist in it without wavering.

6. Consider further, whether the Report were *capable of being easily refuted at first* if it had not been true; if so, this confirms the Testimony.

7. Enquire yet again, whether there hath been a *constant, uniform Tradition and Belief* of this Matter from the very first Age or Time when the Thing was transacted, without any reasonable Doubts or Contradictions. Or,

8. If any Part of it hath been doubted by any considerable Persons, whether it has been *searched out and afterwards confirmed*, by having all the Scruples and Doubts

## C.V.S.5. *The right use of Reason.* 411

Doubts removed. In either of these Cases the Testimony becomes more firm and credible.

9. Enquire on the other Hand, whether there are any *considerable Objections remaining* against the Belief of that Proposition so attested. Whether there be any thing very *improbable* in the thing itself. Whether any *concurrent Circumstances* seem to *oppose* it. Whether any Person or Persons give a *positive and plain Testimony against it*. Whether they are *equally skilful, and equally faithful* as those who assert it. Whether they be as many or more in Number, and whether they might have any secret Bias or Influence on them to contradict it.

10. Sometimes the *entire Silence of a Thing* may have something of Weight toward Decision of a doubtful Point of History, or a Matter of human Faith, (*viz.*) Where the Fact is pretended to be publick, if the Persons who are silent about it were skilful to observe; and could not but know such an Occurrence; if they were engaged by Principle or by Interest to have declared it; if they had fair Opportunity to speak of it: And these Things may tend to make a Matter suspicious, if it be not very well attested by positive Proof.

11. Remember that in some Reports there are *more Marks of Falshood than of Truth*, and in others there are *more Marks of Truth than of Falshood*. By a Comparison of all these things together, and putting every Argument on one Side, and the other into the Balance, we must form as good a Judgment as we can which Side preponderates; and give a strong or a feeble Assent or Dissent, or withhold our Judgment entirely, according to *greater or lesser Evidence*, according to more plain or dubious Marks of Truth or Falshood.

12. Observe that in Matters of human Testimony, there is oftentimes a *great Mixture of Truth with Falshood* in the Report itself: Some Parts of the Story may be perfectly true, and some utterly false; and some may have such a blended Confusion of Circumstances which are a little warpt aside from the Truth, and misrepresented, that there is need of good Skill and



Accuracy to form a Judgment concerning them, and determine which Part is true, and which is false. The *whole* Report is not to be believed, because some Parts are *indubitably true*, nor the *whole* to be rejected, because some Parts are as *evident Falshoods*.

We may draw two remarkable *Observations* from this *Section*.

*Observ.* I. How certain is the Truth of the *Christian Religion*, and particularly of the *Resurrection of Christ*, which is a Matter of Fact on which *Christianity* is built! We have almost all the concurrent Evidences that can be derived from *human Testimony* joining to confirm this glorious Truth. The Fact is not impossible; concurrent Circumstances cast a favourable Aspect on it; it was foretold by one who wrought Miracles, and therefore not unlikely, nor unexpected: The Apostles and first Disciples were Eye and Ear-Witnesses, for they conversed with their risen Lord; they were the most plain, honest Men in themselves; the Temptations of worldly Interests did rather discourage their Belief and Report of it: They all agree in this Matter, tho' they were Men of different Characters; *Pharisees* and *Fishermen*, and *Publicans*, Men of *Judea* and

C.V.S.5. *The right use of Reason.* 413

and *Galilee*, and perhaps some *Heathens*, who were early converted: The Thing might easily have been disproved if it were false; it hath been conveyed by constant Tradition and Writing down to our Times; those who at first doubted, were afterwards convinced by certain Proofs; nor have any pretended to give any Proof of the contrary, but merely deny'd the Fact with Impudence in Opposition to all these Evidences.

*Observ. II.* How weak is the Faith which is due to a Multitude of things in antient human History! For tho' many of these *Criteria*, or Marks of Credibility are found plainly in the *general and publick Facts*, yet as to a Multitude of *Particulars*, how deficient are they in such Evidence as should demand our Assent? Perhaps there is nothing that ever was done in all past Ages, and which was not a publick Fact, so well attested as the Resurrection of Christ.

## SECT. VI.

*Principles and Rules of Judgment in  
Matters of divine Testimony.*

**A**S *human Testimony* acquaints us with *Matters of Fact*, both *past* and *present*, which lye beyond the Reach of our own personal Notice, so *divine Testimony* is suited to inform us both of the *Nature of Things*, as well as *Matters of Fact*, and of Things *future*, as well as *present* or *past*.

Whatsoever is dictated to us by God himself, or by Men who are divinely inspired, must be believed with full Assurance. *Reason* demands us to believe whatsoever *divine Revelation* dictates: For God is perfectly *wise*, and cannot be deceived; he is *faithful* and *good*, and will not deceive his Creatures: And when *Reason* has found out the certain Marks or Credentials of *divine Testimony* to belong to any Proposition, there remains then no further Enquiry to be made, but only to find out the *true Sense and Meaning* of that which  
God



C.V.S.6. *The right use of Reason.* 415

God has revealed, for *Reason* itself demands the Belief of it.

Now *divine Testimony* or *Revelation* requires these following *Credentials*.

1. That the Propositions or Doctrines revealed be not *inconsistent with Reason*, for intelligent Creatures can never be bound to believe real inconsistencies. Therefore we are sure the Popish Doctrine of *Transubstantiation* is not a Matter of *divine Revelation*, because 'tis contrary to all our *Senses*, and our *Reason*, even in their proper Exercises.

God can dictate nothing but what is worthy of himself, and agreeable to his own Nature and divine Perfections. Now many of these Perfections are discoverable by the Light of *Reason*, and whatsoever is inconsistent with these Perfections, cannot be a *divine Revelation*. But let it be noted that in *Matters of Practice towards our Fellow-Creatures*, God may command us to act in a Manner contrary to what Reason would direct antecedent to that Command. So *Abraham* was commanded to offer up his Son a Sacrifice: The *Israelites* were ordered to borrow of the *Egyptians* without paying them, and to plunder and slay the Inhabitants of *Canaan*: Because God has a sovereign Right to all Things, and can with Equity dispossess his Creatures of Life, and every Thing which he has given them, and especially such sinful Creatures as Mankind; and he can appoint whom he pleases to be the Instruments of this just Dispossession or Deprivation. So that these divine Commands are not really *inconsistent with right Reason*; for whatsoever is so cannot be believed where that *Inconsistency* appears.

2. Upon the same Account the whole Doctrine of *Revelation* must be consistent with itself; every Part of it must be consistent with each other: And though in Points of *Practice* latter Revelation may repeal or cancel former divine Laws, yet in Matters of *Belief* no latter

latter Revelation can be inconsistent with what has been heretofore revealed.

3. Divine Revelation must be confirmed by some *divine and supernatural Appearances*, some extraordinary *Signs or Tokens, Visions, Voices, or Miracles* wrought, or *Prophecies* fulfilled. There must be some Demonstrations of the Presence and Power of God, superior to all the Powers of Nature, or the settled Connection which God as Creator, has established among his Creatures in this visible World.

4. If there are any such extraordinary and wonderful Appearances and Operations brought to contest with, or to oppose *divine Revelation*, there must and always will be such a *Superiority* on the Side of that *Revelation* which is truly *divine*, as to manifest that God is there. This was the Case when the *Egyptian Sorcerers* contended with *Moses*: but the Wonders which *Moses* wrought did so far transcend the Power of the *Magicians*, as made them confess, 'Twas the Finger of God.

5. These divine Appearances or Attestations to Revelation must be either *known to ourselves*, by our own personal Observation of them, or they must be *sufficiently attested by others*, according to the *Principles and Rules* by which Matters of *human Faith* are to be judged in the foregoing Section.

Those who live in the Nations and Ages where Miracles were wrought, were Eye and Ear-Witnesses of the Truth and Divinity of the Revelation; but we who live in these distant Ages, must have them derived down to us by just and uncontestable History and Tradition. We also even in these distant Times may see the Accomplishments of some *antient Predictions*, and thereby obtain that Advantage toward the Confirmation of our Faith in *divine Revelation* beyond what those Persons enjoyed who lived when the *Predictions* were pronounc'd.

6. There is another very considerable Confirmation of *divine Testimony*; and that is, when the Doctrines themselves

C.V.S.7. *The right use of Reason.* 417

themselves either on the Publication or the Belief of them produce supernatural Effects. Such were the *miraculous Powers* which were communicated to Believers in the first Ages of Christianity, the *Conversion of Jews and Gentiles*, the amazing *Success of the Gospel* of Christ without human Aid, and in Opposition to a thousand Impediments. Its Power in changing the Hearts and Lives of ignorant and vicious *Heathens*, and wicked and profane Creatures in all Nations, and filling them with a Spirit of Vertue, Piety and Goodness. Wherefoever Persons have found this Effect in their own Hearts, wrought by a Belief of the Gospel of Christ, they have a Witness in themselves of the Truth of it, and abundant Reason to believe it *divine*.

Of the Difference between *Reason* and *Revelation*, and the Superiority of the Latter, see more in *Chap. II. Sect. 9.* and *Chap. IV. Direct. 6.*

---

SECT. VII.

*Principles and Rules of judging, concerning Things past, present, and to come, by the mere Use of Reason.*

THO' we attain the greatest Assurance of Things *past* and *future* by *divine Faith*, and learn many Matters of Fact both *past* and *present* by *human Faith*, yet *Reason* also may in a good Degree assist us to judge of Matters of Fact both *past, present, and to come*, by the following Principles.

T 5

1. There



1. There is a *System* of Beings round about us, of which we *ourselves* are a Part, which we call the *World*; and in this *World* there is a *Course* of Nature, or a settled Order of *Causes*, *Effects*, *Antecedents*, *Concomitants*, *Consequents*, &c. from which the Author of Nature doth not vary but upon very important Occasions.

2. Where *Antecedents*, *Concomitants* and *Consequents*, *Causes* and *Effects*, *Signs* and *Things signify'd*, *Subjects* and *Adjuncts* are necessarily connected with each other, we may infer the *Causes* from the *Effects*, and *Effects* from *Causes*, the *Antecedents* from the *Consequents*, as well *Consequents* from *Antecedents*, &c. and thereby be pretty certain of many Things both *past*, *present*, and *to come*. 'Tis by this Principle that *Astronomers* can tell *what Day and Hour the Sun and Moon were eclipsed five hundred Years ago*, and predict all future *Eclipses* as long as the *World* shall stand. They can tell precisely *at what Minute the Sun rises or sets this Day at Pequín in China*, or *what Altitude the Dog-star had at Midnight or Midnoon in Rome, on the Day when Julius Cesar was slain*. Gardeners upon the same Principle can foretel the *Months when every Plant will be in Bloom*, and the *Plowman knows the Weeks of Harvest*: We are sure if there be a *Chicken*, there was an *Egg*: If there be a *Rainbow*, we are certain it rains not far off: If we behold a *Tree growing on the Earth*, we know it has naturally a *Root under Ground*.

3. Where there is such a necessary Connection between *Causes* and *Effects*, *Antecedents* and *Consequents*, *Signs* and *Things signified*, we know also that like Causes will have like Effects, and proportionable Causes will have proportionable Effects, contrary Causes will have contrary Effects; and observing Men may form many Judgments by the Rules of Similitude and Proportion, where the *Causes*, *Effects*, &c. are not entirely the same.

4. Where there is but a *probable* and *uncertain* Connection between *Antecedents*, *Concomitants* and *Consequents*, we can give but a *Conjecture*, or a *probable Determination*. If the *Clouds gather*, or the *Weather-Glass sinks*,  
we

## C.V.S.7. *The right use of Reason.* 419

we suppose 'twill rain: If a Man spit Blood frequently with coughing, we suppose his Lungs are hurt: If very dangerous Symptoms appear, we expect his Death.

5. Where Causes operate freely with a Liberty of Indifference to this or the contrary, there we cannot certainly know what the Effect will be: For it seems to be contingent, and the certain Knowledge of it belongs only to God. This is the Case in the greatest Part of human Actions.

6. Yet wise Men by a just Observation of human Nature will give very probable Conjectures in this Matter also concerning Things past, or Things future, because human Nature in all Ages and Nations has such a Conformity to itself. By a Knowledge of the Tempers of Men and their present Circumstances, we may be able to give a happy Guess what their Conduct will be, and what will be the Event by an Observation of the like Cases in former Times. This made the Emperor Marcus Antoninus to say, "By looking back into History, and considering the Fate and Revolutions of Governments, you will be able to form a Guess, and almost prophesy upon the Future. For Things past, present, and to come, are strangely uniform, and of a Colour; and are commonly cast in the same Mould. So that upon the Matter, forty Years of human Life may serve for a Sample of ten thousand." Collier's Antoninus, Book VII. Sect. 50.

7. There are also some other Principles of judging concerning the past Actions of Men in former Ages, beside Books, Histories and Traditions, which are the Mediums of conveying human Testimony; as we may infer the Skill and Magnificence of the Antients by some Fragments of their Statues, and Ruins of their Buildings. We know what Roman Legions came into Great Britain by Numbers of Bricks dug out of the Earth in some Parts of the Island, with the Marks of some particular Legion upon them, which must have been employed there in Brick-making. We rectify some Mistakes in History by Statues, Coins, old Altars, Utensils of War, &c. We confirm or disprove some pretended Traditions

and historical Writings, by *Medals, Images, Pictures, Urns, &c.*

Thus I have gone through all those *particular Objects of our Judgment* which I first propos'd, and have laid down *Principles and Rules* by which we may safely conduct ourselves therein. There is a Variety of other Objects concerning which we are occasionally called to pass a Judgment, (*viz.*) The *Characters of Persons, the Value and Worth of Things, the Sense and Meaning of particular Writers, Matters of Wit, Oratory, Poesy, Matters of Equity in Judicial Courts, Matters of Traffick and Commerce betwixt Man and Man,* which would be endless to enumerate. But if the *general and special Rules of Judgment* which have been mentioned in these two last Chapters are treasur'd up in the Mind, and wrought into the very Temper of our Souls in our younger Years, they will lay a Foundation for just and regular Judgment concerning a thousand special Occurrences in the *religious, civil, and learned Life.*

THE





THE  
Third PART  
OF  
LOGICK.



S the first Work of the Mind is *Perception*, whereby our *Ideas* are framed, and the second is *Judgment*, which joins or disjoins our *Ideas*, and forms a *Proposition*, so the third Operation of the Mind is *Reasoning*, which joins several Propositions together, and makes a *Syllogism*, that is, an *Argument whereby we*

I are

are wont to infer something that is less known, from Truths which are more evident.

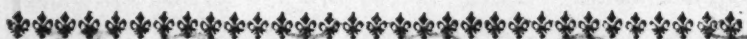
In treating of this Subject, let us consider more particularly

1. *The Nature of a Syllogism, and the Parts of which 'tis composed.*

2. *The several Kinds of Syllogisms, with particular Rules relating to them.*

3. *The Doctrine of Sophisms, or false Reasoning, together with the Means of avoiding them, and the Manner of solving or answering them.*

4. *Some general Rules to direct our Reasoning.*



## CHAP. I.

*Of the Nature of a Syllogism, and the Parts of which 'tis composed.*

**I**F the mere Perception of two Ideas would always shew us whether they agree or disagree, then all Propositions would be Matters of Intelligence, or first Principles;

C. II. *The right use of Reason.* 423

ples, and there would be no Use of Reasoning, or drawing any Consequences. 'Tis the Narrowness of the human Mind which introduces the Necessity of Reasoning. When we are unable to judge of the Truth or Falshood of a Proposition in an *immediate* Manner, by the mere Contemplation of its Subject and Predicate, we are then constrain'd to use a *Medium*, and to compare each of them with some *third Idea*, that by seeing how far they agree or disagree with it, we may be able to judge how far they agree or disagree among themselves: As, if there are two Lines A and B, and I know not whether they are *equal* or no, I take a third Line C, or an *Inch*, and apply it to each of them; if it agree with them both, then I infer that *A and B are equal*; but if it agree with one and not with t'other, then I conclude *A and B are unequal*: If it agree with neither of them, there can be no Comparison.

So if the Question be *whether God must be worshipped*, we seek a *third Idea*, suppose the Idea of a Creator, and say,

Our



*Our Creator must be worshipped.*

*God is our Creator.*

*Therefore God must be worshipped.*

The Comparison of this *third Idea*, with the two distinct Parts of the Question, usually requires two Propositions, which are called the *Premisses*: The third Proposition which is drawn from them is the *Conclusion*, wherein the *Question* itself is answered, and the Subject and Predicate join'd either in the *Negative* or the *Affirmative*.

The *Foundation of all Affirmative Conclusions* is laid in this general Truth, that so far as two propos'd Ideas agree to any third Idea, they agree also among themselves. The Character of *Creator* agrees to *God*, and *Worship* agrees to a *Creator*, therefore *Worship* agrees to *God*.

The *Foundation of all Negative Conclusions* is this, that where one of the two proposed Ideas agrees with the third Idea, and the other disagrees with it, they must needs disagree so far also with one another; as, if no *Sinners* are *happy*, and if *Angels* are *happy*, then *Angels* are not *Sinners*.

Thus

C. I. *The right use of Reason.* 425

Thus it appears what is the strict and just Notion of a *Syllogism*: It is a Sentence or Argument made up of three Propositions so disposed, as that the last is necessarily infer'd from those which go before, as in the Instances which have been just mentioned.

In the *Constitution of a Syllogism* two Things may be considered (*viz.*) the *Matter* and the *Form* of it.

The Matter of which a Syllogism is made up, is *three Propositions*; and these three Propositions are made up of *three Ideas or Terms* variously join'd. The *three Terms* are called the *remote Matter* of a Syllogism, and the *three Propositions*, the *Proxime or immediate Matter* of it.

The three Terms are named the *Major*, the *Minor*, and the *Middle*.

The *Predicate* of the Conclusion is called the *major Term*, because 'tis generally of larger Extension than the *minor Term*, or the *Subject*. The *major and minor Terms* are called the *Extremes*.

The *middle Term* is the third Idea invented and disposed in two Propositions

426 LOGICK: Or, Part III.  
ons in such a Manner as to shew the  
Connection between the *major and mi-  
nor Term* in the Conclusion; for which  
Reason the *middle Term* itself is some-  
times called the *Argument*.

That Proposition which contains the  
Predicate of the Conclusion, connected  
with the middle Term, is usually cal-  
led the *major Proposition*, whereas the  
*minor Proposition* connects the middle  
Term with the Subject of the Conclu-  
sion, and is sometimes called the *As-  
sumption*.

*Note*, this exact Distinction of the  
several Parts of a Syllogism, and of the  
major and minor Terms connected with  
the middle Term, in the major and mi-  
nor Propositions, does chiefly belong to  
*simple or categorical Syllogisms*, of which  
we shall speak in the next Chapter, tho'  
all Syllogisms whatsoever have some-  
thing analogical to it.

The *Form of a Syllogism* is the fram-  
ing and disposing of the Premisses ac-  
cording to Art, or just Principles of  
Reasoning, and the regular Inference of  
the Conclusion from them.

The



C. II. *The right use of Reason.* 427

The *Act of Reasoning*. or inferring one thing from another, is generally exprest and known by the Particle *Therefore*, when the Argument is formed according to the Rules of Art; tho' in common Discourse or Writing, such *causal* Particles as *For*, *Because*, manifest the Act of Reasoning as well as the *illative* Particles *Then* and *Therefore*: And wheresoever any of these Words are used, there is a perfect Syllogism exprest or imply'd.



C H A P. II.

*Of the various Kinds of Syllogisms,  
with particular Rules relating  
to them.*



SYLLOGISMS are divided into various Kinds, either according to the *Question* which is proved by them, according to the *Nature and Composition* of them, or according to the *middle Term*,

*Term*, which is us'd to prove the Question.

---

### SECT. I.

*Of universal and particular Syllogisms, both negative and affirmative.*

**A**Ccording to the *Question* which is to be proved, so Syllogisms are divided into *universal Affirmative*, *universal Negative*, *particular Affirmative*, and *particular Negative*. This is often called a Division of Syllogisms drawn from the *Conclusion*; for so many sorts of Conclusions there may be which are marked with the Letters A, E, I, O.

In an *universal affirmative Syllogism*, one Idea is proved universally to agree with another, and may be universally affirmed of it, as *every Sin deserves Death, every unlawful Wish is a Sin; therefore every unlawful Wish deserves Death.*

In an *universal negative Syllogism*, one Idea is proved to disagree with another

C.II.S.1. *The right use of Reason.* 429

no other Idea universally, and may be thus deny'd of it; as, *no Injustice can be pleasing to God; all Persecution for the Sake of Conscience is Injustice; therefore no Persecution for Conscience Sake can be pleasing to God.*

*Particular Affirmative*, and *particular negative Syllogisms* may be easily understood by what is said of *Universals*, and there will be sufficient Examples given of all these in the next Section.

The *general Principle* upon which these universal and particular Syllogisms are founded is this; Whatsoever is affirmed or denied universally of any Idea, may be affirmed or denyed of all the particular Kinds or Beings, which are contained in the Extension of that universal Idea. So the *Desert of Death* is affirmed universally of *Sin*, and an *unlawful Wish* is one particular Kind of *Sin*, which is contained in the universal Idea of *Sin*, therefore the *Desert of Death* may be affirmed concerning an *unlawful Wish*. And so of the Rest.

*Note*, in the Doctrine of Syllogisms, a *singular* and an *indefinite* Proposition,  
are



are ranked among *Universals*, as was before observed in the Doctrin of Propositions.

---

## SECT. II.

*Of plain, simple Syllogisms, and their Rules.*

THE next Division of Syllogisms is into *single and compound*. This is drawn from the *Nature and Composition* of them.

*Single Syllogisms* are made up of three Propositions: *Compound Syllogisms* contain more than three Propositions, and may be formed into two or more Syllogisms.

*Single Syllogisms*, for Distinction Sake, may be divided into \* *Simple Complex*, and *Conjunctive*.

Those are properly called *simple* or *categorical Syllogisms*, which are made

---

\* As Ideas and Propositions are divided into *single* and *compound*, and *single* are sub-divided into *simple* and *complex*; so there are the same Divisions and Subdivisions apply'd to Syllogisms.

C.I. S.2. *The right use of Reason.* 431  
up of three *plain, single, or categorical Propositions*, wherein the middle Term is evidently and regularly joined with one Part of the Question in the major Proposition, and with t'other in the minor, whence there follows a plain, single Conclusion; as, *every human Vertue is to be sought with Diligence; Prudence is a human Vertue; therefore Prudence is to be sought diligently.*

*Note*; Tho' the Terms of Propositions may be *complex*, yet where the Composition of the whole Argument is thus *plain, simple and regular*, it is properly called a *simple Syllogism*, since the *Complexion* does not belong to the syllogistic Form of it.

*Simple Syllogisms* have several *Rules* belonging to them, which being observed, will generally secure us from false Inferences: But these *Rules* being founded on four *general Axioms*, 'tis necessary to mention these *Axioms* beforehand, for the Use of those who will enter into the speculative Reasons of all these *Rules*.

*Axiom*

## 432 LOGICK: Or, Part III.

*Axiom 1.* Particular Propositions are contained in Universals, and may be inferr'd from them; but Universals are not contained in Particulars, nor can be inferr'd from them.

*Axiom 2.* In all universal Propositions, the Subject is universal: In all particular Propositions, the Subject is particular.

*Axiom 3.* In all affirmative Propositions, the Predicate has no greater Extension than the Subject; for its Extension is restrained by the Subject, and therefore 'tis always to be esteemed as a particular Idea. 'Tis by mere Accident, if it ever be taken universally, and cannot happen but in such universal or singular Propositions as are *reciprocal*.

*Axiom 4.* The Predicate of a negative Proposition is always taken universally, for in its whole Extension it is deny'd of the Subject. If we say *no Stone is vegetable*, we deny all sorts of *Vegetation* concerning *Stones*.

### The Rules of *simple, regular* Syllogisms are these.

*Rule 1.* The middle Term must not be taken twice particularly, but once at least universally. For if the middle Term be taken for two different Parts or Kinds of the same universal Idea, then the Subject of the Conclusion is compared with one of these Parts, and the Predicate with another Part, and this will never shew whether that Subject and Predicate agree or disagree: There will then be *four distinct Terms* in the Syllogism, and the two Parts of the Question will not be compared with the *same third Idea*; as if I say, *some Men are pious*, and *some Men are Robbers*, I can never infer that *some Robbers are pious*, for the middle Term *Men* being taken twice particularly, 'tis not the *same Men* who are spoken of in the major and minor Propositions.

*Rule II.* The Terms in the Conclusion must never be taken more universally than they are in the Premisses. The Reason is derived from the first Axiom, that *Generals can never be inferr'd from Particulars*.

Rule



## C.II.S.2. *The right use of Reason.* 433

Rule III. *A negative Conclusion cannot be proved by two affirmative Premisses.* For when the two Terms of the Conclusion are united or agree to the middle Term, it does not follow by any Means that they disagree with one another.

Rule IV. *If one of the Premisses be negative, the Conclusion must be negative.* For if the middle Term be deny'd of either Part of the Conclusion, it may shew that the Terms of the Conclusion disagree, but it can never shew that they agree.

Rule V. *If either of the Premisses be particular, the Conclusion must be particular.*—This may be proved for the most Part from the first Axiom.

These two last Rules are sometimes united in this single Sentence, *The Conclusion always follows the weaker Part of the Premisses.* Now Negatives and Particulars are counted inferior to Affirmatives and Universals.

Rule VI. *From two negative Premisses nothing can be concluded.* For they separate the middle Term both from the Subject and Predicate of the Conclusion, and when two Ideas disagree to a third, we cannot infer that they either agree or disagree with each other.

Yet where the Negation is a Part of the middle Term, the two Premisses may look like Negatives according to the Words, but one of them is affirmative in Sense; as, *What has no Thought cannot reason; but a Worm has no Thought, therefore a Worm cannot reason.* The minor Proposition does really affirm the middle Term concerning the Subject (*viz.*) *a Worm is what has no Thought*; and thus it is properly in this Syllogism an affirmative Proposition.

Rule VII. *From two particular Premisses, nothing can be concluded.* This Rule depends chiefly on the first Axiom.

A more laborious and accurate Proof of these Rules, and the Derivation of every Part of them in all possible Cases,

U

from

from the foregoing Axioms, require so much Time, and are of so little Importance to assist the right Use of Reason, that 'tis needless to insist longer upon 'em here. See all this done ingeniously in the *Logic* call'd, the *Art of Thinking*. Part iii. Chap. iii, &c.

---

### SECT. III.

#### *Of the Moods and Figures of simple Syllogisms.*

**S**imple Syllogisms are adorned and surrounded in the common Books of Logic, with a Variety of Inventions about *Moods and Figures*, wherein by the artificial Contexture of the Letters A, E, I, and O, Men have endeavour'd to transform *Logic*, or the *Art of Reasoning*, into a Sort of *Mechanism*, and to teach Boys to syllogize, or frame Arguments and refute them, without any real inward Knowledge of the Question. This is almost in the same Manner as School boys have been taught perhaps in their trifling Years to compose *Latin Verses*;

C.H.S.3. *The right use of Reason.* 435

*Verses*; i. e. by certain Tables and Squares, with a Variety of Letters in them, wherein by counting every sixth, seventh, or eighth Letter, certain *Latin* Words should be fram'd in the Form of *Hexameters* or *Pentameters*; and this may be done by those who know nothing of *Latin* or of *Verses*.

I confess some of these logical Subtilties have much more Use than those versifying Tables, and there is much Ingenuity discovered in determining the precise Number of Syllogisms that may be formed in every *Figure*, and giving the Reasons of them, yet the Light of Nature, a good Judgment, and due Consideration of Things, tend more to true Reasoning than all the Trappings of *Moods* and *Figures*.

But lest this Book be charg'd with too great Defects and Imperfections, it may be proper to give short Hints of that which some *Logicians* have spent so much Time and Paper upon.

All the possible Combinations of three of the Letters A, E, I, O, to make three Propositions amount to *sixty four*; but *fifty four* of them are excluded from



forming true Syllogisms by the *seven Rules* in the foregoing Section: The remaining *Ten* are variously diversified by *Figures* and *Moods* into *fourteen Syllogisms*.

The *Figure of a Syllogism* is the proper Disposition of the middle Term with the Parts of the Question.

A *Mood* is the regular Determination of Propositions according to their Quantity and Quality, *i. e.* their universal or particular Affirmation or Negation; which are signify'd by certain artificial Words wherein the Consonants are neglected, and these four Vowels, A, E, I, O, are only regarded.

There are generally counted *three Figures*.

In the *first* of them the middle Term is the Subject of the major Proposition, and the Predicate of the minor. This contains four Moods (*viz.*) *Barbara*, *Celarent*, *Darii*, *Ferio*. And it is the Excellency of this Figure that all sorts of Questions or Conclusions may be proved by it, whether A, E, I, or O, *i. e.* universal or particular, affirmative or negative, as,

*Bar-*

C.II.S.3. *The right use of Reason.* 437

- Bar-* Every wicked Man is truly miserable;  
*ba-* All Tyrants are wicked Men;  
*ra-* Therefore all Tyrants are truly miserable.  
*Ce-* He that's always in Fear is not happy;  
*la-* Covetous Men are always in Fear;  
*rent-* Therefore covetous Men are not happy.  
*Da-* Whatsoever furthers our Salvation is good for us;  
*ri-* Some Afflictions further our Salvation;  
*i-* Therefore some Afflictions are good for us.  
*Fe-* Nothing that must be repented of is truly desirable;  
*ri-* Some Pleasures must be repented of;  
*o-* Therefore there are some Pleasures which are not truly desirable.

In the *second* Figure the middle Term is the Predicate of both the Premisses; This contains four Moods (*viz.*) *Cesare*, *Camestres*, *Festino*, *Baroco*, and it admits only of negative Conclusions; as,

- Ce-* No Liar is fit to be believed;  
*sa-* Every good Christian is fit to be believed;  
*re-* Therefore no good Christian is a Liar.

The Reader may easily form Examples of the Rest.

The *third* Figure requires that the middle Term be the Subject of both the Premisses. It has six Moods (*vizi.*) *Darapti*, *Felapton*, *Disamis*, *Datist*, *Bocardo*, *Ferison*: And it admits only of particular Conclusions; as,

- Da-* Whosoever loves God shall be saved;  
*rap-* All the Lovers of God have their Imperfections;  
*ti-* Therefore some who have Imperfections shall be saved.

I leave the Reader to form Examples of the Rest.

The Moods of these three Figures are comprized in four *Latin Verses*.

*Barbara, Celarent, Darli, Ferio, quoque prima.*

*Cesare, Camestres, Festino, Baroco, secunda.*

*Tertia Darapti sibi vindicat, atque Felapton,*

*Adjungens Disamis, Datisi, Bocardo, Ferison.*

The *special Rules* of the three Figures are these.

In the *first Figure* the major Proposition must always be universal, and the Minor affirmative.

In the *second Figure* also the Major must be universal, and one of the Premises, together with the Conclusion, must be negative.

In the *third Figure* the Minor must be affirmative, and the Conclusion always particular.

There is also a *fourth Figure* wherein the middle Term is predicated in The major Proposition, and subjected in the minor: But this is a very indirect and oblique Manner of concluding, and is never used in the Sciences, nor in human Life, and therefore I call it useless. — Some Logicians will allow it to be nothing else but a mere Inversion of the first



first Figure; the Moods of it (*viz.*) *Baralipton*, or *Barbari*, *Calentes*, *Dibatis*, *Fespamo*, *Fresisom*, are not worthy to be explained by one Example.

SECT. IV.

*Of Complex Syllogisms.*

**T**IS not the mere Use of *complex Terms* in a Syllogism, that gives it this Name, tho' one of the Terms is usually *complex*; but those are properly called *complex Syllogisms*, in which the middle Term is not connected with the whole Subject, or the whole Predicate in two distinct Propositions, but is intermingled and compared with them by Parts, or in a more confus'd Manner, in different Forms of Speech; as,

*The Sun is a senseless Being;*

*The Persians worshipped the Sun;*

*Therefore the Persians worshipped a senseless Being.*

Here the Predicate of the Conclusion is *worshipped a senseless Being*, Part of which is joyned with the middle Term *Sun* in the major Proposition, and t'other Part in the minor.

Tho' this sort of Argument is confess'd to be *entangled*, or *confused*, and *irregular*, if examined by the Rules of *simple Syllogisms*; yet there is a great Variety of Arguments used in Books of Learning, and in common Life, whose Consequence is strong and evident, and which must be ranked under this Head; as,

I. *Exclusive Propositions* will form a complex Argument; as; *pious Men are the only Favourites of Heaven; true Christians are Favourites of Heaven; therefore true Christians are pious Men.* Or thus, *Hypocrites are not pious Men; therefore Hypocrites are no Favourites of Heaven.*

II. *Exceptive Propositions* will make such complex Syllogisms; as; *None but Physicians came to the Consultation; the Nurse is no Physician; therefore the Nurse came not to the Consultation.*

III. Or, *comparative Propositions*; as, *Knowledge is better than Riches; Virtue is better than Knowledge; therefore Virtue is better than Riches.* Or thus, *A Dove will fly a Mile in a Minute; a Swallow flies swifter than a Dove; therefore a Swallow will fly more than a Mile in a Minute.*

IV. Or *inceptive and desitive Propositions*; as; *The Fogs vanish as the Sun arises; but the Fogs have not yet begun to vanish; therefore the Sun is not yet risen.*

V. Or *Modal Propositions*; as, *'Tis necessary that a General understand the Art of War; but Caius does not understand the Art of War; therefore 'tis necessary Caius should not be a General.* Or thus, *A total Eclipse of the Sun would cause Darkness at Noon; 'tis possible that the Moon at that Time may totally eclipse the Sun; therefore 'tis possible that the Moon may cause Darkness at Noon.*

Beside all these, there is a great Number of *complex Syllogisms* which can hardly

C.II. S.4. *The right use of Reason.* 441

ly be reduc'd under any particular Titles? because the Forms of human Language are so exceeding various; as,

*Christianity requires us to believe what the Apostles wrote; St. Paul is an Apostle; therefore Christianity requires us to believe what St. Paul wrote.*

*No human Artist can make an Animal; a Fly or a Worm is an Animal; therefore no human Artist can make a Fly or a Worm.*

*The Father always lived in London; the Son always lived with the Father; therefore the Son always lived in London.*

*The Blossom soon follows the full Bud; this Pear-Tree hath many full Buds; therefore it will shortly have many Blossoms.*

*One Hailstone never falls alone; but a Hailstone fell just now; therefore others fell with it.*

*Thunder seldom comes without Lightning; but it thundered Yesterday; therefore probably is lightened also.*

*Moses wrote before the Trojan War; the first Greek Historians wrote after the Trojan War; therefore the first Greek Historians wrote after Moses.*

Now the Force of all these Arguments is so evident and conclusive, that tho' the Form of the Syllogism be never so irregular, yet we are sure the Inferences are just and true; for the *Premisses do really contain the Conclusion that is deduced from them*, which is a never-failing Test of true Syllogisms, as shall be shewn hereafter.

The Truth of most of these complex Syllogisms may also be made to appear

U s

(if



(if needful) by reducing them either to *regular, simple Syllogisms*, or to some of the *conjunctive Syllogisms*, which are described in the next Section. I'll give an Instance only in the first, and leave the rest to exercise the Ingenuity of the Reader.

The first Argument may be reduced to a Syllogism in *Barbara* thus,

*The Sun is a senseless Being;*

*What the Persians worshipped is the Sun;*

Therefore *what the Persians worshipped is a senseless Being*. Tho' the conclusive Force of this Argument is evident without this Reduction.

---

#### SECT. V.

##### *Of Conjunctive Syllogisms.*

THOSE are called *conjunctive Syllogisms*, wherein one of the Premisses, namely the major, has distinct Parts, which are joyned by a Conjunction, or some such Particles of Speech. Most Times the major or minor, or both, are *explicitely compound Propositions*:

tions; And generally the *major* Proposition is made up of two distinct Parts or Propositions in such a Manner, as that by the Assertion of one in the *minor*, the other is either asserted or denied in the *Conclusion*; Or by the Denial of one in the *Minor*, the other is either asserted or denied in the *Conclusion*. 'Tis hardly possible indeed to fit any short Definition to include all the Kinds of them; but the chief amongst them are the *conditional* Syllogism, the *disjunctive*, the *relative*, and the *connexive*.

I. The *conditional* or *hypothetical* Syllogism is whose major or minor, or both, are *conditional* Propositions; as, *if there be a God, the World is governed by Providence*; but *there is a God*; therefore *the World is governed by Providence*.

These Syllogisms admit two sorts of true Argumentation, where the major is *conditional*.

1. When the Antecedent is asserted in the Minor, that the Consequent may be asserted in the Conclusion; such is the preceding Example. This is called *arguing from the Position of the Antecedent*,

dent, to the Position of the Consequent.

2. When the Consequent is contradicted in the minor Proposition, that the Antecedent may be contradicted in the Conclusion; as, *If Atheists are in the right, then the World exists without a Cause; but the World does not exist without a Cause; therefore Atheists are not in the right.* This is called arguing from the removing of the Consequent, to the removing of the Antecedent.

To remove the Antecedent or Consequent here, does not merely signify the Denial of it, but the Contradiction of it; for the mere Denial of it by a contrary Proposition will not make a true Syllogism, as appears thus: *If every Creature be reasonable, every Brute is reasonable; but no Brute is reasonable; therefore no Creature is reasonable.* Whereas if you say in the minor, but *every Brute is not reasonable*; then it will follow truly in the Conclusion, *therefore every Creature is not reasonable.*

When the Antecedent or Consequent are negative Propositions, they are removed



moved by an Affirmative ; as, *If there be no God, then the World does not discover creating Wisdom ; but the World does discover creating Wisdom ; therefore there is a God.* In this Instance the Consequent is removed or contradicted in the Minor, that the Antecedent may be contradicted in the Conclusion. So in this Argument of St. Paul, 1 Cor. xv. *If the Dead rise not, Christ died in vain ; but Christ did not die in vain ; therefore the Dead shall rise.*

There are also two sorts of false arguing (*viz.*) *From the removing of the Antecedent, to the removing of the Consequent ; or from the Position of the Consequent, to the Position of the Antecedent.*

Observ. I. If the Subject of the Antecedent and the Consequent be the same, then the *hypothetical* Syllogism may be turned into a *categorical* One ; as, *If Cæsar be a King, he must be honoured : But Cæsar is a King, therefore, &c.* This may be changed thus, *Every King must be honoured, but Cæsar is a King ; therefore, &c.*

\*

Observ. II.

*Observ. II.* If the major Proposition only be conditional, the Conclusion is categorical: But if the minor or both be conditional, the Conclusion is also conditional; as, *The Worshippers of Images are Idolaters; If the Papists worship a Crucifix, they are Worshippers of an Image; therefore if the Papists worship a Crucifix, they are Idolaters.* But this sort of Syllogisms should be avoided as much as possible in Disputation, because they greatly embarrass a Cause: Tho' Syllogisms, whose major only is hypothetical, are very frequent, and us'd with great Advantage.

II. A *disjunctive Syllogism* is when the major Proposition is disjunctive; as, *The Earth moves in a Circle or an Ellipsis; but it does not move in a Circle; therefore it moves in an Ellipsis.*

A *disjunctive Syllogism* may have many Members or Parts thus; it is either *Spring, Summer, Autumn, or Winter; but 'tis not Spring, Autumn, or Winter; therefore it is Summer.*

The true Method of arguing here is from the Assertion of one, to the Denial of the rest, or from the Denial of one or  
more,

more, to the Assertion of what remains: but the major should be so framed, that the several Parts of it can't be true together, tho' one of them is evidently true.

III. A *relative Syllogism* requires the major Proposition to be relative; as, *Where Christ is, there shall his Servants be; but Christ is in Heaven; therefore his Servants shall be there also.* Or, *as is the Captain, so are his Soldiers; but the Captain is a Coward, therefore his Soldiers are so too.*

Arguments that relate to the Doctrine of Proportion must be referred to this Head; as *two are to four, so are three to six; but two make the half of four; therefore three make the half of six.*

Besides these, there is another Sort of Syllogism which is very natural and common, and yet Authors take very little Notice of it, call it by an improper Name, and describe it very defectively; and that is,

IV. A *connexive Syllogism*. This some have called *copulative*; but it does by no Means require the major to be a *copulative* nor a *compound Proposition* (according to the Definition given of it

Part



Part II<sup>d</sup>, Chap. II<sup>d</sup>, Sect. 6.) but it requires that two or more Ideas be so connected either in the complex Subject or Predicate of the Major, that if one of them be affirmed or denied in the minor, common Sense will naturally shew us what will be the Consequence. It would be very tedious and useless to frame particular Rules about them, as will appear by the following Examples, which are very various, and may yet be further multiplied.

(1.) *Meekness and Humility always go together; Moses was a Man of Meekness; therefore Moses was also humble. Or we may form this Minor, Pharaoh was no humble Man; therefore he was not meek.*

(2.) *No Man can serve God and Mammon; the covetous Man serves Mammon; therefore he cannot serve God. Or the Minor may run thus, the true Christian serves God; therefore he does not serve Mammon.*

(3.) *Genius must join with Study to make a great Man; Florino has Genius but he cannot study; therefore Florino, will never be a great Man. Or thus, Quintus studies hard but has no Genius; therefore Quintus will never, &c.*

(4.) *Gulo can't make a Dinner without Flesh and Fish; there was no Fish to be gotten to Day; therefore Gulo this Day cannot make a Dinner.*

(5.) *London and Paris are in different Latitudes; the Latitude of London is 51 $\frac{1}{2}$  Deg. therefore this cannot be the Latitude of Paris.*

(6.) *Joseph and Benjamin had one Mother; Rachel was the Mother of Joseph; therefore she was Benjamin's Mother too.*

(7.) *The Father and the Son are of equal Stature; The Father is six Foot high; therefore the Son is six Foot high also.*

(8.) *Pride*

C.II.S.5. *The right use of Reason.* 449

(8.) *Pride is inconsistent with Innocence; Angels have Innocence; therefore they have no Pride. Or thus; Devils have Pride; therefore they have not Innocence.*

I might multiply other Instances of these *connexive Syllogisms*, by bringing in all sorts of *exceptive, exclusive, comparative, and modal Propositions* into the Composition of them; for all these may be wrought into *conjunctive*, as well as into *simple Syllogisms*, and thereby render them *complex*. But it would waste Time and Paper without equal Profit.

Concerning these various Kinds of *conjunctive Syllogisms*, take these two Observations.

*Observ. I.* Most of them may be transformed into *categorical Syllogisms* by those who have a Mind to prove the Truth of them that Way; or they may be easily converted into each other by changing the Forms of Speech.

*Observ. II.* These *conjunctive Syllogisms* are seldom deficient or faulty in the Form of them; for such a Deficiency would be discovered at first Glance generally by common Reason, without any artificial Rules of Logick: The chief Care therefore is to see that the  
*major*

major Proposition be true, upon which the whole Force of the Argument usually depends.

## SECT. VI.

### *Of Compound Syllogisms.*

**W**E properly call those *compound Syllogisms*, which are made up of two or more *single Syllogisms*, and may be resolved into them. The chief Kinds are these, *Epichirema*, *Dilemma*, *Prosyllogismus*, and *Sorites*.

I. *Epichirema* is a Syllogism which contains the Proof of the major or minor, or both, before it draws the Conclusion. This is often used in Writing, in publick Speeches, and in common Conversation, that so each Part of the Discourse may be confirmed and put out of Doubt, as it moves on toward the Conclusion, which was chiefly designed. Take this Instance,

*Sickness may be good for us; for it weans us from the Pleasures of Life, and makes us think of dying;*

*But*



C. II. S. 6. *The right use of Reason.* 451

But we are uneasy under Sickness, which appears by our Impatience, Complaints, Groanings, &c.

Therefore we are uneasy sometimes under that which is good for us.

Another Instance you may see in Cicero's Oration in Defence of Milo, who had slain Clodius. His major Proposition is, that 'tis lawful for one Man to kill another, who lies in wait to kill him; which he proves from the Custom of Nations, from natural Equity, Examples &c. his Minor is that Clodius laid wait for Milo; which he proves by his Arms, Guards &c. and then infers the Conclusion, that 'twas lawful for Milo to kill Clodius.

III. A *Dilemma* is an Argument which divides the whole into all its Parts or Members by a *disjunctive Proposition*, and then infers something concerning each Part which is finally inferr'd concerning the Whole. Instances of this are frequent; as, in this Life we must either obey our vicious Inclinations or resist them: To obey them will bring Sin and Sorrow, to resist them is laborious and painful: Therefore we cannot be

*be perfectly free from Sorrow or Pain in this Life.*

A *Dilemma* becomes *faulty* or *ineffectual* three Ways: *First*, when the Members of the Division are not well oppos'd, or not fully enumerated; for then the Major is false. *Secondly*, when what is asserted concerning each part is not just; for then the Minor is not true. *Thirdly*, When it may be retorted with equal Force upon him who utters it.

There was a famous ancient Instance of this Case wherein a *Dilemma* was retorted. *Euathlus* promised *Protagoras* a Reward when he had taught him the *Art of Pleading*, and it was to be paid the first Day that he gain'd any Cause in the Court. After a considerable time *Protagoras* goes to Law with *Euathlus* for the Reward, and uses this *Dilemma*; *Either the Cause will go on my Side or on yours: If the Cause goes on my Side, you must pay me according to the Sentence of the Judge: If the Cause goes on your Side, you must pay me according to your Bargain: Therefore whether the Cause goes for me or against me you must pay me the Reward.* But *Euathlus* retorted

ed

C.II.S. 6. *The right use of Reason.* 453

ed this Dilemma thus; *Either I shall gain the Cause or lose it: If I gain the Cause, then nothing will be due to you according to the Sentence of the Judge: But if I lose the Cause, nothing will be due to you according to my Bargain: Therefore whether I lose or gain the Cause I will not pay you, for nothing will be due to you.*

*Note, 1<sup>st</sup>.* A Dilemma is usually describ'd as though it always proved the Absurdity, Inconvenience, or Unreasonableness of some Opinion or Practice; but it is plain, that it may also be used to prove the Truth or Advantage of any thing propos'd; as, *In Heaven we shall either have Desires or not: If we have no Desires, then we have full Satisfaction; if we have Desires, they shall be satisfy'd as fast as they arise; therefore in Heaven we shall be compleatly satisfy'd or happy.*

*Note, 2<sup>d</sup>.* This Sort of Argument may be compos'd of three or more Members, and may be called a *Trilemma*.

III. A *Prosyllogism* is when two or more Syllogisms are so connected together, that the Conclusion of the former  
is



is the Major or the Minor of the following; as, *Blood can't think; but the Soul of Man thinks; therefore the Soul of Man is not Blood; but the Soul of a Brute is his Blood* according to the Scripture; therefore the *Soul of Man is different from the Soul of a Brute.* See another Instance in the *Introduction* to this Treatise, pag. 8.

IV. A *Sorites* is when several middle Terms are chosen to connect one another successively in several Propositions, till the last Proposition connects its Predicate with the first Subject. Thus, *all Men of Revenge have their Souls often uneasy; uneasy Souls are a Plague to themselves; now to be ones own Plague is Folly in the Extreme; therefore all Men of Revenge are extreme Fools.*

The Apostle, *Rom. viii. 29.* gives us an Instance of this sort of Argument if it were reduced to exact Form: *Whom he foreknew those he predestinated; whom he predestinated he called; whom he called he justified; whom he justified he glorify'd; therefore whom he foreknew, he glorify'd.*

To

C.II.S.6. *The right use of Reason.* 455

To these Syllogisms it may not be improper to add *Induction*, which is, when from several particular Propositions we infer one general; as, *The Doctrine of the Socinians cannot be proved from the Gospels, it cannot be proved from the Acts of the Apostles, it cannot be proved from the Epistles, nor the Book of Revelations; therefore it cannot be proved out of the New Testament.*

*Note*, This sort of Argument is often defective, because there is not due Care taken to enumerate all the Particulars on which the Conclusion should depend.

All the Syllogisms in this Section may be called *Redundant*, because they have more than three Propositions. There is one sort of Syllogism which is *defective*, and is called an *Enthymem*, because only the Conclusion with one of the Premises is express, while the other is supposed and reserved in the Mind: Thus, *There is no true Religion without good Morals; therefore a Knave cannot be truly religious: Or thus, 'Tis our Duty to love our Neighbours as our selves; therefore there are but few who perform their Duty.*

*Note,*

*Note*, This is the most common Sort of Argument amongst Mankind both in Writing and in speaking; for it would take up too much Time, and too much retard the Discourse to draw out all our Arguments in *Mood* and *Figure*. Besides, Mankind love to have so much Compliment paid to their Understandings as to suppose that they know the *Major* or *Minor*, which is suppress'd and imply'd, when you pronounce the other Premise and the *Conclusion*. If there be any Debate about this Argument, the Syllogism must be compleated in order to try its Force and Goodness by adding the absent Proposition.

---

#### S E C T. VII.

*Of the middle Terms, of common Places or Topics, and Invention of Arguments.*

THE next Division of Syllogisms is according to the *middle Term*, which is made use of in the Proof of any Proposition. Now the middle Term



C.II.S.7. *The right use of Reason.* 457

Term (as we have hinted before) is often called the *Argument*, because the Force of the Syllogism depends upon it: We must make a little Delay here to treat briefly of the Doctrine of *Topics*, or *Places whence middle Terms or Arguments are drawn*.

All Arts and Sciences have some general Subjects which belong to them, which are called *Topics*, or *common Places*, because middle Terms are borrowed, and Arguments derived from them for the Proof of the various Propositions which we have occasion to discourse of. The Topics of *Grammar* are *Etymology, Noun, Verb, Construction, Signification, &c.* The Topics of *Logic* are *Genus, Species, Difference, Property, Definition, Division, &c.* The Topics of *Ontology* or *Metaphysics* are, *Cause, Effect, Action, Passion, Identity, Opposition, Subject, Adjunct, Sign, &c.* The Topics of *Morality* or *Ethics* are *Law, Sin, Duty, Authority, Freedom of Will, Command, Threatning, Reward, Punishment, &c.* The Topics of *Theology* are, *God, Christ, Faith, Hope, Worship, Salvation, &c.*

To these several Topics there belong particular Observations, Axioms, Canons or Rules, which are laid down in their proper Sciences; as,

*Grammar* hath such Canons (*viz.*) *Words in a different Construction obtain a different Sense. Words derived from the same Primitive may probably have some Affinity in their original Meaning, &c.*

Canons in *Logic* are such as these, *Every Part of a Division singly taken, must contain less than the Whole. A Definition must be peculiar and proper to the Thing defin'd. Whatever is affirmed or denied of the Genus, may be affirmed or denied of the Species, &c.*

*Metaphysical* Canons are such as these; *final Causes belong only to intelligent Agents. If a natural and necessary Cause operate, the Effect will follow, &c.* with a large Catalogue of many more in each distinct Science.

Now it has been the Custom of those who teach *Logic* or *Rhetorick* to direct their Disciples, when they want an Argument, to consult the several *Topics* which are suited to their Subject  
of

C.II.S.7. *The right use of Reason.* 459

of Discourse, and to rummage over the *Definitions, Divisions* and *Canons* that belong to each *Topic*. This is called the *Invention of an Argument*; and 'tis taught with much Solemnity in some Schools.

I grant there may be good Use of this Practice for Persons of a lower Genius, when they are to compose any Discourse for the Publick; or for those of superior Parts to refresh their Memory, and revive their Acquaintance with a Subject which has been long absent from their Thoughts; or when their natural Spirits labour under Indisposition and Languor: But when a Man of moderate Sagacity has made himself Master of his Theme by just Diligence and Enquiry, he has seldom need to run knocking at the Doors of all the *Topics* that he may furnish himself with Argument or Matter of speaking: And indeed 'tis only a Man of Sense and Judgment that can use *common Places* or *Topics* well; for amongst this Variety he only knows what is fit to be left out, as well as what is fit to be spoken.



By some *logical* Writers this Business of *Topics* and *Invention* is treated of in such a Manner with mathematical Figures and Diagrams, fill'd with the barbarous technical Words *Napcas*, *Nip-cis*, *Ropcos*, *Nofrop*, &c. as tho' an ignorant Lad were to be led mechanically in certain artificial Harnesses and Trammels to find out Arguments to prove or refute any Proposition whatsoever, without any rational Knowledge of the Ideas. Now there is no Need to throw Words of Contempt on such a Practice; the very Description of it carries Reproof and Ridicule in Abundance.

---

#### SECT. VIII.

##### *Of several Kinds of Arguments and Demonstrations*

WE proceed now to the Division of Syllogisms according to the *middle Term*; and in this Part of our Treatise the Syllogisms themselves are properly called *Arguments*, and are thus distributed.

I. Ar-

C.II.S.8. *The right use of Reason.* 461

I. Arguments are called *Grammatical, Logical, Metaphysical, Physical, Moral, Mechanical, Theological, &c.* according to the Art, Science, or Subject whence the middle Term or Topic is borrowed. Thus if we prove that *no Man should steal from his Neighbour* because the *Scripture forbids it*, this is a *theological* Argument: If we prove it from the *Laws of the Land*, 'tis *political*; but if we prove it from the *Principles of Reason and Equity*, the Argument is *moral*.

II. Arguments are either *certain and evident*, or *doubtful and merely probable*.

*Probable Arguments* are those whose Conclusions are proved by some probable Medium; as, *This Hill was once a Church-Yard, or a Field of Battle, because there are many human Bones found here*. This is not a *certain* Argument, for human Bones might have been conveyed there some other Way.

*Evident and certain* Arguments are called *Demonstrations*; for they prove their Conclusions by clear Mediums and

undoubted Principles; and they are generally divided into these two Sorts.

1. Demonstrations *a Priori*, which prove the Effect by its necessary Cause; as, I prove *the Scripture is infallibly true*, because it is *the Word of God, who cannot lye*.

2. Demonstrations *a Posteriori*, which infer the Cause from its necessary Effect; as, I infer *there hath been the Hand of some Artificer here*, because I find a *curious Engine*. Or, I infer *there is a God, from the Works of his Wisdom in the visible World*.

The last of these is called *Demonstratio τῆς ἔτι*, because it proves only the Existence of a Thing; the first is named *Demonstratio τῆς διότι*, because it shews also the Cause of its Existence.

But *Note*, That tho' these two sorts of Arguments are most peculiarly called *Demonstrations*, yet generally any strong and convincing Argument obtains that Name; and 'tis the Custom of Mathematicians to call all their Arguments *Demonstrations*, from what Medium soever they derive them.



III. Arguments are divided into *artificial* and *inartificial*.

An *artificial* Argument is taken from the Nature and Circumstances of the Things; and if the Argument be strong it produces a *natural Certainty*; as, *The World was at first created by God, because nothing can create itself.*

An *inartificial* Argument is the Testimony of another, and this is called *original*, when our Information proceeds immediately from the Persons concerned, or from Eye or Ear-Witnesses of a Fact: 'Tis called *Tradition* when 'tis delivered by the Report of others.

We have taken Notice before, that Testimony is either divine or human. If the human Testimony be strong, it produces a *moral Certainty*; but divine Testimony produces a *supernatural Certainty* which is far superior.

*Note*; Arguments taken from *human Testimony*, as well as from *Laws and Rules of Equity*, are called *moral*, and indeed the same Name is also apply'd to every sort of Argument which is drawn from the *free Actions of God*, or the *contingent Actions of Men*,  
X 4                      wherein

wherein we cannot arise to a *natural Certainty*, but content ourselves with an *high Degree of Probability*, which in many Cases is scarce inferior to *natural Certainty*.

IV. Arguments are either *direct* or *indirect*. It is a *direct Argument* where the middle Term is such as proves the Question itself, and infers that very Proposition which was the Matter of Enquiry. An *indirect* or *oblique Argument* proves or refutes some other Proposition, and thereby makes the Thing enquired appear to be true.

Several Arguments are called *indirect*; as, (1.) When some contradictory Proposition is proved to be false, improbable, or impossible: Or when upon Supposition of the Falshood or Denial of the original Proposition, some Absurdity is inferred. This is called a Proof *per impossibile*, or a *Reductio ad absurdum*. (2.) When some other Proposition is proved to be true which is less probable, and thence it follows that the original Proposition is true, because 'tis more probable. This is an Argument *ex magis probabili ad minus*. (3.) When  
any

C.II. S. 8. *The right use of Reason.* 465

any other Proposition is proved upon which it was before agreed to yield the original Question. This is an Argument *ex Concesso*.

V. There is yet another Rank of Arguments which have *Latin* Names; their true Distinction is derived from the Topics or middle Terms which are used in them; tho' they are called an Address to our *Judgment*, our *Faith*, our *Ignorance*, our *Profession*, our *Modesty*, and our *Passions*.

1. If an Argument be taken from the Nature or Existence of Things, and address to the *Reason of Mankind*, 'tis called *Argumentum ad Judicium*.

2. When 'tis borrowed from some convincing Testimony, 'tis *Argumentum ad Fidem*, an Address to our *Faith*.

3. When 'tis drawn from any insufficient *Medium* whatsoever, where the Opposer has not Skill to refute or answer it, this is *Argumentum ad Ignorantiam*, an Address to our *Ignorance*.

4. When 'tis built upon the profest Principles or Opinions of the Person with whom we argue, whether these Opinions be true or false, 'tis named



*Argumentum ad Hominem*, an Address to our *profest Principles*. St. Paul often uses this Argument when he reasons with the *Jews*, and when he says, *I speak as a Man*.

5. When the Argument is fetch'd from the Sentiments of some wise, great, or good Men, whose Authority we reverence, and hardly dare oppose, 'tis called *Argumentum ad Verecundiam*, an Address to our *Modesty*.

6. I add finally, when an Argument is borrowed from any Topics which are suited to engage the Inclinations and Passions of the Hearers on the Side of the Speaker, rather than to convince the Judgment, this is *Argumentum ad Passiones*, an Address to the *Passions*; or if it be made publickly, 'tis called an *Appeal to the People*.

After all these Divisions of *Syllogism* or *Argument* arising from the *middle Term*, there is one Distinction proper to be mentioned which arises from the *Premisses*. An Argument is called *uniform* when both the *Premisses* are derived from the same Springs of Knowledge, whether it be *Sense*, *Reason*, *Consci-*

C.II.S.8. *The right use of Reason.* 467

*Consciousness, human Faith, or divine Faith:* But when the two Premisses are derived from different Springs of Knowledge, 'tis called a *mixt Argument*.

Thus the *second Chapter* is finished, and a particular Account given of all the *chief Kinds of Syllogisms* or Arguments which are made use of among Men, or treated of in *Logic*, together with *special Rules* for the Formation of them, as far as is necessary.

If a Syllogism agree with the Rules which are given for the Construction and Regulation of it, 'tis called a *true Argument*: If it disagree with these Rules, it is a *Paralogism*, or *false Argument*: But when a false Argument puts on the Face and Appearance of a true One, then it is properly called a *Sophism* or *Fallacy*, which shall be the Subject of the next Chapter.





## C H A P. III.

*The Doctrine of Sophisms.*

FROM Truth nothing can really follow but what is *true*: Whensoever therefore we find a *false Conclusion* drawn from Premisses which seem to be true, there must be some Fault in the Deduction or Inference; or else one of the Premisses is not true in the Sense in which it is used in that Argument.

When an Argument carries the Face of Truth with it, and yet leads us into Mistake, 'tis a *Sophism*; and there is some Need of a *particular Description* of these fallacious Arguments, that we may with more Ease and Readiness detect and solve them.



S E C T. I.

*Of several Kinds of Sophisms, and  
their Solution.*

**A**S the Rules of *right Judgment* and of *good Ratiocination* often coincide with each other, so the Doctrine of Prejudices which was treated of in the second Part of *Logic*, has anticipated a great deal of what might be said on the *Subject of Sophisms*; yet the most remarkable Springs of *false Argumentation* are reduced by Logicians to some of the following Heads.

I. The first sort of Sophism is called *Ignoratio Elenchi*, or a *Mistake of the Question*; that is, when something else is proved which has neither any necessary Connection or Inconsistency with the Thing enquired, and consequently gives no Determination to the Enquiry, tho' it may seem at first Sight to determine the Question; as, if any should conclude that *St. Paul* was not a *native Jew*, by proving that he was *born a Roman*; or if they should pretend to determine

mine that *he was neither Roman, nor Jew*, by proving that he was *born at Tarsus in Cilicia*: These Sophisms are refuted by shewing that all these three may be true; for he was born of *Jewish Parents* in the *City of Tarsus*, and by some peculiar Privilege granted to his Parents, or his native City, he was born a *Denizon of Rome*. Thus there is neither of these three Characters of the Apostle inconsistent with each other, and therefore the proving one of them true does not refute the others.

Or if the Question be proposed, *Whether Excess of Wine can be hurtful to him that drinks it*, and the Sophister should prove that *it revives his Spirits, it exhilarates his Soul, it gives a Man Courage, and makes him strong and active*, and then he takes it for granted that he has prov'd his Point. But the Respondent may easily shew that tho' *Wine may do all this*, yet it may be *fnally hurtful both to the Soul and Body of him that drinks it to Excess*.

*Disputers* when they grow warm are ready to run into this Fallacy: They dress up the Opinion of their Adversa-

ry as they please, and ascribe Sentiments to him which he doth not acknowledge; and when they have with a great deal of Pomp attack'd and confounded these Images of Straw of their own making, they triumph over their Adversary as though they had utterly confuted his Opinion.

'Tis a Fallacy of the same kind which a *Disputant* is guilty of when he finds that his Adversary is too hard for him, and that he cannot fairly prove the Question first propos'd, he then with Slyness and Subtilty turns the Discourse aside to some other kindred Point which he can prove, and exults in that new Argument wherein his Opponent never contradicted him.

The Way to prevent this *Fallacy* is by keeping the Eye fixt on the precise Point of Dispute, and neither wandering from it ourselves, nor suffering our Antagonist to wander from it, or substitute any thing else in its Room.

II. The next Sophism is called *Petio Principii*, or a *Supposition of what is not granted*; that is, when any Proposition is proved by the same Proposition in  
other



other Words, or by something that is equally uncertain and disputed: As if any one undertake to prove that the *human Soul is extended through all the Parts of the Body*, because it *resides in every Member*, which is but the same Thing in other Words. Or if a *Papist* should pretend to prove that *his Religion is the only Catholick Religion*, and is *derived from Christ and his Apostles*, because it agrees with the *Doctrine of all the Fathers of the Church, all the holy Martyrs, and all the Christian World throughout all Ages*: Whereas this is a great Point in Contest, whether their Religion does agree with that of all the Antients, and the primitive Christians or no.

III. That sort of Fallacy which is called a *Circle* is very near akin to the *Petitio Principii*; as, when one of the Premisses in a Syllogism is questioned and opposed, and we pretend to prove it by the Conclusion: Or, when in a Train of Syllogisms we prove the last by recurring to what was the Conclusion of the first. The *Papists* are famous at this sort of Fallacy, when they  
*prove*

C.III.S.1. *The right use of Reason.* 473  
*prove the Scripture to be the Word of God by the Authority or infallible Testimony of their Church; and when they are called to shew the infallible Authority of their Church, they pretend to prove it by the Scripture.*

IV. The next kind of Sophism is called *non Causa pro Causâ*, or the *Assignment of a false Cause*. This the *peripatetick* Philosophers were guilty of continually, when they told us that certain Beings, which they called *substantial Forms*, were the Springs of Colour, Motion, Vegetation, and the various Operations of natural Beings in the animate and inanimate World; when they informed us that *Nature was terribly afraid of a Vacuum*, and that this was the Cause why the Water would not fall out of a long Tube if it was turned upside down: The *Moderns* as well as the *Antients* fall into this Fallacy whensoever they positively assign the Reasons of natural Appearances, without sufficient Experiments to prove them.

*Astrologers* are overrun with this sort of Fallacies, and they cheat the People grossly

grossly by pretending to *tell Fortunes*, and to deduce the Cause of the various Occurrences in the Lives of Men, from the *various Positions of the Stars and Planets*, which they call *Aspects*.

When *Comets* and *Eclipses of the Sun and Moon* are construed to signify the Fate of Princes, the Revolution of States, Famine, Wars and Calamities of all kinds, 'tis a Fallacy that belongs to this Rank of *Sophisms*.

There is scarce any thing more common in human Life than this sort of deceitful Argument. If any two accidental Events happen to concur, one is presently made the Cause of the other. *If Titius wronged his Neighbour of a Guinea, and in six Months after he fell down and broke his Leg*, weak Men will impute it to the divine Vengeance on *Titius* for his former Injustice. This Sophism was found also in the early Days of the World: For *when holy Job was surrounded with uncommon Miseries*, his own Friends inferr'd, that *he was a most hainous Criminal*, and charg'd him with *aggravated Guilt as the Cause of his Calamities*; tho' God himself



C.III. S.I. *The right use of Reason.* 475

himself by a Voice from Heaven solv'd this uncharitable Sophism, and clear'd his Servant *Job* of that Charge.

How frequent is it among Men to impute Crimes to wrong Persons? We too often charge that upon the wicked Contrivance and premeditated Malice of a Neighbour, which arose merely from Ignorance, or from unguarded Temper. And on the other Hand, when we have a Mind to excuse ourselves, we practise the same Sophism, and charge that upon our Inadvertence or our Ignorance, which perhaps was design'd Wickedness. What is really done by a Necessity of Circumstances, we sometimes impute to Choice: And again, we charge that upon Necessity, which was really desir'd and chosen.

Sometimes a Person acts out of Judgment in Opposition to his Inclination; another Person perhaps acts the same Thing out of Inclination, and against his Judgment. 'Tis hard for us to determine with Assurance what are the inward Springs and secret Causes of every Man's Conduct; and therefore we should be cautious and slow in passing a Judgment,

ment, where the Case is not exceeding evident: And if we should mistake, let it rather be on the charitable than on the censorious Side.

'Tis the same *Sophism* that charges *mathematical Learning* with leading the Minds of Men to *Scepticism* and *Infidelity*, and as unjustly accuses the new *Philosophy* of paving the Way to *Heresy* and *Schism*. Thus the *Reformation* from *Popery* has been charg'd with the *Murder and Blood of Millions*, which in Truth is to be imputed to the *Tyranny of the Princes and the Priests*, who would not suffer the People to reform their Sentiments and their Practices according to the Word of God. Thus *Christianity* in the primitive Ages was charg'd by the *Heathens* with all the Calamities which beset the *Roman Empire*, because the Christians renounced the Heathen Gods and Idols.

The Way to relieve ourselves from these Sophisms, and to secure ourselves from the Danger of falling into them, is an honest and diligent Enquiry into the real Nature and Causes of Things, with a constant Watchfulness against all those  
 Prejudices

C.III.S.I. *The right use of Reason.* 477

Prejudices that might warp the Judgment aside from Truth in that Enquiry.

V. The next is called *fallacia Accidentis*, or a Sophism wherein we pronounce concerning the *Nature and essential Properties* of any Subject, according to something which is merely *accidental* to it. This is akin to the former, and is also very frequent in human Life. So if *Opium* or the *Peruvian Bark* has been us'd imprudently or unsuccessfully, whereby the Patient has received Injury, some weaker People absolutely pronounce against the Use of the *Bark* or *Opium* upon all Occasions whatsoever, and are ready to call them *Poison*. So *Wine* has been the accidental Occasion of *Drunkenness* and *Quarrels*; *Learning* and *Printing* may have been the accidental Cause of *Sedition* in a State; the *Reading of the Bible* by Accident hath been abus'd to promote *Heresies* or *destructive Errors*; and for these Reasons they are all pronounced *evil Things*. *Mahomet* forbid his Followers the Use of *Wine*; the *Turks* discourage Learning in their Dominions;

\*



nions ; and the *Papists* forbid the *Scripture* to be read by the *Laity*. But how very unreasonable are these Inferences, and these Prohibitions which are built upon them !

VI. The next *Sophism* borders upon the former ; and that is when we argue from that which is true in *particular Circumstances* to prove the same thing true *absolutely, simply, and abstracted from all Circumstances* ; this is called in the Schools a *Sophism à dicto secundum quid ad dictum simpliciter* ; as, *That which is bought in the Shambles is eaten for Dinner. Raw Meat is bought in the Shambles ; therefore raw Meat is eaten for Dinner.* Or thus, *Livy writes Fables and Improbabilities when he describes Prodigies and Omens ; therefore Livy's Roman History is not to be believed.* Or thus, *There may be some Mistake of Transcribers in some Part of Scripture ; therefore Scripture alone is not a safe Guide for our Faith.*

This sort of *Sophism* has its *Reverse* also ; as, when we argue from that which is true *simply and absolutely* to  
 prove

C.III.S.I. *The right use of Reason.* 479

prove the same thing true in *all particular Circumstances whatsoever* \*; as, if a *Traytor* should argue from the sixth Commandment, *thou shalt not Murder*, to prove that *he himself ought not to be hanged*: Or if a mad Man should tell me, *I ought not to withhold his Sword from him, because no Man ought to withhold the Property of another*.

These two last *Species of Sophisms* are easily solved by shewing the Difference betwixt Things in their *absolute Nature*, and the same Things surrounded with *peculiar Circumstances*, and considered in Regard to special Times, Places, Persons and Occasions, or by shewing the Difference between a *moral* and a *metaphysical Universality*.

VII. The Sophisms of *Composition and Division* come next to be mentioned.

The *Sophism of Composition* is when we infer any thing concerning Ideas in

---

\* This is arguing from a *moral Universality* which admits of some Exceptions, in the same Manner as may be argued from *metaphysical* or a *natural Universality*, which admits of no Exceptions.

a *compounded Sense*, which is only true in a *divided Sense*. As when it is said in the Gospel that *Christ made the Blind to see*, and the *Deaf to hear*, and the *Lame to walk*, we ought not to infer hence that *Christ performed Contradictions*; but those who were blind before were made to see, and those who were deaf before were made to hear, &c. So when the Scripture assures us *the worst of Sinners may be saved*, it signifies only that *they who have been the worst of Sinners* may repent and be saved, not that they shall be saved in their Sins. Or if any one should argue thus, *Two and three are even and odd; five are two and three; therefore five are even and odd*. Here that is very falsely inferr'd concerning *two and three in Union*, which is only true of them *divided*.

The *Sophism of Division* is when we infer the same Thing concerning Ideas in a *divided Sense*, which is only true in a *compounded Sense*; as, if we should pretend to prove that *every Soldier in the Grecian Army put an hundred thousand Persians to Flight*, because the  
Grecian



C.III.S.1. *The right use of Reason.* 481  
*Grecian Soldiers did so.* Or if a Man  
should argue thus; *five is one Number;*  
*two and three are five;* therefore *two*  
*and three are one Number.*

This sort of Sophisms is committed when the Word *All* is taken in a *collective* and a *distributive* Sense, without a due Distinction; as, if any one should reason thus; *All the musical Instruments of the Jewish Temple made a noble Consort: The Harp was a musical Instrument of the Jewish Temple;* therefore *the Harp made a noble Consort.*

'Tis the same Fallacy when the Word *All* is distributed into *Species* in one Proposition, and into *Individuals* in another; as, *All Animals were in Noah's Ark;* therefore *no Animals perished in the Flood:* Whereas in the Premise *all Animals* signifies *every kind of Animals*, which does not exclude or deny the drowning of a thousand *Individuals.*

VIII. The last sort of *Sophisms* arises from our *Abuse of the Ambiguity of Words*, which is the largest and most extensive kind of Fallacy, and indeed  
Y several

indeed several of the former *Fallacies* might be reduced to this Head.

When the Words or Phrases are *plainly equivocal*, they are called *Sophisms of Equivocation*; as, if we should argue thus, *He that sends forth a Book into the Light, desires it to be read; He that throws a Book into the Fire, sends it into the Light*; therefore, *He that throws a Book into the Fire desires it to be read.*

This Sophism, as well as the foregoing, and all of the like Nature, are solved by shewing the different Senses of the Words, Terms or Phrases. Here *Light* in the major Proposition signifies the *Publick View of the World*; in the minor it signifies the *Brightness of Flame or Fire*, and therefore the Syllogism has four Terms, or rather it has no *middle Term*, and proves nothing.

But where such *gross Equivocations and Ambiguities* appear in Arguments, there is little Danger of imposing upon ourselves or others. The greatest Danger, and which we are perpetually expos'd to in Reasoning, is, where the two Senses or Significations of one Term

C.III.S.1. *The right use of Reason.* 483

Term are near akin, and not plainly distinguished, and yet they are sufficiently different to lead us into great Mistakes, if we are not watchful. And indeed the greatest Part of Controversies in the sacred or civil Life, arise from the different Senses that are put upon Words, and the different Ideas which are included in them, as has been shewn at large in the first Part of Logick, Chap. IV. which treats of *Words and Terms*.

There is after all these, another Sort of Sophism which is wont to be called an *imperfect Enumeration*, or a *false Induction*, when from a few Experiments or Observations, Men infer general Theorems, and universal Propositions. But this is sufficiently noticed in the foregoing Chapter, where we treated of that Sort of Syllogism which is called *Induction*.



## SECT. II.

*Two general Tests of true Syllogisms,  
and Methods of solving all Sophisms.*

BESIDES the special Description of *true Syllogisms* and *Sophisms* already given, and the Rules by which the one are fram'd, and the other refuted, there are these two *general Methods* of reducing all Syllogisms whatsoever to a *Test* of their Truth or Falseness.

I. The first is that *the Premisses must* (at least implicitly) *contain the Conclusion*; or thus, *One of the Premisses must contain the Conclusion, and the other must shew that the Conclusion is contained in it.* The Reason of the Rule is this; When any Proposition is offered to be proved, it is necessary to find another Proposition which confirms it, which may be called the *containing Proposition*; but because the second must not contain the first in an express Manner, and in the same Words,

C.III. S.2. *The right use of Reason.* 485

Words \*, therefore it is necessary that a third or *ostensive* Proposition be found out to shew that the second Proposition contains the first which was to be proved. Let us make an Experiment of this Syllogism. *Whosoever is a Slave to his natural Inclinations is miserable; the wicked Man is a Slave to his natural Inclinations; therefore the wicked Man is miserable.* Here 'tis evident that the major Proposition contains the Conclusion; for under the general Character of a *Slave to natural Inclinations*, a *wicked Man* is contained or included; and the minor Proposition declares it; whence the *Conclusion* is evidently deduced that *the wicked Man is miserable.*

In many affirmative Syllogisms we may suppose either the major or the minor to contain the Conclusion, and the o-

---

\* It is confess'd that *conditional* and *disjunctive* Propositions do expressly contain all that is in the Conclusion; but then 'tis not in a *certain and conclusive Manner*, but only in a *dubious* Form of Speech, and mingled with other Terms, and therefore 'tis not the *same express Proposition*.

ther to shew it; for there is no great Difference: But in *negative* Syllogisms 'tis the negative Proposition that contains the Conclusion, and the affirmative Proposition shews it; as, *every wise Man masters his Passions; no angry Man masters his Passions; therefore no angry Man is wise.* Here it is more natural to suppose the Minor to be the *containing Proposition*; 'tis the Minor implicitly denies *Wisdom* concerning *an angry Man*, because *mastering the Passions* is included in *Wisdom*, and the major shews it.

*Note*, this Rule may be applied to *complex* and *conjunctive*, as well as *simple* Syllogisms, and is adapted to shew the Truth or Falshood of any of them.

II. The second is this; *As the Terms in every Syllogism are usually repeated twice, so they must be taken precisely in the same Sense in both Places*: For the greatest Part of Mistakes that arise in forming Syllogisms, is derived from some little Difference in the Sense of one of the Terms in the two Parts of the Syllogism wherein it is used. Let us consider the following Sophisms.

1. 'Tis



### C.III.S.2. *The right use of Reason.* 487

1. 'Tis a Sin to kill a Man; a Murderer is a Man; therefore 'tis a Sin to kill a Murderer. Here the Word *Kill* in the first Proposition signifies to kill unjustly, or without a Law; in the Conclusion 'tis taken absolutely for putting a Man to Death in general, and therefore the Inference is not good.

2. *What I am, you are not; but I am a Man; therefore you are not a Man.* This is a Relative Syllogism: But if it be reduced to a regular categorical Form, it will appear there is Ambiguity in the Terms, thus; *what I am, is a Man; you are not what I am; therefore you are not a Man.* Here *what I am*, in the major Proposition, is taken specifically for *my Nature*; but in the minor Proposition the same Words are taken individually for *my Person*; therefore the Inference must be false, for the Syllogism doth not take the Term *what I am* both Times in the same Sense.

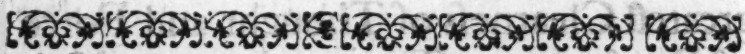
3. *He that says you are an Animal, says true; but he that says you are a Goose, says you are an Animal; therefore he that says you are a Goose, says true.* In the major Proposition the Word *Animal* is the Predicate of an incidental Proposition; which incidental Proposition being affirmative, renders the Predicate of it particular, according to Chap. II<sup>d</sup>, Sect. 2<sup>d</sup>, Axiom 3. and consequently the Word *Animal* there signifies only *human Animality*. In the minor Proposition, the Word *Animal* for the same Reason, signifies the *Animality of a Goose*; thereby it becomes an ambiguous Term, and unfit to build the Conclusion upon. Or if you say, the Word *Animal* in the Minor is taken for *human Animality*, then the Minor is evidently false.

'Tis from this last *general Test* of Syllogisms that we derive the Custom of the *Respondent* in answering the Arguments of the *Opponent*, which is to distinguish upon the major or minor Proposition, and declare which Term

Y 4


is

is used in two Senses, and in what Sense the Proposition may be true, and in what Sense it is false.



# CH A P. IV.

X *Some general Rules to direct our Reasoning.*

 **M**OST of the *general* and *special* Directions given to form our Judgments aright in the preceding Part of *Logic*, might be rehearsed here, for the *Judgments* which we pass upon Things are generally built on some secret *Reasoning* or *Argument* by which the Proposition is supposed to be proved. But there may be yet some further Assistances given to our *Reasoning Powers* in their Search after Truth, and an Observation of the following *Rules* will be of great Importance for that End.

**I. RULE.** *Accustom yourselves to clear and distinct Ideas, to evident Propositions,*

C. IV. *The right use of Reason.* 489

ous, to strong and convincing Arguments. Converse much with those Friends and those Books and those Parts of Learning where you meet with the greatest Clearness of Thought and Force of Reasoning. The *mathematical Sciences*, and particularly *Arithmetick*, *Geometry*, and *Mechanicks* abound with these Advantages: And if there were nothing valuable in them for the Uses of human Life, yet the very speculative Parts of this sort of Learning are well worth our Study; for by perpetual Examples they teach us to conceive with Clearness, to connect our Ideas and Propositions in a Train of Dependance, to reason with Strength and Demonstration, and to distinguish between Truth and Falshood. Something of these Sciences should be studied by every Man who pretends to Learning, and that (as Mr. Lock expresses it) *not so much to make us Mathematicians, as to make us reasonable Creatures.*

We should gain such a Familiarity with Evidence of Perception, and Force of Reasoning, and get such a Habit of discerning clear Truths, that the Mind



may be soon offended with Obscurity and Confusion: Then we shall (as it were) naturally, and with Ease restrain our Minds from rash Judgment, before we attain just Evidence of the Proposition which is offered to us; and we shall with the same Ease, and (as it were) naturally seize and embrace every Truth that is proposed with just Evidence.

This Habit of *conceiving clearly*, of *judging justly*, and of *reasoning well*, is not to be attained merely by the Happiness of Constitution, the Brightness of Genius, the best natural Parts, or the best Collection of logical Precepts. 'Tis *Custom* and *Practice* that must form and establish this Habit. We must apply ourselves to it till we perform all this readily, and without reflecting on Rules. A *coherent Thinker*, and a *strict Reasoner* is not to be made at once by a Set of Rules, any more than a *good Painter* or *Musician* may be form'd *extempore* by an excellent Lecture on Music or Painting. 'Tis of infinite Importance therefore in our younger Years to be taught both the *Value* and the *Practice*

C. IV. *The right use of Reason.* 491

*Practice* of conceiving clearly, and reasoning right : For when we are grown up to the middle of Life, or past it, 'tis no Wonder that we should not learn good Reasoning, any more than that an *ignorant Clown* should not be able to learn fine Language, Dancing, or a courtly Behaviour, when his rustic Airs have grown up with him till the Age of Forty.

For want of this Care *some Persons* of Rank and Education dwell all their Days among obscure Ideas; they conceive and judge always in Confusion, they take weak Arguments for Demonstration, they are led away with the Disguises and Shadows of Truth. Now if such Persons happen to have a bright Imagination, a Volubility of Speech, and a Copiousness of Language, they not only impose many Errors upon their own Understandings, but they stamp the Image of their own Mistakes upon their Neighbours also, and spread their Errors abroad.

'Tis a Matter of just Lamentation and Pity to consider the Weakness of the *common Multitude of Mankind* in this Respect, how they receive any thing into their Assent upon the most trifling Grounds. True Reasoning hath very little Share in forming their Opinions. They resist the most convincing Arguments by an obstinate Adherence to their Prejudices, and believe the most improbable Things with the greatest Assurance. They talk of the abstrusest Mysteries, and determine upon them with the utmost Confidence, and without just Evidence either from Reason or Revelation. A confus'd Heap of dark and inconsistent Ideas makes up a good Part of their Knowledge in Matters of *Philosophy* as well as *Religion*, having never been taught the Use and Value of clear Ideas and just Reasoning.

Yet it must be still confess that there are some *Mysteries* in Religion, both *natural* and *reveal'd*, as well as some *abstruse Points* in Philosophy, wherein the Wise as well as the Unwise must be content with obscure Ideas. There are several Things especially relating to the invisible World, which are unsearchable in our present State, and therefore we must believe what Revelation plainly dictates, tho' the Ideas may be obscure. Reason itself demands this of us; but we should seek for the brightest Evidence both of Ideas, and of the Connection of them, wheresoever it is attainable.

II<sup>d</sup> RULE. *Enlarge your general Acquaintance with Things daily, in order to attain a rich Furniture of Topics or middle Terms whereby those Propositions which occur may be either proved or disproved; but especially meditate and enquire with great Diligence and Exactness into the Nature, Properties, Circumstances and Relations of the particular Subject about which you judge or argue.* Consider its Causes, Effects, Consequences, Adjuncts, Opposites, Signs, &c. so far as is needful to your present Purpose. You should survey a Question round about, and on all Sides, and extend your Views as far as possible, to every Thing that has a Connection with it. This Practice has many Advantages in it; as,

I. It



#### C.IV. *The right use of Reason.* 493

1. It will be a Means to suggest to your Minds proper Topics for Argument about any Proposition that relates to the same Subject.
2. It will enable you with greater Readiness and Justness of Thought, to give an Answer to any sudden Question upon that Subject, whether it arises in your own Mind, or to be proposed by others.
3. This will instruct you to give a plainer and speedier Solution of any Difficulties that may attend the Theme of your Discourse, and to refute the Objections of those who have espoused a contrary Opinion.
4. By such a large Survey of the whole Subject in all its Properties and Relations, you will be better secured from Inconsistencies, *i. e.* from asserting or denying any thing in one Place, which contradicts what you have asserted or denied in another: And to attain these Ends, an Extensiveness of Understanding, and a large Memory are of unspeakable Service.

One would be ready to wonder sometimes how easily great and wise, and learned Men are led into Assertions in some Parts of the same Treatise, which are found to be scarce consistent with what they have asserted in other Places: But the true Reason is the *Narrowness of the Mind of Man*, that it cannot take in all the innumerable Properties and Relations of one Subject with a single View; and therefore whilst they are intent on one particular Part of their Theme, they bend all their Force of Thought to prove or disprove some Proposition that relates to that Part, without a sufficient Attention to the Consequences which may flow from it, and which may unhappily affect another Part of the same Subject, and by this Means they are sometimes led to say things which are inconsistent. In such a Case the great Dealers in Dispute and Controversy take Pleasure to cast *Nonsense* and *Self-Contradiction* on their Antagonist with huge and hateful Reproaches. For my Part, I rather choose to pity human Nature, whose necessary Narrowness of Understanding exposes us all to some Degrees of this Frailty. But the most extensive Survey possible of our whole Subject

Subject is the best Remedy against it. 'Tis our judging and arguing upon a partial View of Things, that exposes us to Mistakes, and pushes us into Absurdities, or at least to the very Borders of them.

III<sup>d</sup> RULE. *In searching the Knowledge of Things, always keep the precise Point of the present Question in your Eye. Take heed that you add nothing to it while you are arguing, nor omit any Part of it.* Watch carefully lest any new Ideas slide in to mingle themselves either with the Subject or the Predicate. See that the Question be not alter'd by the Ambiguity of any Word taken in different Senses; nor let any secret Prejudices of your own, or the sophistical Arts of others, cheat your Understanding by changing the Question, or shuffling in any thing else in its Room.

And for this End 'tis useful to keep the precise Matter of Enquiry as *simple* as may be, and *disengag'd from a Complication of Ideas*, which do not necessarily belong to it. By admitting a Complication of Ideas, and taking too many Things at once into one Question, the Mind is sometimes dazzled and bewildered, and the Truth is lost in such

C. IV. *The right use of Reason.* 495

a Variety and Confusion of Ideas; whereas by limiting and narrowing the Question, you take a fuller Survey of the Whole of it.

By keeping the Point of Enquiry in our constant View, we shall be secured from sudden, rash, and impertinent Responses and Determinations, which some have obtruded instead of Solutions and solid Answers, before they perfectly knew the Question.

IV<sup>th</sup> RULE. *When you have exactly considered the precise Point of Enquiry, or what is unknown in the Question, then consider what, and how much you know already of this Question, or of the Ideas and Terms of which it is composed.* It is by a Comparison of the known and unknown Parts of the Question together, that you find what Reference the Part known hath unto, or what Connection it hath with the Thing that is sought: Those Ideas whereby the known and unknown Parts of the Question are connected, will furnish you with middle Terms or Arguments whereby the Thing proposed may be prov'd or disprov'd.

In



In this Part of your Work (*viz.*) *Comparing Ideas together*, take due Time, and be not too hasty to come to a Determination, especially in Points of Importance. Some Men when they see a little Agreement or Disagreement between Ideas, they presume a great deal, and so jump into the Conclusion: This is a short Way to Fancy and Conceit, but a most unsafe and uncertain Way to true Knowledge and Wisdom.

V<sup>th</sup> RULE. *In choosing your middle Terms or Arguments to prove any Question, always take such Topics as are surest, and least fallible, and which carry the greatest Evidence and Strength with them.* Be not so solicitous about the Number, as the Weight of your Arguments, especially in proving any Proposition which admits of *natural Certainty*, or of *complete Demonstration*. Many Times we do Injury to a Cause by dwelling upon trifling Arguments. We amuse our Hearers with Uncertainties by multiplying the Number of feeble Reasonings, before we mention those which are more substantial, conclusive, and convincing. And

C. IV. *The right use of Reason.* 497

too often we yield up our own Assent to mere probable Arguments, where certain Proofs may be obtained.

Yet it must be confest there are many Cases wherein the *growing Number of probable Arguments* increases the Degree of Probability, and gives a great and sufficient Confirmation to the Truth which is sought; as,

(1.) When we are enquiring the true Sense of any Word or Phrase, we are more confirmed in the Signification of it by finding the same Expression so used in several Authors, or in several Places of the same Author. (2.) When we are searching out the true Meaning or Opinion of any Writer, or inquiring into any sacred Doctrine of Scripture, we come to a surer Determination of the Truth by several distinct Places wherein the same Thing is express'd, or plainly imply'd, because 'tis not so probable that an honest skilful Reader should mistake the Meaning of the Writer in many Places, as he may in one or two. (3.) When we would prove the Importance of any scriptural Doctrine or Duty, the Multitude of Texts wherein it is repeated and inculcated upon the Reader, seem naturally to instruct us that it is a Matter of greater Importance, than other Things which are but slightly or singly mentioned in the Bible. (4.) In searching out Matters of Fact in Times past or in distant Places (in which Case *moral Evidence* is sufficient, and *moral Certainty* is the utmost which can be attained) here we derive a greater Assurance of the Truth of it by a Number of Persons, or a Multitude of Circumstances concurring to bear Witness to it. (5.) From many Experiments in natural Philosophy, we more safely infer a general Theorem, than we can from one or two. (6.) In Matters of present Practice, both sacred and civil,

civil, we must content ourselves oftentimes with a mere Preponderation of probable Reasons or Arguments. Where there are several Reasons on each Side, for and against a Thing that is to be done or omitted, a small Argument added to the Heap may justly turn the Balance on one Side, and determine the Judgment, as I have noted in the 2<sup>d</sup> Part of *Logic*.

To conclude; a growing Acquaintance with Matters of Learning, and a daily Improvement of our Understandings in Affairs human and divine, will best teach us to judge and distinguish in what Cases the Number of Arguments adds to their Weight and Force: 'Tis only Experience can fully inform us when we must be determin'd by *probable Topics*, and when we must seek and expect *Demonstrations*.

**VITH RULE.** *Prove your Conclusion (as far as possible) by some Propositions that are in themselves more plain, evident, and certain than the Conclusion; or at least such as are more known, and more intelligible to the Person whom you would convince.* If we neglect this *Rule*, we shall endeavour to enlighten that which is obscure by something equally or more obscure, and to confirm that which is doubtful by something equally or more uncertain.

Common



C. IV. *the right use of Reason.* 499

Common Sense dictates to all Men, that it is impossible to establish any Truth, and to convince others of it, but by something that is better known to them than that Truth is.

VII<sup>th</sup> RULE. *Labour in all your Arguings to enlighten the Understanding, as well as to conquer and captivate the Judgment.* Argue in such a Manner as may give a natural, distinct, and solid Knowledge of Things to your Hearers, as well as to force their Assent by a mere Proof of the Question. Now to attain this End, the chief Topic or Medium of your Demonstration should be fetch'd, as much as possible, from the Nature of the Thing to be prov'd, or from those Things which are most naturally connected with it.

*Geometricians* sometimes break this Rule without Necessity, two Ways, (*viz.*)

1. When they prove one Proposition only by shewing what Absurdities will follow if the contradictory Proposition be supposed or admitted: This is called *Reductio ad absurdum* \*, or, *Demonstratio per impossibile*;

as

---

\* Note, This Rule chiefly refers to the Establishment of some Truth, rather than to the Refutation of Error.

'Tis

as for Instance; When they prove all the *Radii* of a Circle to be equal, by supposing one *Radius* to be longer or shorter than another, and then shewing what absurd Consequences will follow. This, I confess, forces the Assent, but it does not enlighten the Mind by shewing the true Reason and Cause why all *Radii* are equal, which is derived from the very Construction of a Circle: For since a Circle is formed by fixing one End of a streight Line in the Centre, and moving the other End round (or, which is all one, by Compasses kept open to a certain Extent) it follows evidently that every Part of the Circumference being thus described, must be equally distant from the Centre, and therefore the *Radii*, which are Lines from the Centre to the Circumference, must all be equal.

2. Geometricians forget this Rule when they heap up many far-fetch'd Lines, Figures and Proportions to prove some plain, simple, and obvious Proposition. This is called a *Demonstration per aliena & remota*, or an Argument from unnatural and remote Mediums: As if in order to prove the *Radii* of a Circle are all equal, I should make several Triangles and Squares about the Circle, and then from some Properties and Proportions of Squares and Triangles, prove that the *Radii* of a Circle are equal.

Yet it must be confest that sometimes such Questions happen, that 'tis hardly possible to prove them by direct Arguments drawn from the Nature of

---

'Tis a very common and useful Way of arguing to refute a false Proposition by shewing what evident Falseness or Absurdity will follow from it: For what Proposition soever is really absurd and false, does effectually prove that Principle to be false from which it is derived; so that this Way of refuting an Error is not so usually call'd, *Reductio ad absurdum*.

Things,

C. IV. *The right use of Reason.* 501  
Things, &c. and then it may not only  
be lawful, but necessary to use indirect  
Proofs, and Arguments drawn from  
remote Mediums, or from the Absurdity  
of the contradictory Supposition.

Such *indirect* and *remote* Arguments  
may also be sometimes used to confirm  
a Proposition which has been before  
proved by Arguments more *direct* and  
*immediate*.

VIII<sup>th</sup> RULE. Tho' Arguments should  
give Light to the Subject, as well as  
constrain the Assent, yet you must learn  
to distinguish well between an Explica-  
tion and an Argument; and neither  
impose upon yourselves, nor suffer  
yourselves to be impos'd upon by others,  
by mistaking a mere Illustration for a  
convincing Reason.

*Axioms* themselves, or self evident  
Propositions may want an Explication  
or Illustration, tho' they are not to be  
proved by Reasoning.

*Similitudes* and *Allusions* have often-  
times a very happy Influence to explain  
some difficult Truth, and to render the  
Idea of it familiar and easy. Where  
the Resemblance is just and accurate,  
the



the Influence of a *Simile* may proceed so far as to shew the Possibility of the Thing in Question: But *Similitudes* must not be taken as a solid Proof of the Truth or Existence of those Things to which they have a Resemblance. A too great Deference paid to *Similitudes*, or an utter Rejection of them seem to be two Extreams, and ought to be avoided. The late ingenious Mr. *Lock*, even in his Enquiries after Truth, makes great Use of *Similes* for frequent Illustration, and is very happy in the Invention of them, tho' he warns us also lest we mistake them for conclusive Arguments.

Yet let it be noted here, that a *Parable* or a *Similitude* used by any Author, may give a sufficient Proof of the true Sense and Meaning of that Author, provided that we draw not this *Similitude* beyond the Scope and Design for which it was brought; as when our Saviour affirms, *Rev. iii. 3. I will come on thee as a Thief*, this will plainly prove that he describes the *Unexpectedness of his Appearance*, tho' it will by no Means be drawn to signify any *Injustice in his Design*.

C. IV. *The right use of Reason.* 303

IX<sup>th</sup> RULE. *In your whole Course of Reasoning, keep your Mind sincerely intent on the Pursuit of Truth; and follow solid Argument wheresoever it leads you. Let not a Party-Spirit, or any Passion or Prejudice whatsoever, stop or avert the Current of your Reasoning in the Quest of true Knowledge.*

When you are enquiring therefore into any Subject, maintain a due Regard to the Arguments and Objections on both Sides of a Question: Consider, compare, and balance them well before you determine for one Side. 'Tis a frequent, but a very faulty Practice to hunt after Arguments only to make good one Side of a Question, and entirely to neglect and refuse those which favour the other Side. If we have not given a due Weight to Arguments on both Sides, we do but wilfully misguide our Judgment, and abuse our Reason, by forbidding its Search after Truth. When we espouse Opinions by a secret Bias on the Mind thro' the Influences of *Fear, Hope, Honour, Credit, Interest*, or any other *Prejudice*, and then seek Arguments only to support those

Opinions,

Opinions, we have neither done our Duty to God or to our selves; and 'tis a Matter of mere Chance if we stumble upon Truth in our Way to Ease and Preferment. The *Power of Reasoning* was given us by our Maker for this very End, *to pursue Truth*; and we abuse one of his richest Gifts, if we basely yield it up to be led astray by any of the meaner Powers of Nature, or the perishing Interests of this Life. *Reason* itself, if honestly obey'd, will lead us to receive the divine *Revelation* of the Gospel, where it is duly proposed, and this will shew us the Path of Life everlasting.







THE  
Fourth PART  
OF  
LOGICK.



*Of Disposition and Method.*



IS not merely a *clear and distinct Idea*, a *well-formed Proposition*, or a *just Argument*, that is sufficient to search out and communicate the Knowledge of a Subject. There must be a Variety and Series of them disposed in a due Manner in order to attain this End: And therefore

Z

therefore

therefore 'tis the Design of the *last Part of Logic* to teach us the *Art of Method*. It is that must secure our Thoughts from that Confusion, Darknes, and Mistake which unavoidably attend the Meditations and Discourses even of the brightest Genius who despises the Rules of it.

1. We shall here consider the *Nature of Method*, and the *several Kinds of it*.

2. Lay down the *general Rules of Method*, with a few Particulars under them.



## CHAP. I.

*Of the Nature, and the several Kinds of Method.*



**M**ETHOD, taken in the largest Sense, implies the *placing of several Things, or performing several Operations in such an Order as is most convenient to attain some End proposed*: And in this Sense it is apply'd to all the Works of Nature and Art,

C. I. *The right use of Reason.* 307

Art, to all the divine Affairs of Creation and Providence; and to the Artifices, Schemes, Contrivances and Practices of Mankind, whether in natural, civil, or sacred Affairs.

Now this orderly Disposition of Things includes the Ideas of *Prior*, *Posterior*, and *Simultaneous*; of *Superior*, *Inferior*, and *Equal*; of *Beginning*, *End*, and *Middle*, &c. which are described more particularly among the *general Affections of Being* in *Ontology*.

But in *Logic Method* is usually taken in a more limited Sense, and the Nature of it is thus described: Method is *the Disposition of a Variety of Thoughts on any Subject in such Order as may best serve to find out unknown Truths, to explain and confirm Truths that are known, or to fix them in the Memory.*

It is distributed into two general Kinds (*viz.*) *Natural* and *Arbitrary*.

*Natural Method* is that which observes the Order of Nature, and proceeds in such a Manner as that the Knowledge of the Things which follow depends in a great Measure on the Things which go before, and this is



308 LOGICK: Or, Part IV.  
twofold, (*viz.*) *Synthetick* and *Analytick*, which are sometimes called *Synthesis* and *Analysis* \*.

---

\* The Word *Analysis* has three or four Senses, which it may not be improper to take Notice of here.

1. It signifies the general and particular Heads of a Discourse, with their mutual Connexions, both coordinate and subordinate, drawn out by way of Abstract into one or more Tables, which are frequently placed like an *Index* at the Beginning or End of a Book.

2. It signifies the resolving of a Discourse into its various Subjects and Arguments; as when any Writing of the ancient Prophets is resolv'd into the *prophetical*, *historical*, *doctrinal*, and *practical* Parts of it, 'tis said to be *analysed in general*. When a Sentence is distinguish'd into the *Nouns*, the *Verbs*, *Pronouns*, *Adverbs*, and other *Particles* of Speech which compose it, then it is said to be *analys'd grammatically*. When the same Sentence is distinguish'd into *Subject* and *Predicate*, *Proposition*, *Argument*, *Act*, *Object*, *Cause*, *Effect*, *Adjunct*, *Opposite*, &c. then 'tis *analys'd logically* and *metaphysically*. This last is what is chiefly meant in the *theological* Schools, when they speak of *analysing a Text of Scripture*.

3. *Analysis* signifies particularly the Science of *Algebra*, wherein a Question being propos'd, one or more Letters, as, *x*, *y*, *z*, or Vowels, as, *a*, *e*, *i*, &c. are made use of to signify the unknown Number, which being intermingled with several known Numbers in the Question, is at last by the Rules of Art separated or releas'd from that Entanglement, and its particular Value is found out by shewing its *Equation*, or Equality to some known Number.

4. It signifies *analytical Method*, as here explain'd in *Logic*.

*Synthetick*

C. I. *The right use of Reason.* 309

*Synthetick Method* is that which begins with the Parts\*, and leads onward to the Knowledge of the Whole; it begins with the most simple Principles, and general Truths, and proceeds by Degrees to that which is drawn from them, or compounded of them; and therefore 'tis called the *Method of Composition*.

*Analytick Method* takes the whole Compound as it finds it, whether it be a *Species* or an *Individual*, and leads us into the Knowledge of it by resolving it into its first Principles or Parts, its generic Nature, and its special Properties; and therefore 'tis called the *Method of Resolution*.

As *Synthetick Method* is generally used in teaching the Sciences after they are invented, so *analytick* is most practised in finding out Things unknown.

---

\* Note, It is confest that *Synthesis* often begins with the *Genus*, and proceeds to the *Species* and *Individuals*. But the *Genus* or generic Nature is then considered only as a *physical* or *essential Part* of the *Species*, tho' it be sometimes called an *universal* or *logical whole*. Thus *synthetick Method* maintains its own Description still, for it begins with the *Parts*, and proceeds to the *Whole* which is composed of them.

Tho' it must be confest that both Methods are sometimes employed both to find out Truth, and to communicate it.

If we know the Parts of any Subject easier and better than the Whole, we consider the Parts distinctly, and by putting them together we come to the Knowledge of the Whole. So in *Grammar* we learn first to know *Letters*, we joyn them to make *Syllables*, out of *Syllables* we compose *Words*, and out of *Words* we make *Sentences* and *Discourses*. So the *Physician* or *Apothecary* knows the Nature and Powers of his *Simples* (*viz.*) his *Drugs*, his *Herbs*, his *Minerals*, &c. and putting them together, and considering their several Verrues, he finds what will be the Nature and Powers of the *Bolus*, or any *compound Medicine*: This is the *synthetic Method*.

But if we are better acquainted with the Whole than we are with particular Parts, then we divide or resolve the Whole into its Parts, and thereby gain a distinct Knowledge of them. So in vulgar Life we learn in the Gross what *Plants* or *Minerals* are; and then by  
Chymistry



C.I. *The right use of Reason.* 311

Chymistry we gain the Knowledge of *Salt, Sulphur, Spirit, Water, Earth,* which are the Principles of them. So we are first acquainted with the whole Body of an *Animal*, and then by *Anatomy* or *Dissection*, we come to learn all the inward and outward Parts of it. This is *analytick Method*.

According to this most general and obvious Idea of *synthetick* and *analytick* Method, they differ from each other as the Way which leads up from a *Valley* to a *Mountain* differs from itself, considered as it leads down from the *Mountain* to the *Valley*; or as St. *Matthew* and St. *Luke* prove *Christ* to be the Son of *Abraham*; *Luke* finds it out by *Analysis*, rising from *Christ* to his *Ancestors*; *Matthew* teaches it in *synthetick* Method, beginning from *Abraham*, and shewing that *Christ* is found among his *Posterity*. Therefore 'tis a usual Thing in the Sciences, when we have by *Analysis* found out a Truth, we use *synthetick* Method to explain and deliver it, and prove it to be true.

In this easy View of Things, these two Kinds of Method may be preserved

conspicuously, and entirely distinct: But the Subjects of Knowledge being infinite, and the Ways whereby we arrive at this Knowledge being almost infinitely various, 'tis very difficult, and almost impossible always to maintain the precise Distinction between these two Methods.

This will evidently appear in the following *Observations*.

Obs. I. *Analytick Method* being used chiefly to find out Things unknown, it is not limited or confined merely to begin with some *whole* Subject, and proceed to the Knowledge of its *Parts*, but it takes its Rise sometimes from any single Part or Property, or from any thing whatsoever that belongs to a Subject which happens to be first and most easily known, and thereby enquires into the more abstruse and unknown Parts, Properties, Causes, Effects, and Modes of it, whether absolute or relative; as for Instance,

(1.) *Analysis* finds out Causes by their Effects. So in the speculative Part of *natural Philosophy*, when we observe *Light*, *Colours*, *Motions*, *Hardness*, *Softness*, and other Properties and Powers of Bodies, or any of the common or uncommon *Appearances* of Things either on Earth or in Heaven, we search out the Causes of them. So by the various *Creatures* we find out the *Creator*, and learn his *Wisdom*, *Power*, and *Goodness*.

(2.) It finds out Effects by their Causes. So the practical and mechanical Part of *natural Philosophy* considers such Powers of Motion, as the *Wind*, the *Fire*, the *Water*, &c. and then contrives what Uses they may be apply'd to, and what will be their Effects in order to make *Mills* and *Engines* of various Kinds.

(3.) It finds out the general and special Nature of a Thing by considering the various Attributes of the Individuals, and observing what is common, and what

is

## C.I. *The right use of Reason.* 513

is proper, what is accidental and what is essential. So by surveying the *Colour*, the *Shape*, *Motion*, *Rest*, *Place*, *Solidity*, *Extension* of Bodies, we come to find that the *Nature of Body* in general is *solid Extension*; because all other *Qualities* of Bodies are changeable, but this belongs to all Bodies, and it endures thro' all Changes; and because this is proper to *Body alone*, and agrees not to any thing else; and 'tis the Foundation of all other Properties.

(4.) It finds out the remaining Properties or Parts of a Thing, by having some Parts or Properties given. So the *Area* of a *Triangle* is found by knowing the *Height* and the *Base*. So by having *two Sides*, and an *Angle* of a *Triangle* given, we find the remaining *Side* and *Angles*. So when we know *Cogitation* is the prime Attribute of a Spirit, we infer its *Immateriality*, and thence its *Immortality*.

(5.) *Analysis* finds the Means necessary to attain a propos'd End by having the End first assign'd. So in *moral*, *political*, *oeconomical* Affairs, having proposed the *Government* of *Self*, a *Family*, a *Society*, or a *Nation*, in order to their best Interest, we consider and search out what are the *proper Laws*, *Rules* and *Means* to effect it. So in the Practices of *Artificers*, and the *Manufactures* of various Kinds, the End being proposed, as *making Cloth*, *Houses*, *Ships*, &c. we find out Ways of composing these things for the several Uses of human Life. But the putting any of these Means in Execution to attain the End, is *synthetic Method*.

Many other Particulars might be represented to shew the various Forms of *analytick Method*, whereby Truth is found out, and some of them come very near to *synthetick*, so as hardly to be distinguished.

Obf. II. Not only the Investigation of Truth, but the Communication of it also is often practis'd in such a Method, as neither agrees precisely to *synthetick* or *analytick*. Some Sciences, if you consider the whole of them in general, are treated in *synthetick* Order; so *Physicks* or *natural Philosophy* begins usually with an Account of the general Nature and Properties of Matter or Bodies,



dies, and by Degrees descends to consider the particular Species of Bodies, with their Powers and Properties; yet 'tis very evident that when Philosophers come to particular Plants and Animals, then by *Chymistry* and *Anatomy* they analyse or resolve those Bodies into their several constituent Parts. On the other Hand *Logic* is begun in *analytick Method*; the whole is divided into its integral Parts, according to the four Operations of the Mind; yet here and there *synthetick* Method is used in the particular Branches of it, for it treats of *Ideas* in general first, and then descends to the several Species of them; it teaches us how Propositions are made up of *Ideas*, and *Syllogisms* of Propositions, which is the Order of Composition.

The *antient scholastick* Writers have taken a great deal of Pains, and engag'd in useless Disputes about these two Methods, and after all have not been able to give such an Account of them as to keep them entirely distinct from each other, neither in the Theory or in the Practice. Some of the *Moderns* have avoided this Confusion in some Measure by confining themselves to describe almost nothing else but the *synthetick* and *analytick* Methods of *Geometricians* and *Algebraists*, whereby they have too much narrow'd the Nature and Rules of Method, as tho' every thing were to be treated in *mathematical* Forms.

Upon the whole I conclude, that neither of these two Methods should be

C. I. *The right use of Reason.* §15

too scrupulously and superstitiously pursued, either in the Invention or in the Communication of Knowledge. 'Tis enough if the *Order of Nature* be but observed in making the Knowledge of Things following depend on the Knowledge of the Things which go before. Oftentimes a *mixed Method* will be found most effectual for these Purposes; and indeed a wise and judicious Prospect of our main End and Design must regulate all Method whatsoever.

Here the *Rules of natural Method* ought to be proposed, (whether it be *analytick*, or *synthetick*, or *mixt* :) but 'tis proper first to give some Account of *arbitrary Method*, lest it be thrust at too great a Distance from the first Mention of it.

*Arbitrary Method* leaves the Order of Nature, and accommodates itself to many Purposes; such as, to treasure up Things, and retain them in Memory; to harangue and persuade Mankind to any Practice in the religious or the civil Life; or to delight, amuse, or entertain the Mind.

As for the *Assistance of the Memory*, in most Things a *natural Order* has an happy Influence; for Reason itself deducing one Thing from another, greatly assists the Memory by the natural Connection and mutual Dependence of Things. But there are various other Methods which Mankind have made use of for this Purpose, and indeed there are some Subjects that can hardly be reduced to *Analysis* or *Synthesis*.

In reading or writing *History*, some follow the Order of the *Governors* of a Nation, and dispose every Transaction under their particular *Reigns*: So the sacred Books of *Kings* and *Chronicles* are written. Some write in *Annals* and *Journals*, and make a new Chapter of every Year. Some put all those Transactions together which relate to *one Subject*; that is, all the Affairs of *one War*, *one League*, *one Confederacy*, *one Council*, &c. tho' it lasted many Years, and under many Rulers.

So in writing the *Lives of Men*, which is called *Biography*, some Authors follow the Track of their *Years*, and place every thing in the precise Order



der of Time when it occur'd: Others throw the *Temper* and *Character* of the Persons, their *private Life*, their *public Stations*, their *personal Occurrences*, their *domestic Conduct*, their *Speeches*, their *Books or Writings*, their *Sickness and Death*, into so many distinct Chapters.

In *Chronology* some Writers make their *Epochas* to begin all with one Letter: So in the Book called *Ductor Historicus*, the Periods all begin with C; as, *Creation*, *Cataclysm*, or *Deluge*, *Chaldean Empire*, *Cyrus*, *Christ*, *Constantine*, &c. Some divide their Accounts of Time according to the four great Monarchies; *Assyrian*, *Persian*, *Grecian*, and *Roman*. Others think it serves the Memory best to divide all their Subjects into the remarkable Number of Sevens; so *Prideaux* has written an *Introduction to History*. And there is a Book of Divinity called, *Fasciculus Controversiarum*, by an Author of the same Name, written in the same Method, wherein every Controversy has seven Questions belonging to it; tho' the Order of Nature seems to be

518 LOGICK: Or, Part IV.  
too much neglected by a Confinement  
to this *septenary Number*.

Those *Writers* and *Speakers*, whose  
chief Business is to amuse or delight,  
to allure, terrify, or persuade Mankind,  
do not confine themselves to any *na-  
tural Order*, but in a *critical* or *hid-  
den Method* adapt every thing to their  
designed Ends. Sometimes they *omit*  
those Things which might injure their  
Design, or grow tedious to their Hear-  
ers, tho' they seem to have a necessary  
Relation to the Point in Hand: Some-  
times they *add* those Things which have  
no great Reference to the Subject, but  
are suited to allure or refresh the Mind  
and the Ear. They *dilate* sometimes,  
and flourish long upon little Incidents,  
and they skip over, and but lightly rouch  
the dryer Part of their Theme. They  
*place the first* Things *last*, and the *last*  
Things *first* with wondrous Art, and  
yet so manage it as to conceal their Ar-  
tifice, and lead the Senses and Passions  
of their Hearers in a pleasing and pow-  
erful Captivity.

'Tis chiefly *Poesy* and *Oratory* that  
require the Practice of this kind of ar-  
bitrary

C. I. *The right use of Reason.* 519

*bitrary Method:* They omit Things essential which are not beautiful, they insert little needless Circumstances, and beautiful Digressions, they invert Times and Actions, in order to place every Thing in the most affecting Light, and for this End in their Practice they neglect all *logical Forms*; yet a good Acquaintance with the *Forms of Logic and natural Method*, is of admirable Use to those who would attain these Arts in Perfection. Hereby they will be able to range their own Thoughts in such a Method and Scheme, as to take a more large and comprehensive Survey of their Subject and Design in all the Parts of it; and by this Means they will better judge what to chuse and what to refuse; and how to dress and manage the whole Scene before them, so as to attain their own Ends with greater Glory and Success.




CHAP.





## CHAP. II.

*The Rules of Method.*

 HE Requisites of true Method in the Pursuit or Communication of Knowledge, may be all comprized under the following Heads. It must be (1.) *Safe*. (2.) *Plain and easy*. (3.) *Distinct*. (4.) *Full or without Defect*. (5.) *Short or without Superfluity*. (6.) *Proper to the Subject and the Design*. (7.) *Connected*.

I. RULE. Among all the Qualifications of a good Method, there is none more necessary and important than that it should be *safe and secure from Error*; and to this End these four *particular Directions* should be observed.

1. Use great Care and Circumspection in laying the Foundations of your Discourse, or your Scheme of Thoughts upon any Subject. These Propositions which are to stand as first Principles, and on which the whole Argument depends, must be viewed on all Sides with utmost Accuracy, lest an Error being admitted there, should diffuse itself thro' the whole Subject. See therefore that your *general Definitions or Descriptions* are as accurate as the Nature of the Thing will bear: See that your *gene-*

161

IV. C. II. *The right use of Reason.* 521

*ral Divisions and Distributions* be just and exact, according to the Rules given in the first Part of Logic: See that your *Axioms* be sufficiently evident, so as to demand the Assent of those that examine them with due Attention. See that your *first and more immediate Consequences from these Principles* be well drawn; and take the same Care of all other *Propositions* that have a powerful and spreading Influence thro' the several Parts of your Discourse.

For want of this Care, sometimes a large Treatise has been written by a long Deduction of Consequences from one or two doubtful Principles, which Principles have been effectually refuted in a few Lines, and thus the whole Treatise has been destroyed at once: So the largest and fairest Building sinks and tumbles to the Ground, if the Foundations and Corner-Stones of it are feeble and insufficient.

2. 'Tis a very advisable Thing that your *primary and fundamental Propositions* be not only evident and true, but they should be made a little familiar to the Mind by dwelling upon them before you proceed further. By this Means you will gain so full an Acquaintance with them, that you may draw Consequences from them with much more Freedom, with greater Variety, brighter Evidence, and with a firmer Certainty, than if you have but a slight and sudden View of them.

3. As you proceed in the Connection of your Arguments, see that your *Ground* be made firm in every Step. See that every Link of your Chain of Reasoning be strong and good: For if but one Link be feeble and doubtful, the whole Chain of Arguments feels the Weakness of it, and lies expos'd to every Objector, and the original Question remains undetermined.

4. Draw up all your *Propositions and Arguments* with so much Caution, and express your Ideas with such a just Limitation as may preclude or anticipate any Objections. Yet remember this is only to be done as far as 'tis possible, without too much entangling the Question, or introducing

ducing complicated Ideas, and obscuring the Sense. But if such a cautious and limited Dress of the Question should render the Ideas too much complicated, or the Sense obscure, then 'tis better to keep the Argument more simple, clean and easy to be understood, and afterwards mention the *Objections* distinctly in their full Strength, and give a distinct *Answer* to them.

**II<sup>d</sup> RULE.** Let your *Method be plain and easy*, so that your Hearers or Readers, as well as yourself, may run thro' it without Embarrassment, and may take a clear and comprehensive View of the whole Scheme. To this End the following *particular Directions* will be useful.

1. *Begin always with those Things which are best known, and most obvious, whereby the Mind may have no Difficulty or Fatigue, and proceed by regular and easy Steps to Things that are more difficult.* And as far as possible, let not the Understanding, or the Proof of any of your Positions, depend on the Positions that follow, but always on those which go before. It is a Matter of Wonder that in so knowing an Age as this, there should be so many Persons offering Violence daily to this Rule, by *teaching the Latin Language by a Grammar written in Latin*, which Method seems to require a perfect Knowledge of an unknown Tongue, in order to learn the first Rudiments of it.

2. *Do not affect excessive Haste in learning or teaching any Science, nor Hurry at once in the Midst of it, lest you be too soon involv'd in several new and strange Ideas and Propositions, which cannot be well understood without a longer and closer Attention to those which go before.* Such sort of Speed is but a waste of Time, and will constrain you to take many Steps backward again, if you would arrive at a regular and compleat Knowledge of the Subject.



## C. II. *The right use of Reason.* 523

3. *Be not fond of crowding too many Thoughts and Reasonings into one Sentence or Paragraph, beyond the Apprehension or Capacity of your Readers or Hearers.* There are some Persons of a good Genius, and a capacious Mind, who write and speak very obscurely upon this Account; they affect a long Train of Dependences before they come to a Period; they imagine that they can never fill their Page with too much Sense; but they little think how they bury their own best Ideas in the Croud, and render them in a Manner invisible and useless to the greatest Part of Mankind. Such Men may be great Scholars, yet they are but poor Teachers.

4. *For the same Reason, avoid too many Subdivisions.* Contrive your Scheme of Thoughts in such a Manner, as may finish your whole Argument with as few inferior Branchings as Reason will admit; and let them be such as are obvious and open to the Understanding, that they may come within one single View of the Mind. This will not only assist the Understanding to receive, but it will aid the Memory also to retain Truth: Whereas a Discourse cut out into a vast Multitude of gradual Subordinations, has many Inconveniences in it; it gives Pain to the Mind and Memory, in surveying and retaining the Scheme of Discourse, and exposes the unskilful Hearers to mingle the superior and inferior Particulars together, and leads them into a thick Wood instead of open Day-light, and places them in a Labyrinth instead of a plain Path.

5. *Give all Diligence in your younger Years to obtain a clear and easy Way of expressing your Conceptions,* that your Words, as fast as you utter them, may stamp your own Ideas exactly on the Mind of the Hearer. This is a most happy Talent for the Conveyance of Truth, and an excellent Security against Mistakes and needless Controversies.

III<sup>d</sup> RULE. *Let your Method be distinct,* and without the perplexing Mixture of Things that ought to be kept separate,

parate, and this will be easily practised by four *Directions*.

1. *Don't bring unnecessary heterogeneous \* Matter into your Discourse on any Subject*: that is, don't mingle an Argument on one Subject, with Matters that relate entirely to another, but just so far as is necessary to give a clearer Knowledge of the Subject in Hand. Examples in *Logic* may be borrowed from any of the Sciences to illustrate the Rules: But long Interpositions of *natural Philosophy*, of the *Imagination* and *Passions*, of the *Agency of Spirits united to Bodies*, &c. break the Thread of Discourse, and perplex the Subject.

2. *Let every complicated Theme or Idea be divided into its distinct single Parts, as far as the Nature of the Subject, and your present Design requires it.* Tho' you must not abound in needless Subdivisions, yet something of this Work is very necessary; and 'tis a good Judgment alone can dictate how far to proceed in it, and when to stop.

Compound Ideas must be reduced to a simple Form in order to understand them well. You may easily master that Subject in all the Parts of it by a regular Succession, which would confound the Understanding to survey them at once. So we come to the Knowledge of a very perplexed *Diagram in Geometry*, or a *complicated Machine in Mechanicks*, by having it parcell'd out to us into its several Parts and Principles, according to this, and the foregoing Rule of Method.

3. *Call every Idea, Proposition and Argument to its proper Class, and keep each Part of the Subject in its own Place.* Put those things all together that belong to one Part or Property, one Consideration or View of your Subject. This will prevent needless Repetitions, and keep you from intermixing Things which are different. We must maintain this Distinction of Things

---

\* Things of one Kind are called *Homogeneous*, things of different Kinds are *Heterogeneous*.

## C. II. *the right use of Reason.* 525

and Places if we would be safe from Error. It is Confusion that leads us into endless Mistakes, which naturally arise from a Variety of Ideas ill-join'd, ill-sorted, or ill-disposed. 'Tis one great Use of Method, that a Multitude of Thoughts and Propositions may be so distinctly ranged in their proper Situations, that the Mind may not be overwhelm'd with a confus'd Attention to them all at once, nor be distracted with their Variety, nor be tempted to unite Things which ought to be separated, nor to disjoin Things which should be united.

4. *In the Partition of your Discourse into distinct Heads, take heed that your Particulars do not interfere with the General, nor with each other.* Think it not enough that you make use of distinct Expressions in each Particular, but take Care that the Ideas be distinct also. It is mere Foolery to multiply distinct Particulars in treating of Things, where the Difference lies only in Names and Words.

**IV<sup>th</sup> RULE.** The Method of treating a Subject should be *plenary or full, so that nothing may be wanting*; nothing which is necessary or proper should be omitted.

When you are called to *explain* a Subject, don't pass by, nor skip over any thing in it which is very difficult or obscure. When you *enumerate the Parts or the Properties* of any Subject, do it in a complete and comprehensive Manner. When you are *asserting or proving* any Truth, see that every doubtful or disputable Part of the Argument be well supported and confirmed. If you are to *illustrate or argue a Point of Difficulty*, be not too scanty of Words, but rather become a little copious and diffusive in your Language: Set the Truth before the Reader in several Lights, turn the various Sides of it to View, in order to give a full Idea, and firm Evidence of the Proposition. When you are *drawing up a Narrative* of any Matter of Fact, see that no important



portant Circumstance be omitted. When you propose the *Solution of any Difficulty*, consider all the various Cases wherein it can happen, and shew how they may be solved. In short, let your *Enumerations*, your *Divisions* and *Distributions* of Things be so accurate, that no needful Part or Idea may be left out.

This *Fulness of Method* does not require that every thing should be said which can be said upon any Subject; for this would make each single Science endless: But you should say every thing which is necessary to the Design in View, and which has a proper and direct Tendency to this End; always proportioning the Amplitude of your Matter, and the Fulness of your Discourse to your great Design, to the Length of your Time, to the Convenience, Delight and Profit of your Hearers.

V<sup>th</sup> RULE. As your Method must be *full without Deficiency*, so it must be *short, or without Superfluity*. The *Fulness* of a Discourse enlarges our Knowledge, and the well-concerted *Brevity* saves our Time. In order to observe this Rule, it will be enough to point out the chief of those *Superfluities* or *Redundancies* which some Persons are guilty of in their Discourses, with a due Caution against them.

1. *Avoid all needless Repetitions of the same Thing in different Parts of your Discourse.* It must be confest there are several Cases wherein a Review of the same foregoing Proposition is needful to explain or prove several of the following Positions; but let your Method be so contrived, as far as possible, that it may occasion the fewest Rehearsals of the same Thing; for 'tis not grateful to the Hearers without evident Necessity.

2. *Have*

## C. II. *The right use of Reason.* 527

2. *Have a Care of a tedious Prolixity, or drawing out any Part of your Discourse to an unnecessary and tiresome Length.* 'Tis much more honourable for an Instructor, an Orator, a Pleader, or a Preacher, that his Hearers should say, *I was afraid he would have done,* than that they should be tempted to shew Signs of Uneasiness, and long for the Conclusion.

Besides, There is another Inconvenience in it; when you affect to amplify on the former Branches of a Discourse, you will often lay a Necessity upon yourself of contracting the latter and most useful Parts of it, and perhaps prevent yourself in the most important Part of your Design. Many a Preacher has been guilty of this Fault in former Days, nor is the present Age without some Instances of this Weakness.

3. *Do not multiply Explications where there is no Difficulty, or Darkeness, or Danger of Mistake.* Be not fond of tracing every Word of your Theme thro' all the grammatical, the logical, and metaphysical Characters and Relations of it, nor shew your critical Learning in spreading abroad the various Senses of a Word, and the various Origin of those Senses, the Etymology of Terms, the synonymous and the paronymous or kindred Names, &c. where the chief Point of Discourse does not at all require it. You would laugh at a Pedant, who professing to explain the *Athanasian Creed*, should acquaint you, that *Athanasius* is derived from a Greek Word, which signifies *Immortality*, and that the same Word *Adamas* signifies also the Herb *Tansie*.

There are some Persons so fond of their learned Distinctions, that they will shew their Subtilty by distinguishing where there is no Difference: And the same silly Affectation will introduce Distinctions upon every Occurrence, and bring three or four Negatives upon every Subject of Discourse; first to declare what it is not, and then what it is: Whereas such Negatives ought never to be mentioned where there is no apparent Danger of Mistake. How ridiculous would that Writer be, who, if he were speaking of the *Nicene Creed*, should declare negatively, 1. That he did not mean the Doctrine

trine which the Inhabitants of Nice believed, nor, (2.) A Creed written by them, but (3.) Positively, a Creed composed by several Christian Bishops, met together in the City of Nice? The Positive is sufficient here, and the two Negatives are impertinent.

4. Be not fond of proving those Things which need no Proof, such as self-evident Propositions, and Truths universally confest, or such as are entirely agreed to and granted by our Opponents. It is this vain Affectation of proving every thing that has led Geometricians to form useless and intricate Demonstrations to support some Theorems, which are sufficiently evident to the Eye by Inspection, or to the Mind by the first Mention of them: and 'tis the same Humour that reigns sometimes in the Pulpit, and spends half the Sermon in proving some general Truth which is never disputed or doubted, and thereby robs the Auditory of more useful Entertainment.

5. As there are some things so evidently true, that they want no Proof, so there are others so evidently false, that they want no Refutation. 'Tis mere trifling, and a waste of our precious Moments, to invent and raise such Objections as no Man would ever make in earnest, and that merely for the Sake of answering and solving them: This breaks in notoriously upon the due Brevity of Method.

6. Avoid in general all learned Forms, all Trappings of Art, and Ceremonies of the Schools, where there is no Need of them. It is reported concerning the present Czar of Muscovy, that when he first acquainted himself with mathematical Learning, he practised all the Rules of Circumvallation and Contravallation, at the Siege of a Town in Livonia; and by the Length of those Formalities he lost the Opportunity of taking the Town.

7. Don't suffer every occasional and incidental Thought to carry you away into a long Parenthesis, and thus to stretch out your Discourse, and divert you from the Point in Hand. In the Pursuit of your Subject, if any useful Thought occur which belongs to some other Theme, note it down for the Sake of your Memory on some other Paper,



## C. II. *the right use of Reason.* 529

Paper, and lay it by in Reserve, for its proper Place and Season: But let it not incorporate itself with your present Theme, nor draw off your Mind from your main Business, tho' it should be never so inviting. A Man who walks but slowly towards his Journey's End, will arrive thither much sooner than his Neighbour, who runs into every crooked Turning which he meets, and wanders aside to gaze at every thing that strikes his Eyes by the Way, or to gather every gaudy Flower that grows by the Side of the Road.

To sum up all; *There is an happy Medium to be observed in our Method, so that the Brevity may not render the Sense obscure, nor the Argument feeble, nor our Knowledge merely superficial: And on the other Hand, that the Fullness and Copiousness of our Method may not waste the Time, tire the Learner, or fill the Mind with Trifles and Impertinencies.*

The *copious* and the *contracted* Way of writing, have each their peculiar Advantages. There is a proper Use to be made of *large Paraphrases*, and *full, particular, and diffusive Explications and Arguments*; these are fittest for those who design to be acquainted thoroughly with every Part of the Subject. There is also a Use of *shorter Hints, Abstracts and Compendiums* to instruct those who seek only a slight and general Knowledge, as well as to refresh the Memory of those who have learnt the Science already, and gone thro' a larger Scheme. But 'tis a gross Abuse of these various Methods of Instruction, when a Person has read a *mere Compend* or *Epitome* of any Science, and he vainly imagines that he understands it all. So one Boy may become a *Philosopher*, by reading over the mere dry Definitions and Divisions of *Scheubler's Compendium of Peripateticism*: So another may boast that he understands *Anatomy*, because he has seen a *Skeleton*; and a third profess himself a learned *Divine*, when he can repeat the *Apostles Creed*.

VI<sup>th</sup> RULE. Take Care that your  
*Method be proper to the Subject in*  
A a *Hand,*

*Hand, proper to your present Design, as well as proper to the Age and Place wherein you dwell.*

1. Let your *Method* be proper to the *Subject*. All Sciences must not be learnt or taught in one Method. *Morality* and *Theology*, *Metaphysics* and *Logic*, will not be easily and happily reduc'd to a strict *mathematical* Method: Those who have try'd have found much Inconvenience therein.

Some things have more need to be explained than to be proved; as *Axioms* or *self-evident Propositions*, and indeed all the *first great Principles*, the chief and most important Doctrines both of *natural* and *reveal'd Religion*; for when the Sense of them is clearly explain'd, they appear so evident in the Light of *Nature* or *Scripture*, that they want no other Proof. There are other Things that stand in need of *Proof*, as well as *Explication*, as many *mathematical Theorems*, and several deep *Controversies* in *Morality* and *Divinity*. There are yet other sorts of Subjects which want rather to be warmly impress'd upon the Mind by  *fervent Exhortations*, and stand in more need of this than they do either of *Proof* or *Explication*; such are the most general, plain and obvious Duties of *Piety* towards God, and *Love* toward Men, with a *Government* of all our *Inclinations* and *Passions*. Now these several Subjects ought to be treated in a different Manner and Method.

Again, There are some Subjects in the same Treatise which are more *useful* and *necessary* than others, and some Parts of a Subject which are *evidently* and *chiefly* designed by a Writer or Speaker: *True Method* will teach us to dwell longer upon these Themes, and to lay out more Thought and Language upon them; whereas the same *Art of Method* will teach us to cut short those things which are used only to introduce our main Subject, and to stand as a *Scaffolding* merely to aid the Structure of our Discourse. It will teach us also to content ourselves with brief Hints of those Matters which are merely *occasional* and *incidental*.

2. Your

## C. II. *The right use of Reason.* 537

2. Your Method must be adjusted by your Design; for if you treat of the same Subject with two different Views and Designs, you will find it necessary to use different Methods. Suppose the *Doctrine of the sacred Trinity* were your Theme, and you were to read a Lecture to young Students on that Subject, or if you design'd a Treatise for the Conviction of learned Men, you would pursue a very different Method from that which would be proper to regulate a practical Discourse, or a Sermon to instruct vulgar Christians merely in the pious Improvement of this Doctrine, and awaken them to their Duties which are derived thence.

In short, we must not first lay down certain and precise Rules of Method, and resolve to confine the Matter we discourse of to that particular Form and Order of Topicks; but we must well consider and study the *Subject* of our Discourse thoroughly, and take a just Survey of our present *Design*, and these will give sufficient Hints of the *particular Form and Order* in which we should handle it, provided that we are moderately skill'd in the *general Laws of Method and Order*.

Yet let it be noted here, that neither the *Subject* or Matter of a Discourse, nor the particular *Design* of it, can so precisely determine the Method, as to leave no Room for Liberty and Variety. The very same Theme may be handled, and that also with the same Design, in several different Methods, among which 'tis hard to say which is the best. In writing a *System of Divinity*, some begin with the *Scriptures*, and thence deduce all other Doctrines and Duties. Some begin with the *Being of God and his Attributes*, so far as he is known by the Light of *Nature*, and then proceed to the Doctrines of *Revelation*. Some distinguish the whole Subject into the *Credenda* and *Agenda*, that is, *Things to be believed, and Things to be done*. Some think it best to explain the whole Christian Religion, by an *historical Detail of all the Discoveries which God has made of himself to this lower World*, beginning at the Creation in the first Chapter of *Genesis*, and so proceeding onward ac-



cording to the Narrative of the old and new Testament. And there are others that endeavour to include the whole of Religion under these four Heads (*viz.*) *The Apostles Creed, the Lord's Prayer, the Ten Commandments, and the two Sacraments*; tho' I cannot but think this is the least accurate of any. The same Variety may be allowed in treating other Subjects; this very *Treatise of Logic* is an Instance of it, whose Method differs very considerably from any others which I have seen, as they differ also greatly from one another, tho' several of them are confess'd to be well written.

3. Tho' a just View of our *Subject* and our *Design* may dictate proper Rules of natural Method, yet *there must be some little Deference at least paid to the Custom of the Age wherein we dwell, and to the Humour and Genius of our Readers or Hearers*, which if we utterly reject and disdain, our Performances will fail of desired Success, even tho' we may have followed the just Rules of Method. I'll mention but this one Instance: In the former Century it was frequent with learned Men to divide their Theme or Subject into a great Multitude of *coordinate Members or Parts*, they abounded also in the *Forms of Logic and Distinction*, and indulged numerous *Ranks of Subordination*. Now tho' we ought not to abandon the *Rules of just Method and Division*, in order to comport with the modish Writers in our Age who have renounced them, yet 'tis prudent to pay so much Respect to the Custom of the Age, as to use these *Forms of Division* with due Moderation, and not affect to multiply them in such a Manner as to give an early and needless Disgust to the Generality of our present Readers. The same may be said concerning various other Methods of Conduct in the Affairs of Learning as well as the Affairs of Life, wherein we must indulge a little to Custom: And yet we must by no Means suffer ourselves so far to be impos'd upon and govern'd by it, as to neglect those Rules of Method which are necessary for the *safe, easy and compleat Enquiry into Truth, or the ready and effectual Communication of it to others*.

## C. II. *The right use of Reason.* 533

VII<sup>th</sup> RULE. The last Requisite of Method is, that *the Parts of a Discourse should be well connected*; and these three short *Directions* will suffice for this Purpose.

1. *Keep your main End and Design ever in View, and let all the Parts of your Discourse have a Tendency toward it, and, as far as possible, make that Tendency visible all the Way.* Otherwise the Readers or Hearers will have Reason to wonder for what End this or that Particular was introduced.

2. *Let the mutual Relation and Dependance of the several Branches of your Discourse be so just and evident, that every Part may naturally lead onward to the next, without any huge Chasms or Breaks which interrupt and deform the Scheme.* The Connection of Truths should rise and appear in their successive Ranks and Order, as the several Parts of a fine Prospect ascend just behind each other, in their natural and regular Elevations and Distances, and invite the Eye to climb onward with constant Pleasure till it reach the Sky. Whatsoever horrid Beauty a Precipice or a Catarract may add to the Prospect of a Country, yet such sort of hideous and abrupt Appearances in a Scene of Reasoning, are real Blemishes and not Beauties. When the Reader is passing over such a Treatise, he often finds a wide Vacancy, and makes an uneasy Stop, and knows not how to transport his Thoughts over to the next Particular, for want of some Clue or connecting Idea to lay hold of.

3. *Acquaint yourself with all the proper and decent Forms of Transition from one Part of a Discourse to another, and practise them as Occasion offers.* Where the Ideas, Propositions and Arguments are happily disposed, and well connected, the Truth indeed is secure; but it renders the Discourse much more agreeable, when proper and graceful Expression joyns the Parts of it together in so entertaining a Manner, that the Reader  
knows

534 *The right use of Reason.* Part IV.


knows not how to leave off till he hath arrived at the End.

These are the *general* and most important *Rules of true Method*; and tho' they belong chiefly to the *Communication* of Knowledge, yet a good Acquaintance with them will be of considerable Use toward the *Pursuit* and *Attainment* of it. The *particular Means or Methods* for a further Improvement of the Understanding are very various, such as, *Meditation, Reading, Conversing, Disputing by Speech or by Writing, Question and Answer, &c.* And in each of these Practices, some special Forms may be observed, and special Rules may be given to facilitate and secure our Enquiries after Truth: But this would require a little Volume by itself, and a Treatise of *Logic* has always been esteemed sufficiently compleat without it.

F I N I S.







## ADVERTISEMENT.

**T**H E Author having review'd most of the Sheets since they were printed off, desires the Candour of the Reader to admit the following Corrections in order to prevent all Mistakes of the Sense.

Page 12. l. 6. *for* Of r. The. l. 9. Special Rules. p. 13. l. 22. but 'tis the. p. 17. l. 14. Substance or Subject. p. 20. l. 21. *blot out* tho'. l. 27. Substance. l. 28. represents. p. 31. l. 11. Matter in general. l. 15. particular natural Bodies. p. 32. l. 2. *for* following r. farther. p. 37. l. 10. And this Chapter. p. 39. l. 17. Right, Obligation, or Necessity. p. 45. l. 22. represent chiefly. p. 109. l. 8. perhaps from. p. 152. l. 25. your.

Page 154. *at the End*, add this Marginal Note. There is one Case wherein some of these last Rules concerning the Definition of Words, may be in some Measure dispensed with; and that is, when strong and rooted Prejudice hath established some favourite Word or Phrase, and long used it to express some mistaken Notion, or to unite some inconsistent Ideas; it is sometimes much easier to lead the World into Truth by assigning and applying new Ideas and Notions to their favourite Word, than by rejecting their old Words and Phrases, and Notions, to introduce all new at once.

Page 163. l. 1. would make any Distinction. p. 198. l. 11. in its. p. 210. l. last *save two*, after, &c. add, Note, These Rules belong chiefly to the Method of Instruction, which the Learned call *Synthesick*. p. 224. l. 3. joyned or disjoyned. p. 234. l. 22. into one or into every; we cannot say one Apple or every Apple. p. 235. l. 2. every or into one.

Page 239. *blot out* all the 2<sup>d</sup> Note, and in the Room of it, p. 241. l. 7. *after* (viz.) *put in* this Note. Since universal, indefinite, and particular Terms in the plural Number may either be taken in a collective or a distributive Sense, there is one short and easy Way to find

find when they are *collective* and when *distributive* (*viz.*)  
If the plural Number may be changed into the singular, *i. e.* if the Predicate will agree to one single Subject, 'tis a *distributive* Idea; if not, 'tis *collective*.

Page 271. l. 12. Affairs. p. 273. l. 21. after confus'd  
r. or before we see whether they agree or disagree, we  
shall, &c. p. 290. l. 10. so much depend. p. 296.  
l. 24. r. know. p. 317. l. 6. aside, unless it be called  
in to assist the Explication by a Similitude. p. 378.  
l. 6. doubtful Proposition. p. 366. l. 16. any of us to  
be practis'd at once. p. 387. l. 2. Faith; *that is*, we  
l. 8. come; and Reason itself dictates this Submission.  
p. 416. l. 27. Some of those. p. 417. l. 7. its Power.  
p. 421. in the Title add, Of Reasoning and Syllogism.  
p. 445. for 345. p. 411. l. 15. the Decision. p. 422.  
l. penult. All rational Propositions. p. 441. l. 19. for  
is r. it. p. 449. l. 11. we may render. p. 469. for  
496. p. 473. l. 22. fall often——when. p. 478.  
l. 20. f. not r. never. p. 479. l. 4. for Murder r. kill a  
Man.



1. The first of these is the fact that the  
 2. second is the fact that the  
 3. third is the fact that the  
 4. fourth is the fact that the  
 5. fifth is the fact that the  
 6. sixth is the fact that the  
 7. seventh is the fact that the  
 8. eighth is the fact that the  
 9. ninth is the fact that the  
 10. tenth is the fact that the

